FIRST YEAR LATIN

FIRST YEAR LATIN

BY

ROBERT J. HENLE, S. J.

FORMER INSTRUCTOR IN CLASSICS
ST. LOUIS UNIVERSITY HIGH SCHOOL

REVISED EDITION

CHICAGO, ILLINOIS
LOYOLA UNIVERSITY PRESS
1943

425
.38
F
1-3

COPYRIGHT, 1939

LOYOLA UNIVERSITY PRESS
CHICAGO, ILLINOIS

Printed in the United States of America

PREFACE

The exercise book here presented under the title FIRST YEAR LATIN is part of a complete and integrated high-school Latin course now in preparation. Two companion volumes, LATIN GRAMMAR FOR HIGH SCHOOLS and SECOND YEAR LATIN, have already appeared.

The author of a high-school Latin text cannot, in the present state of confusion, hope to commend himself to all Latin teachers without exception. Needless to say, the objectives determine the educational means adopted; and the objectives supposed in this book are not those that have been popularized by certain educational theorists. There is no place here for a discussion of this matter; suffice it to say that general intellectual values—not factual nor utilitarian—constitute the ultimate aim of this four-year course, while the dominating objective of this FIRST YEAR LATIN is a thorough mastery of forms and basic syntax.

A few points of variance might be noted. It is a rather common practice to set down a limited vocabulary for mastery, but to employ many more words in the reading material. This book limits its vocabulary for use very largely to its vocabulary for mastery.

The increase in the difficulty of the exercises is far from pronounced. Such progression is generally too rapid and does not induce a sense of power—the basis of real interest—in the pupil. It was thought better to provide more easy sentences rather than simply to increase the difficulty of the exercise.

In the vocabularies each word is equipped with such information as is necessary for its correct use. These syntactical data are to be learned with the word. This method has been adopted for two reasons: first, general rules do not establish, at the time of learning, a psychological connection with the individual word they cover; second, many of these general rules (as the rule for

the dative with compound verbs) are so general that they are a constant hazard to accuracy of use and create doubt in the mind of the pupil.

The formal rather than the functional or direct method is favored in the learning of forms; that is, the paradigms are to be thoroughly memorized and then worked into active mastery by abundant exercise. Generous exercises are provided for this purpose. The teacher, of course, is not expected to use all the material provided.

The lessons are not 'dosage' lessons but logical units. The precise 'dose' for a given class depends upon a multitude of varying and unpredictable circumstances, and it is therefore quite harmful to mastery teaching to use this principle in constructing the lessons. The teacher is free to take such time as is necessary for the mastery of the material given in the lessons.

A uniform spelling has been adopted throughout, but occasional divergence from accepted norms has been made for practical purposes. There is surely as much reason for writing *j* and *v* as there is for the accepted practice of indicating quantities. The spelling of *adjiciō* and similar words has been adopted because of its practical value, a policy recommended to writers of textbooks by the authority of Professor Clyde Pharr of Vanderbilt University.

All reference numbers in this book are to paragraphs in the LATIN GRAMMAR FOR HIGH SCHOOLS of this series unless otherwise stated.

R. J. H.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Lesson		Page
	PREFACE	vii
1.	THE FIRST DECLENSION	1
2.	THE SECOND DECLENSION: MASCULINE NOUNS	6
3.	THE SECOND DECLENSION: NEUTER NOUNS	9
4.	THE THIRD DECLENSION: MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS LIKE *LEX*	13
5.	THE THIRD DECLENSION (CONTINUED): MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS LIKE *PARS*	17
6.	THE THIRD DECLENSION: NEUTER NOUNS	21
7.	THE FOURTH DECLENSION	26
8.	THE FIFTH DECLENSION	29
9.	REVIEW	31
	REVIEW WORD LIST NO. 1	35
10.	ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS	41
11.	ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (CONTINUED)	46
12.	ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION	50
13.	PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND PERSONS	55
	REVIEW WORD LIST NO. 2	58
14.	REVIEW	61
15.	THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION	64
16.	THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS	68
17.	THE PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE	74

18. THE SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE; PURPOSE CLAUSES . . . 78
REVIEW WORD LIST NO. 3 82
19. *SUM* 87
20. THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE 91
21. THE PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE; AGENCY, MEANS, INSTRUMENT 95
22. THE SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE 100
23. REVIEW 103
REVIEW WORD LIST NO. 4 108
24. *HIC, ILLE, ISTE, IS* 111
25. *IDEM, IPSE* 116
26. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN 119
27. INTERROGATIVES 124
28. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS 127
29. NUMERALS 131
30. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES 137
31. ADVERBS; THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS 141
32. *ALIUS, ALTER,* AND OTHER PRONOUNS 144
GENERAL REVIEW EXERCISES 147
33. PARTICIPLES; TENSE BY RELATION 153
34. *-IO* VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION 158
35. DEPONENT VERBS 162
36. REVIEW 166
37. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE 177
38. INTRANSITIVE VERBS WITH THE DATIVE, GENITIVE, AND ABLATIVE 182
REVIEW WORD LIST NO. 5 186
39. REVIEW 190
40. *POSSUM, VOLO, NOLO* 194
41. REVIEW 198
42. TIME 206

43. REVIEW 209
44. PLACE 213
45. REVIEW 216
46. *EO, FERO* 221
REVIEW WORD LIST NO. 6 226
47. REVIEW 235
48. ACCOMPANIMENT; MANNER 238
49. REVIEW 243
50. RESPECT; DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE 246
51. *FIO;* ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION 249
REVIEW WORD LIST NO. 7 253
52. REVIEW 259
53. SEQUENCE OF TENSES; INDIRECT QUESTIONS 263
54. SEMI-DEPONENTS; PURPOSE CLAUSES 267
55. NOUN CLAUSES OF PURPOSE 270
56. THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT AND SUBJECT 275
57. THE ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE 282
GENERAL REVIEW EXERCISES 288
CAESAR'S EXPEDITION AGAINST THE HELVETIANS . . 303
SELECTIONS FROM CHRISTIAN WRITINGS 347
WORD LIST CLASSIFIED 355
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY 425
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY 443

FIRST YEAR LATIN

LESSON 1

THE FIRST DECLENSION

1-12; 13; 73; 125

VOCABULARY

Words like Via, ae

road *way*	**via, ae**
province	**prōvincia, ae**
friendship	**amīcitia, ae**
daughter	**fīlia, ae**
fortune *fate*	**fortūna, ae**
cause	**causa, ae**
forest *grove*	**silva, ae**
ditch	**fossa, ae**
victory	**victōria, ae**
bank (of a river)	**rīpa, ae**
moon	**lūna, ae**
island	**īnsula, ae**
care *diligence*	**dīligentia, ae**
sailor	**nauta, ae, *m.***

Other Words

in *on*	**in, *prep. w. abl.***
he (she, it) saw	**vīdit**
they saw	**vīdērunt**
he (she, it) praised	**laudāvit**
they praised	**laudāvērunt**

EXERCISE 1

Translate, and tell what cases these forms are:

prōvinciae	fossā	fortūnam
viīs	fortūnae	īnsulīs
victōriae	rīpae	amīcitiā
nautīs	lūnae	victōriam
fīliae	viam	fossārum
causā	īnsulae	amīcitiās
causās	fīliās	dīligentia
amīcitiārum	fīliārum	prōvinciīs
silvīs	causae	causam
rīpā	silvam	silva
fortūna	lūnam	nautās
victōriā	fossae	fortūnā

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

to the[1] province	with fortune
with the provinces	the sailors *(acc.)*
forest *(acc.)*	the province *(acc.)*
for the sailor	ditches *(acc.)*
by diligence	for the sailors
the cause of the fortune	for the daughter
to the provinces	the ways *(acc.)*
for friendship	of the provinces
the island *(acc.)*	to the sailor
the banks *(nom.)*	the islands
of the moon	to the daughter

[1] There is no article, definite *(the)* or indefinite *(a)*, in Latin; thus *prōvincia* means 'province,' 'a province,' 'the province.'

EXERCISE 3

Subject	*Direct object*	*Verb*
Nauta	**īnsulam**	**vīdit**
Nom.	*Acc.*	

Model:

Nauta	vīdit	īnsulam

Translate, and diagram following the model:

1. Fīlia silvam vīdit.
2. Nauta fossam vīdit.
3. Fīlia lūnam laudāvit.
4. Nautae dīligentiam laudāvērunt.
5. Fīlia prōvinciam laudāvit.
6. Nautae lūnam vīdērunt.
7. Nautam vīdit.[1]
8. Nauta fortūnam laudāvit.
9. Fīliae silvam vīdērunt.
10. Viam vīdērunt.[1]

EXERCISE 4

Translate, and indicate the subject and the direct object:

1. The sailor praised[2] the island.
2. The daughter saw the forest.
3. They praised friendship.
4. She saw the moon.
5. They praised fortune.
6. The sailors saw the bank.
7. They praised diligence.
8. The sailor saw the grove.
9. The sailor praised the daughter.
10. They saw the ditch.

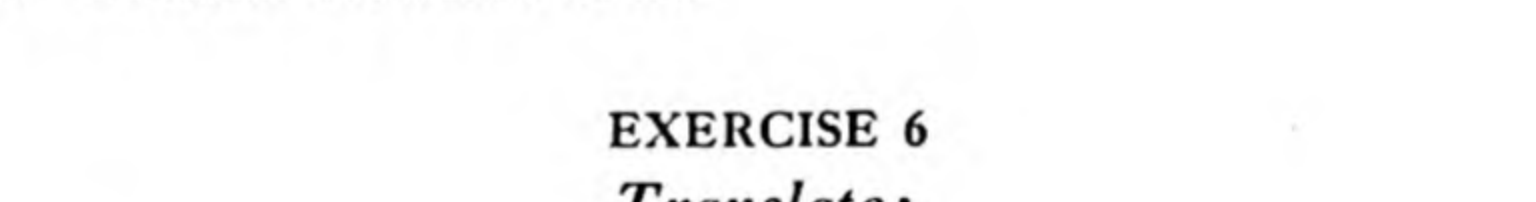
[1] The subject of this sentence is contained in the verb. See the vocabulary of the lesson.

[2] Where are you going to put the verb in Latin? Imitate the word order of the Latin sentences in Exercise 3.

EXERCISE 5

Subject	*Modifier of subject*	*Direct object*	*Adverbial modifier of verb*	*Verb*
Fīlia	**nautae**	**lūnam**	**in silvā**	**vīdit**
Nom.	*Gen.*	*Acc.*	*Abl.*	

Model:



Translate, and diagram following the model:

1. Fīlia victōriam nautae laudāvit.
2. Nauta fīliam in silvīs[1] vīdit.
3. Nautam in rīpā vīdit.
4. Nauta viam in silvīs vīdit.
5. Dīligentiam fīliae laudāvit.
6. Fīlia fortūnam nautae laudāvit.
7. Fīlia īnsulam nautae vīdit.
8. Nautae dīligentiam fīliārum laudāvērunt.
9. Fīliam nautae laudāvit.
10. Causam victōriae vīdit.

EXERCISE 6

Translate:

1. The sailor saw the province.
2. The daughter praised the diligence of the sailor.
3. The daughter of the sailor saw the moon.
4. The sailor's[2] daughter saw the island.
5. The daughter saw the ditch in the forest.
6. They saw the sailors.
7. The sailor saw the bank.
8. They saw the road.

---

[1] *Silva* is often used in the plural with the same meaning as the singular.

[2] What case is used to express possession in Latin? 'Sailor's' is the same as 'of the sailor.'

9. He saw the road on the island.
10. He saw the grove in the province.
11. The sailor's daughter praised the victory.
12. The sailors praised the diligence of the daughters.
13. He saw the sailor's daughter.
14. They saw the fate of the sailors.
15. They saw the daughter on the island.
16. He praised fortune.
17. They saw the forest.
18. The sailor praised friendship.
19. He praised the sailor's care.
20. The sailors saw the ditch.
21. He praised the sailor's friendship.
22. They saw the cause of the victory.
23. They saw the sailors in the province.
24. They praised the forests of the province.
25. The sailor's daughter praised the moon.

LESSON 2

THE SECOND DECLENSION: MASCULINE NOUNS

14; 74; 138

VOCABULARY

Words like Servus, i

slave	**servus, ī**
a Gaul	**Gallus, ī**
place	**locus, ī**
number	**numerus, ī**
sword	**gladius, ī**
friend	**amīcus, ī**
a barbarian	**barbarus, ī**
messenger *message* *report*	**nūntius, ī**
a Roman	**Rōmānus, ī**
a fugitive	**fugitīvus, ī**
field	**ager, agrī**
boy	**puer, puerī**

Other Words

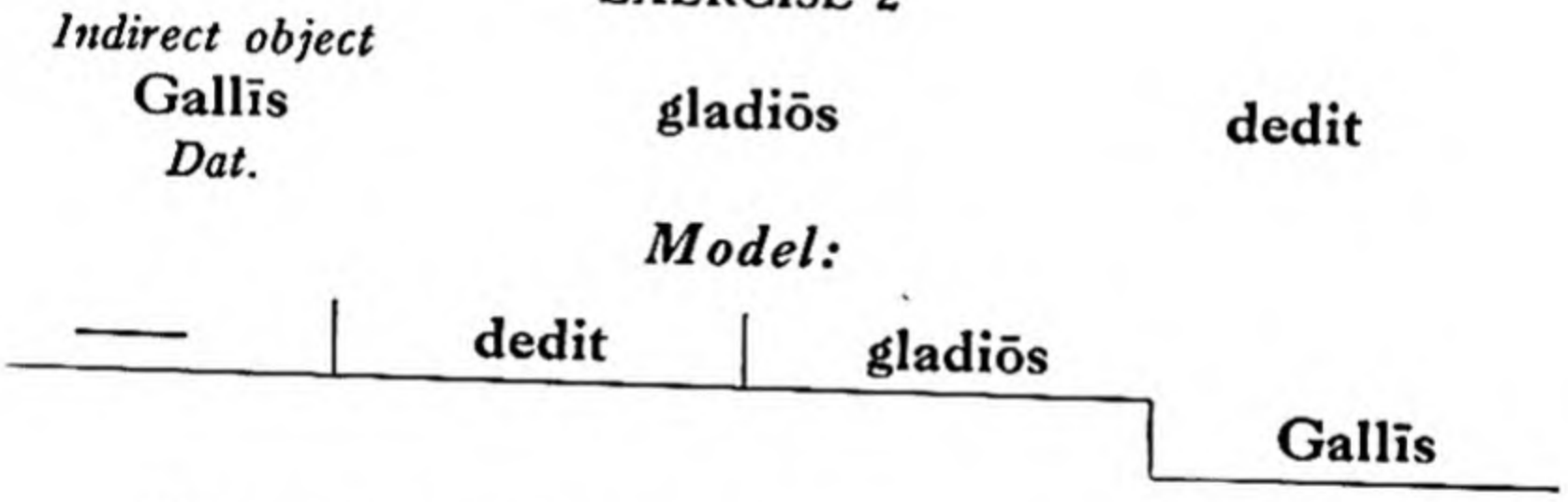
and	**et,** ***conj.***
not	**nōn,** ***adv.***
he (she, it) gave	**dedit**
they gave	**dedērunt**
he (she, it) was *there was*	**erat**
they were *there were*	**erant**

EXERCISE 1

Translate, and tell what cases these forms are:

locum	puerīs	amīcīs
in silvā	amīcōs	gladiōs
servōs	amīcō	in prōvinciā
servōrum	fīliae	nautīs
in locō	gladiīs	agrōrum
in silvīs amīcī	in agrīs	fortūnae amīcī
in numerō amīcōrum	amīcitiae	numerus servōrum
in agrō	silvae amīcōrum	fīliārum
amīcus fīliārum	fugitīvōs	nūntiī
in locō amīcī	puerum	gladiī Gallōrum

EXERCISE 2



Translate, and diagram following the model:

1. Nauta fīliae nūntium dedit.
2. Rōmānī Gallīs agrōs dedērunt.
3. Amīcus Gallō numerum servōrum dedit.
4. Gallī Rōmānīs gladiōs nōn dedērunt.
5. Gallī Rōmānīs fugitīvōs dedērunt.

EXERCISE 3

Translate, and diagram the Latin sentence:

1. They gave the slave to the Romans.
2. The messenger gave the sword to the Gaul.
3. The Romans gave fields to the Gauls.

4. The sailor gave swords to the barbarian.
5. The Romans did not give[1] swords to the boys.

EXERCISE 4

Translate:

1. Gallī erant[2] amīcī fīliae.
2. Fīliae Gallōrum erant in silvīs.
3. Amīcī fīliam Gallī vīdērunt.
4. Puerī Rōmānōs et Gallōs laudāvērunt.
5. Amīcī Rōmānī in prōvinciā erant.
6. Servī in silvīs erant.
7. Gallī erant in prōvinciā.
8. Nauta in īnsulā erat.
9. Fīlia dīligentiam Rōmānōrum laudāvit.
10. Nūntius barbarōs in silvīs vīdit.

EXERCISE 5

Translate:

1. The Gaul was a friend of the daughter.
2. The Gauls were in the place of the slaves.
3. They praised the diligence of the Romans.
4. The messenger saw the fugitives.
5. The Gaul gave the barbarians swords and slaves.
6. The friends of the Gaul were in the forest.
7. They saw the number of the Romans.
8. The sailor was on the bank.
9. They saw the moon in the forest.
10. They did not give[1] the boy the swords.

EXERCISE 6

Write ten sentences in Latin, using the words you now know. Each sentence must contain at least three words.

---

[1] did . . . give = gave.

[2] Forms of the verb 'to be' like *erat* and *erant* often stand between the subject and the predicate.

LESSON 3

THE SECOND DECLENSION: NEUTER NOUNS

15

VOCABULARY

Words like Bellum, i

war	bellum, ī
battle	proelium, ī
standard (military), *sign*, *signal*	signum, ī
weapon, *dart*	tēlum, ī
town	oppidum, ī
kingly power, *kingdom*	rēgnum, ī
beast of burden	jūmentum, ī
grain	frūmentum, ī
rampart	vāllum, ī
fort	castellum, ī
baggage	impedīmenta, impedīmentōrum *(neuter plural form; singular meaning)*
camp	castra, castrōrum *(neuter plural form; singular meaning)*

Other Words

with	cum, *prep. w. abl.*
they waged war	bellum gessērunt
into	in, *prep. w. acc.*
he (she, it) came	vēnit
they came	vēnērunt

EXERCISE 1

Translate, and tell what cases these forms are:

in proeliō	in castra	signīs
rēgna	in silvās	lūnae
jūmentōrum	in fossīs	victōriam
vāllīs	vāllī	fugitīvōs
fortūnam	tēla	dīligentiā
vāllō	frūmentī	cum puerīs
impedīmentīs	in oppidīs	in agrīs
cum amīcīs	in oppida	causam
in locō servōrum	gladiōs	signa

EXERCISE 2

Translate, and parse[1] the nouns:

1. Rōmānī bellum cum Gallīs gessērunt.
2. Servus erat in silvīs.
3. Barbarī locum castrōrum vīdērunt.
4. Gallus in vāllō erat.
5. Gallī in oppidō erant.
6. Gallī oppida et agrōs Rōmānīs nōn dedērunt.
7. Servus jūmenta Rōmānōrum vīdit.
8. Gladium amīcō dedit.
9. Proelium erat in īnsulā.
10. Jūmenta in oppidō erant.
11. Signa Rōmānōrum vīdērunt.
12. Nūntius in castellum vēnit.
13. Gallus tēla barbarīs dedit.
14. Nautae erant in īnsulā.
15. Barbarī nōn erant in prōvinciā.
16. Gallus rēgnum laudāvit.
17. Jūmentum in viā erat.
18. Rōmānī in castra vēnērunt.

---

[1] See No. 235.

19. Fīliae impedīmenta et jūmenta Rōmānōrum vīdērunt.
20. Frūmentum in castrīs nōn erat.

EXERCISE 3

Translate:

1. There was a war in the kingdom.
2. The Gauls were in the forest.
3. The barbarians saw the forts of the Romans.
4. There was a battle in the fields.
5. The messenger came with friends into the camp.
6. There were swords in the camp.
7. The beasts of burden were in the camp.
8. The sailors were on the island.
9. There were weapons and baggage in the town.
10. The Romans praised the diligence of the messenger.
11. The daughter of the Gaul saw the moon.
12. They praised the standards of the Romans.
13. They did not give the Gauls grain.
14. The Romans did not give swords and weapons to the barbarians.
15. They waged war with the barbarians.
16. They saw the fugitives.
17. The Gauls came into the towns.
18. The slave was on the rampart.
19. There were fugitives in the forest.
20. He praised the victories of the Gauls.

SUPPLEMENTARY

EXERCISE 4

Translate:

1. Nūntiī in silvam vēnērunt.
2. Servus in vāllō erat.
3. Fugitīvī in silvīs erant.
4. Erant tēla in oppidīs.

5. Bella cum Gallīs gessērunt.
6. In prōvinciam vēnērunt.
7. Signa in locō servōrum erant.
8. Frūmentum in agrō erat.
9. Erat proelium in prōvinciā.
10. Gladiōs amīcō dedit.
11. Victōriam Gallōrum laudāvit.
12. Gallus in fossā erat.
13. Via in silvīs erat.
14. In numerō servōrum erat.
15. Servī in castrīs erant.
16. Tēla in rēgnō nōn erant.
17. Gallus impedīmenta et tēla Rōmānōrum vīdit.
18. Gallī victōriam Rōmānōrum nōn laudāvērunt.
19. Fīlia Gallī in oppidō erat.
20. Gallī nōn erant amīcī Rōmānōrum.
21. Fugitīvī castellum vīdērunt.
22. Nūntius in castellum vēnit.
23. Gallus frūmentum barbarīs dedit.
24. Amīcitiam Rōmānōrum et Gallōrum laudāvit.
25. In castrīs erant tēla et frūmentum.

LESSON 4

THE THIRD DECLENSION: MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS LIKE *LEX*

16

VOCABULARY

law	**lēx, lēgis**
liberty	**lībertās, lībertātis**
courage *manliness* *virtue*	**virtūs, virtūtis, *f.***
sorrow *grief* *pain*	**dolor, dolōris**
man	**homō, hominis, *m.***
conspiracy	**conjūrātiō, conjūrātiōnis**
consul	**cōnsul, cōnsulis, *m.***
state *citizenship*	**cīvitās, cīvitātis**
legion	**legiō, legiōnis**
nobility	**nōbilitās, nōbilitātis**
soldier	**mīles, mīlitis, *m.***

EXERCISE 1

Translate:

the laws *(acc.)*
of liberty
to the daughter
for the men
with a man
in the legion
with the soldier
the state *(acc.)*
conspiracies *(acc.)*
to the consul

with soldiers
pain *(acc.)*
the sorrows of men
a conspiracy of the nobility
in the law
with the consul
with the daughter
for the soldiers
the laws of the Romans
the law of the state
with the legions
the standards of the legions
of the nobility
of the soldiers
the liberty of the Gauls
the sorrows of the Gaul
with the messenger
into the camp

EXERCISE 2

Translate, and tell what cases these forms are:

lēgum
lībertātis
cum legiōnibus
in cīvitāte
signa legiōnum
victōria mīlitum
conjūrātiō mīlitum
cum homine
dolōrum
lībertāte
in legiōne
virtūtem
hominēs
cōnsulum
cōnsulem
virtūtēs
lēgēs Gallōrum
dolōrēs Gallī
tēla mīlitum
victōria cōnsulis

EXERCISE 3

Translate, parse the nouns, and diagram:

1. Hominēs cum nūntiō in prōvinciam vēnērunt.
2. Gallī mīlitēs et locum castrōrum vīdērunt.
3. Cōnsul mīlitibus frūmentum dedit.
4. Erat conjūrātiō Gallōrum in prōvinciā.
5. Cōnsul virtūtem mīlitum laudāvit.
6. Cōnsul amīcitiam et fortūnam laudāvit.
7. Erat conjūrātiō nōbilitātis in cīvitāte.
8. Virtūs mīlitum erat causa victōriae.
9. Cōnsul lēgēs et lībertātem Gallōrum laudāvit.
10. Dolor Gallōrum erat causa bellī.

EXERCISE 4

Translate:

1. The consul did not praise the conspiracy of the soldiers.
2. He praised the laws of the Romans.
3. There was a conspiracy of the nobility in the kingdom.
4. The legions were in the camp.
5. The soldiers came into the forest.
6. He gave the men grain and weapons.
7. They saw the beasts of burden of the consul.
8. They praised liberty.
9. There were soldiers in the town.
10. The soldier praised the courage of the consul.

SUPPLEMENTARY

EXERCISE 5

Translate:

1. Nauta legiōnēs vīdit.
2. Dīligentiam cōnsulis laudāvērunt.
3. Fīlia Gallī lūnam vīdit.
4. Fīlia nautae in īnsulā erat.
5. Erant fossa et castellum in silvā.
6. Mīlitēs in rīpā erant.
7. Legiōnēs in viā erant.
8. Silvās in prōvinciā vīdit.
9. Nūntius dīligentiam Gallī laudāvit.
10. Mīlitēs in castra vēnērunt.
11. Erant tēla in castrīs.
12. Servōs Rōmānīs dedērunt.
13. Frūmentum Gallīs nōn dedit.
14. Nauta tēla barbarīs dedit.
15. Erant barbarī in īnsulā.
16. Gallī nōn erant amīcī cōnsulis.
17. Puerī mīlitēs vīdērunt.
18. Erat frūmentum in agrō.

19. Erat proelium in silvīs.
20. Erant Gallī et Rōmānī in prōvinciā.
21. Castra in rīpā erant.
22. Nūntius cum cōnsule erat in castrīs.
23. Rōmānī bella cum barbarīs gessērunt.
24. Rōmānī jūmenta et tēla et servōs Gallōrum vīdērunt.
25. Impedīmenta et servī legiōnum in castrīs erant.

LESSON 5

THE THIRD DECLENSION *(continued)*
MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS LIKE *PARS*

16

VOCABULARY

part *direction*	**pars, partis**
ship	**nāvis, nāvis**
mountain	**mōns, montis, *m.***
killing *slaughter*	**caedēs, caedis**
citizen *fellow citizen*	**cīvis, cīvis, *m.***
fleet	**classis, classis *(abl.* e, *less often* ī*)***
cohort	**cohors, cohortis**
hill	**collis, collis, *m.***
young man	**adulēscēns, adulēscentis, *m.***
enemy (public)	**hostis, hostis, *m.***
night	**nox, noctis**
bridge	**pōns, pontis, *m.***
city	**urbs, urbis**
valley	**vallēs, vallis**
citadel	**arx, arcis**

EXERCISE 1

Translate:

of the ships
with the men
the enemy *(acc.)*
of the valleys

in the fleet
on the mountain
the parts
of the slaughter
the standards of the cohorts
of the young men
night *(acc.)*
in the city
the laws of the cities
on the bridge
the hills *(nom.)*
the liberty of the citizens
of the citizens
the weapons of the cohorts
in the citadel
of the citadels
with the ships
the ships of the consul
the mountains *(acc.)*
to the citizens
with the consul
of the cities
of the men
of the nights

EXERCISE 2

Translate, and tell what cases these forms are:

cīvium
lībertās Gallōrum
hominum
lēgēs urbium
vallium
cum cohortibus
in urbibus
signa legiōnum
in ponte
in vāllō
adulēscentis
hostium
classēs cōnsulis
in valle

EXERCISE 3

Translate, parse the nouns, and diagram:

1. Cōnsul caedem cīvium nōn laudāvit.
2. Erat nox in montibus.
3. Lēgēs urbis laudāvit.
4. Gallus in montibus erat.
5. Nautae in nāvibus erant.
6. Cōnsul cum cohortibus in castra vēnit.
7. Hominēs lēgēs cīvitātum laudāvērunt.
8. Cīvēs in ponte et in arce erant.
9. Pars legiōnum erat in arce.
10. Gallus montēs et silvās et collēs laudāvit.

EXERCISE 4

Translate:

1. He did not praise the slaughter of the sailors.
2. They saw the bridges and the hills and the valleys.
3. The enemy came with the young man into the citadel.
4. He saw the citadel of the city.
5. The sailors were on the bridge.
6. It was night.
7. The soldiers were in the valley.
8. He gave grain to the citizens of the province.
9. There was a camp in the valley.
10. There were barbarians in the mountains.

SUPPLEMENTARY

EXERCISE 5

Translate:

1. The daughter of the Gaul was in the province.
2. The friend of the consul was in the camp.
3. The messenger was in the forest.
4. The fugitive was in the forest.
5. The soldiers were in the ship.
6. The sailors were on the bridge.
7. The enemy was in the citadel.
8. The citizens were in the town.
9. The consul did not praise the killing of the young men.
10. The Gauls were not in the province.
11. The barbarians were on the island.
12. The sailors were on the road.
13. The slaves of the Gauls were in the town.
14. The legions were in the forest.
15. The men were on the bridge.
16. The soldiers came into the camp.
17. The barbarians did not come[1] into the province.

---

[1] did . . . come = came.

18. Part of the soldiers came into the town.
19. The consul came into the valley.
20. The messenger came into the city.
21. The daughter of the Gaul came into the city.
22. The Romans came into the towns of the Gauls.
23. The sailors came into the camps of the Romans.
24. The messengers came into the fields of the Gauls.
25. The young men saw the enemy's fleet.
26. The fugitives came into the forest of the province.
27. The barbarians came into the fields of the Romans.
28. The legions came into the fields of the barbarians.
29. The sailors came into the islands of the Romans.
30. The consul saw the mountains of the province.
31. The soldiers saw the camps of the Gauls.
32. The Romans saw the slaves and the grain of the Gauls.
33. The Gauls saw the victory of the soldiers.
34. The fugitive saw the legions of the consul.
35. The young men praised the consul's virtue.
36. The citizens saw the soldiers of the consul.
37. The friends of the consul saw the standards.
38. The barbarians saw the grain.
39. The Romans did not give[1] the barbarians grain.
40. The Gauls did not give the boys swords.
41. The soldiers did not give the sailors the weapons.
42. The Romans did not give the Gauls citizenship.
43. The Gauls gave the Romans grain.
44. The consul gave the cohort swords.
45. The consul gave the sailors ships.
46. The barbarians gave the Romans slaves.
47. The Romans did not give the Gauls standards.
48. The slaves gave the baggage to the consul.
49. There were weapons in the towns of the Gauls.
50. There was a battle in the province.

---

[1] did . . . give = gave.

LESSON 6

THE THIRD DECLENSION: NEUTER NOUNS

17[1]

VOCABULARY[2]

river	flūmen, flūminis
line (of march) *column*	āgmen, āgminis
name	nōmen, nōminis
deed *crime*	facinus, facinoris
cold	frīgus, frīgoris
right *justice*	jūs, jūris
side *flank*	latus, lateris
time	tempus, temporis
wound	vulnus, vulneris
journey *way*	iter, itineris, *n.*
work *fortification*	opus, operis

EXERCISE 1

Translate, and tell what cases these forms are:

flūmina	latera
dolōrum	vulnere
flūminum	in flūmen

[1] Omit the note.

[2] This vocabulary contains all the regular neuter nouns of the third declension to be met in first year.

virtūs mīlitis	āgminī Gallōrum
castrōrum	hominibus
in flūmine	conjūrātiōne
lībertās	virtūtibus
lēge	lībertātis
lībertātī	jūra
lībertāte	āgminum
frīgore	lēgum
in homine	hominum lēgēs
virtūte	causa bellī
frūmentī	itinera legiōnum
virtūte hominum	itinera āgminis
in flūmina	cum cōnsule
in prōvinciā	in castrīs Gallōrum
in castra	in prōvinciam
in itinere	dolōrēs
itineribus	tēla mīlitum
tempore	impedīmenta hominum
operum	in silvīs amīcī
virtūtem	itineribus amīcī
fīliae dolōrem	dolōribus fīliae
in āgmine	locī

EXERCISE 2

Translate, parse the nouns, and diagram:

1. Āgmen in silvās vēnit.
2. Cōnsul vulnera mīlitis vīdit.
3. Hominēs flūmen vīdērunt.
4. Jūra et lēgēs prōvinciae laudāvit.
5. Facinora cōnsulis erant causa bellī.
6. Legiōnēs in itinere erant.
7. Erat frīgus in montibus.
8. Cōnsul opera laudāvit.
9. Nauta in flūmine erat.
10. Erat pōns in flūmine.

11. Latus castrōrum in rīpā erat.
12. Legiōnēs in tempore vēnērunt.
13. Nōmen adulēscentis laudāvit.
14. Erat caedēs cīvium in arce.
15. Nox erat, et pars hostium in arce erat.

EXERCISE 3

Translate:

1. He praised the wounds of the soldiers.
2. The column was in the forest.
3. He did not praise the crimes of the fugitive.
4. The messenger praised the victory of the Gauls.
5. He saw the wounds of the slave.
6. He praised the rights of the cities.
7. The young men were on a journey.
8. The fortifications were on the bank and in the forest.
9. There was a river in the grove.
10. The consul came into the camp with the messenger.
11. He praised the consul's name and not his deeds.
12. The soldiers came in time.
13. The flank of the legion was on the hill.
14. He praised the work.
15. They saw the pain of the soldier.

SUPPLEMENTARY

EXERCISE 4

Give the

1. *ablative singular;*
2. *nominative plural;*
3. *genitive plural:*

lēx	nōbilitās	cohors
nōmen	mīles	pars
jūs	vulnus	virtūs
pōns	flūmen	dolor

facinus	nāvis	signum
legiō	homō	vāllum
arx	conjūrātiō	latus
vallēs	hostis	fīlia
opus	adulēscēns	puer
cīvitās	collis	tēlum
iter	classis	cīvis
urbs	fortūna	mōns
latus	nauta	tempus
cōnsul	servus	fossa
nox	nūntius	via
āgmen	ager	gladius

EXERCISE 5

Give the

1. gender;

2. genitive:

vulnus	mīles	fortūna
nūntius	Rōmānus	lūna
gladius	vāllum	dīligentia
virtūs	iter	adulēscēns
fugitīvus	ager	hostis
tempus	nox	jūs
puer	opus	frīgus
facinus	locus	locus
castellum	fīlia	servus
āgmen	castra	legiō
collis	impedīmenta	pōns
dolor	fossa	mōns
cohors	arx	urbs

EXERCISE 6

Tell what cases the following forms are and give the

1. ***nominative singular;***
2. ***genitive singular;***
3. ***gender;***
4. ***meaning:***

prōvinciā	agrōrum	bellō
āgmina	vulnerum	legiō
amīcitia	collium	fugitīvō
bella	nāvium	vāllō
flūmina	bellum	proeliō
fīlia	facinorum	conjūrātiō
proelia	bellōrum	rēgnō
castra	flūminum	homō
causa	frūmentum	castellō
nōmina	iter	signī
facinora	nōminum	vulnerī
frīgora	laterum	puerī
itinera	urbium	laterī
fīlia	proelium	agrī
tēla	dolōrum	vāllī
oppida	vāllōrum	noctī
jūra	virtūtum	frūmentī
vulnera	jūmentum	cīvitātī
castella	oppidōrum	jūmentī
impedīmenta	mīlitum	jūrī
opera	pontium	legiōnī

LESSON 7

THE FOURTH DECLENSION

18[1]

VOCABULARY[2]

port	**portus, ūs**
a pace	**passus, ūs**
a running together *concourse*	**concursus, ūs**
sight *vision*	**cōnspectus, ūs**
meeting *assembly* *assizes*	**conventus, ūs**
magistrate *magistracy*	**magistrātus, ūs**
setting	**occāsus, ūs**
movement *disturbance* *revolution*	**mōtus, ūs**
lake	**lacus, ūs**
arrival	**adventus, ūs**
army	**exercitus, ūs**
attack	**impetus, ūs**
location *site*	**situs, ūs**
senate	**senātus, ūs**

---

[1] Omit the note.

[2] This vocabulary contains all the fourth declension words to be seen in first year except the irregular *domus, ūs,* f.

cavalry	**equitātus, ūs**
infantry	**peditātus, ūs**
gathering *meeting*	**coetus, ūs**
chariot *cart*	**currus, ūs**
fruit *produce* *profit*	**frūctus, ūs**

EXERCISE 1

Translate, and tell what cases these forms are:

in lacum
in exercitū
exercitum
equitātum
peditātū
castra exercituum
impetus mīlitum
passū
peditātūs
situs castrōrum
adventū cōnsulis
signa exercitūs
cum equitātū
in equitātū Gallōrum
adventum
exercituī
in lacū
in senātum

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. Exercitus cum equitātū in oppidum vēnit.
2. Mīlitēs impetum vīdērunt.
3. Situm castrōrum laudāvit.
4. Nāvēs erant in lacū.
5. Equitātus erat causa victōriae.
6. Adventus exercitūs erat causa bellī.
7. Erat mōtus in prōvinciā.
8. Cōnsul cum equitātū et peditātū in cōnspectū hostium erat.
9. Senātus laudāvit virtūtem magistrātūs.

10. Nāvēs erant in portū.
11. Concursum cīvium vīdit.
12. Erat coetus nautārum in portū.
13. Erant currus et frūctus in castellō.
14. Conventus Gallōrum in oppidō erat.
15. Nōn erat frūctus in arce.

EXERCISE 3

Translate:

1. There was a concourse of citizens in the city.
2. The fleet was in the port.
3. There was a bridge on the river.
4. The arrival of the army was the cause of victory.
5. There was an assembly of Gauls in the town.
6. The messenger came into the province with the cavalry and the infantry.
7. There was a battle in sight of the consul.
8. There was a ship with sailors on the lake.
9. The produce was in the town.
10. The chariot was in the field.
11. The senate praised the site of the city.
12. The magistrates did not praise the revolution.
13. The profit of the war was slaves and grain.
14. There was a gathering of the magistrates in the citadel.
15. There was a disturbance in Gaul.

LESSON 8

THE FIFTH DECLENSION

19

VOCABULARY[1]

thing *affair*	**rēs, reī**
trust *confidence* *loyalty*	**fidēs, fideī**
day	**diēs, diēī, *m. (f.)***
battle line	**aciēs, aciēī**
hope	**spēs, speī**
he (she, it) had	**habuit**
they had	**habuērunt**

EXERCISE 1

Translate, and tell what cases these forms are:

rē	rērum
reī	speī
spē	aciēs mīlitum
spem	fidēs cōnsulis
aciē	diērum
in aciē	diem
aciēs	rem
fidē	rēbus
fideī	aciēbus
aciem	fidem
diē	rēs

[1] This vocabulary contains all the fifth declension words to be seen in first year.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. Mīlitēs in aciē erant.
2. Virtūs mīlitum erat spēs cōnsulis.
3. Fidem nūntiī laudāvit.
4. Senātus fidem nōn habuit.
5. Rēs cōnsulis in castrīs erant.
6. Cōnsul spem nōn habuit.
7. Aciem barbarōrum vīdit.
8. Aciēs Rōmānōrum in rīpā erat.
9. Rem vīdit.
10. Aciem in silvīs vīdit.
11. Diēs erat et nōn nox.
12. Adulēscentēs spem victōriae habuērunt.

EXERCISE 3

Translate:

1. The battle line was on the bank of the river.
2. The consul had a hope of victory.
3. They praised the loyalty of the consul.
4. The consul saw the affair.
5. The soldier was in the battle line.
6. The senate had no(t) hope of victory.
7. They saw the battle line in the forest.
8. He came into the camp with the cavalry and the infantry.
9. They praised the site of the camp.
10. They saw the battle line on the hill.
11. They had the things in the citadel.
12. It was the day of battle.

LESSON 9

REVIEW

1-19; 73; 74; 125; 138; 234, 1, 2, 3, 7

VOCABULARY

Gaul	**Gallia, ae**
lieutenant *envoy* *ambassador*	**lēgātus, ī**
lack *scarcity*	**inopia, ae**
nature	**nātūra, ae**
chief *leading man*	**prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.***
peace	**pāx, pācis**
desire *greed* *passion*	**cupiditās, cupiditātis**
flight	**fuga, ae**
fame *glory*	**glōria, ae**
abundance *supply*	**cōpia, ae**
troops	**cōpiae, cōpiārum**
fear	**timor, timōris**
he (she, it) waged war	**bellum gessit**

EXERCISE 1

Translate, parse the nouns, and diagram:

1. Lēgātus pācem et lībertātem Gallōrum laudāvit.
2. Prīnceps cupiditātem mīlitum nōn laudāvit.

3. Erat timor in castrīs Rōmānōrum.
4. Nāvis nautae in lacū erat.
5. Gallī glōriam Rōmānōrum nōn laudāvērunt.
6. Mīles locī nātūram vīdit.
7. Erat inopia frūmentī in castrīs Rōmānōrum.
8. Erat cōpia frūmentī in arce.
9. Lēgātus Gallīs frūmentum nōn dedit.
10. Prīnceps puerīs tēla dedit.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. The ambassador saw the nature of the place.
2. The chief did not praise the flight of the Gauls.
3. He did not praise the greed of the leading men.
4. The consul praised the name and the glory of the Romans.
5. He waged war with the troops of the enemy.
6. There was an abundance of grain and a scarcity of carts.
7. The fame of the consul was the cause of peace.
8. The consul's desire of glory was the cause of the battle.
9. He did not praise the passion and deeds of the chief.
10. There was a revolution in Gaul.
11. The ship was on the lake.
12. He waged war with the lieutenant.

EXERCISE 3

Translate:

Gallia est prōvincia. In prōvinciā Galliae erat lēgātus. Lēgātus exercitum habuit. Exercitus in castrīs erat. Castra exercitūs in silvīs erant. Gallī castra vīdērunt. Lībertās in Galliā nōn erat. Gallī frūmentum nōn habuērunt. Amīcī nōn erant lēgātō. Inopia frūmentī erat causa bellī. Lēgātus vīdit impetum Gallōrum et locī nātūram. Cum mīlitibus in silvās et montēs vēnit. Gallī in silvīs et montibus bellum cum lēgātō gessērunt. Victōria lēgātō erat. Mīlitēs lēgātum laudāvērunt.

EXERCISE 4

Translate:

Erat oppidum in montibus. In oppidō erat conjūrātiō nōbilitātis. In cīvitāte nōn erat lībertās. Prīncipēs cīvitātis frūmentum habuērunt. Erat pāx, nōn erat lībertās. Cupiditās rēgnī erat bellī causa. Bellum cum legiōnibus gessērunt. Victōria prīncipibus cīvitātis nōn erat. Nōn habuērunt gladiōs et tēla et frūmentum. Inopia frūmentī et tēlōrum et gladiōrum erat fugae causa. Prīncipibus cīvitātis glōria bellī nōn erat.

EXERCISE 5

Translate:

Lēgātus in Galliam cum cōpiīs vēnit. Lēgātus equitātum et mīlitēs habuit. In agrō lēgātus castra habuit; in castrīs tēla et gladiī et mīlitum impedīmenta erant. Gallia oppida et montēs et silvās et flūmina habuit. Gallia erat prōvincia lēgātī. Lēgātus legiōnēs habuit; legiōnēs signa habuērunt. Lēgātus cum servīs et mīlitibus erat in viā. Fīlia Gallī signa et legiōnēs vīdit. Vīdit lēgātum. Lēgātus amīcus fīliae erat.

EXERCISE 6

Translate:

The camp of the lieutenant was in Gaul. Gaul was the province of the lieutenant. In the camp of the lieutenant there were swords and weapons. In the camp the soldiers of the lieutenant had slaves. The slaves were Gauls. The Gauls were not friends of the soldiers. They were not friends of the lieutenant. There was no(t) liberty in Gaul. The Gauls did not have confidence in the envoy. The envoy was not the friend of the Gauls. The Gauls did not have grain. The lack of grain was a cause of sorrow to the Gauls. The Gauls and the daughters of the Gauls had fear of the Romans. In the towns of the Gauls there was a lack of beasts of burden. In the fields there was no(t) grain. The envoy of the senate did not give the Gauls grain and beasts of

burden. The lieutenant and the soldiers had grain and beasts of burden in the camp. The Gauls were enemies of the legions; there was no(t) peace in Gaul.

EXERCISE 7

Give the

1. *ablative singular;*
2. *genitive plural:*

rēs	cīvitās
vallēs	ager
vāllum	frūctus
flūmen	currus
puer	nauta
iter	arx
vulnus	legiō
servus	lēx
proelium	jūmentum
homō	jūs
mōns	adulēscēns
cīvis	hostis

EXERCISE 8

Write in Latin a twenty-five word composition about the lieutenant's camp in Gaul.

EXERCISE 9

Contest

Write as many complete sentences as you can that contain four words, one of which is in the genitive case.

REVIEW WORD LIST NO. 1

This list contains all the words seen so far.

thing *affair*	**rēs, reī**
part *direction*	**pars, partis**
ship	**nāvis, nāvis**
river	**flūmen, flūminis**
pace	**passus, ūs**
province	**prōvincia, ae**
friendship	**amīcitia, ae**
slave	**servus, ī**
fear	**timor, timōris**
a Gaul	**Gallus, ī**
war	**bellum, ī**
trust *confidence* *loyalty*	**fidēs, fideī**
mountain	**mōns, montis, *m.***
killing *slaughter*	**caedēs, caedis**
line (of march) *column*	**āgmen, āgminis**
a running together *concourse*	**concursus, ūs**
sight *vision*	**cōnspectus, ūs**
lack *scarcity*	**inopia, ae**

Gaul	**Gallia, ae**
daughter	**fīlia, ae**
fortune *fate*	**fortūna, ae**
place	**locus, ī**
number	**numerus, ī**
battle	**proelium, ī**
standard (military) *sign* *signal*	**signum, ī**
liberty	**lībertās, lībertātis**
day	**diēs, diēī, *m.* *(f.)***
citizen *fellow citizen*	**cīvis, cīvis, *m.***
fleet	**classis, classis *(abl.* e, *less often* ī*)***
name	**nōmen, nōminis**
meeting *assembly* *assizes*	**conventus, ūs**
magistrate *magistracy*	**magistrātus, ūs**
cause	**causa, ae**
forest *grove*	**silva, ae**
sword	**gladius, ī**
friend	**amīcus, ī**
weapon *dart*	**tēlum, ī**
town	**oppidum, ī**
nature	**nātūra, ae**
battle line	**aciēs, aciēī**

cohort	**cohors, cohortis**
courage *manliness* *virtue*	**virtūs, virtūtis, *f.***
deed *crime*	**facinus, facinoris**
setting	**occāsus, ūs**
port	**portus, ūs**
ditch	**fossa, ae**
victory	**victōria, ae**
a barbarian	**barbarus, ī**
kingly power *kingdom*	**rēgnum, ī**
beast of burden	**jūmentum, ī**
sorrow *grief* *pain*	**dolor, dolōris**
hope	**spēs, speī**
cold	**frīgus, frīgoris**
hill	**collis, collis, *m.***
enemy (public)	**hostis, hostis, *m.***
bank (of a river)	**rīpa, ae**
messenger *message* *report*	**nūntius, ī**
grain	**frūmentum, ī**
man	**homō, hominis, *m.***
movement *disturbance* *revolution*	**mōtus, ūs**
chief *leading man*	**prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.***

road *way*	via, ae
journey *way*	iter, itineris, *n.*
young man	adulēscēns, adulēscentis, *m.*
night	nox, noctis
moon	lūna, ae
a Roman	Rōmānus, ī
rampart	vāllum, ī
conspiracy	conjūrātiō, conjūrātiōnis
lake	lacus, ūs
arrival	adventus, ūs
right *justice*	jūs, jūris
bridge	pōns, pontis, *m.*
island	īnsula, ae
abundance *supply*	cōpia, ae
troops	cōpiae, cōpiārum
field	ager, agrī
fort	castellum, ī
consul	cōnsul, cōnsulis, *m.*
state *citizenship*	cīvitās, cīvitātis
army	exercitus, ūs
attack	impetus, ūs
side *flank*	latus, lateris
city	urbs, urbis
valley	vallēs, vallis
care *diligence*	dīligentia, ae

location *site*	**situs, ūs**
a fugitive	**fugitīvus, ī**
boy	**puer, puerī**
lieutenant *envoy* *ambassador*	**lēgātus, ī**
baggage	**impedīmenta, impedīmentōrum**
legion	**legiō, legiōnis**
senate	**senātus, ūs**
time	**tempus, temporis**
peace	**pāx, pācis**
citadel	**arx, arcis**
sailor	**nauta, ae, *m.***
camp	**castra, castrōrum**
nobility	**nōbilitās, nōbilitātis**
cavalry	**equitātus, ūs**
flight	**fuga, ae**
infantry	**peditātus, ūs**
wound	**vulnus, vulneris**
in *on*	**in, *prep. w. abl.***
with	**cum, *prep. w. abl.***
soldier	**mīles, mīlitis, *m.***
gathering *meeting*	**coetus, ūs**
chariot *cart*	**currus, ūs**
work *fortification*	**opus, operis**

fruit, *produce*, *profit*	**frūctus, ūs**
law	**lēx, lēgis**
into	**in,** ***prep. w. acc.***
desire, *greed*, *passion*	**cupiditās, cupiditātis**
fame, *glory*	**glōria, ae**
hill	**collis, collis,** ***m.***
and	**et,** ***conj.***
not	**nōn,** ***adv.***

LESSON 10

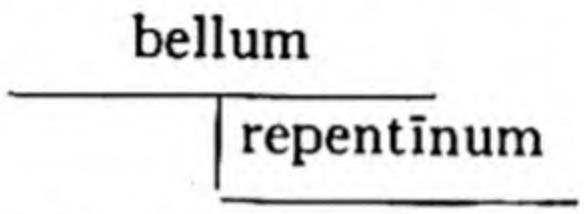
ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

20; 21; 75; 76

NOTES

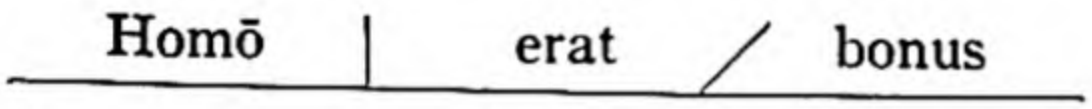
An adjective is attributive when it modifies the noun directly:

a sudden war	*bellum repentīnum*
many swords	*multī gladiī*
a good man	*homō bonus*



A predicate adjective is one that modifies the subject but forms part of the predicate:

The man was good.	*Homō erat bonus.*
The camp was large.	*Castra erant magna.*
The battle was sudden.	*Proelium repentīnum erat.*



An adjective of quality *(what kind?)* usually follows its noun. An adjective of quantity *(how long? how much? how many?)* usually precedes its noun.

VOCABULARY

new	**novus, a, um**
true	**vērus, a, um**
great, *large*	**magnus, a, um**
good	**bonus, a, um**

next to *nearest to*	**proximus, a, um; *dat.***
daily	**cotīdiānus, a, um**
neighboring	**fīnitimus, a, um; *dat.***
neighbors	**fīnitimī, fīnitimōrum**
friendly	**amīcus, a, um; *dat.***
strong *steady*	**firmus, a, um**
wicked *bad*	**improbus, a, um**
sudden	**repentīnus, a, um**
outstanding *remarkable*	**ēgregius, a, um**
much *many* (pl.)	**multus, a, um**
sentinels	**vigiliae, vigiliārum**
before	**ante, *prep. w. acc.***
after	**post, *prep. w. acc.***
judgment *trial*	**jūdicium, ī**
sudden *unexpected*	**subitus, a, um**

EXERCISE 1

Pick out the adjectives of quality and of quantity in the vocabulary.

EXERCISE 2

Decline:

magna glōria
lēgātus improbus
cīvitās proxima
jūdicium improbum

timor repentīnus
proelium cotīdiānum
causa improba
bellum novum
legiō nova
magnus numerus
multum frūmentum
nāvis bona

conjūrātiō improba
lēgātus novus
causa vēra
mīles ēgregius
āgmen firmum
vigilia cotīdiāna
nauta bonus
vigiliae novae

EXERCISE 3

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Nāvis lēgātī nova erat.
2. Fīlia mīlitēs improbōs vīdit.
3. Bellum subitum erat in Galliā.
4. Gallī novum bellum gessērunt.
5. In fīnitimā prōvinciā erat lēgātus ēgregius.
6. Lēgātus ēgregius magnum iter fēcit *(made)*.
7. Ante bellum legiōnēs in Galliam vēnērunt.
8. Proelium erat repentīnum.
9. Vērus amīcus erat.
10. Cīvitātēs proximae Gallīs erant.
11. Legiōnēs ēgregiae magnam glōriam lēgātō dedērunt.
12. Legiōnēs cum equitātū novō bellum gessērunt.
13. In proeliō repentīnō lēgātus barbarīs vulnera dedit.
14. Cum legiōnibus ēgregiīs Gallī multa bella gessērunt.
15. Lēgātus multōs gladiōs legiōnibus ēgregiīs dedit.
16. Fīlia laudāvit magnam virtūtem lēgātī ēgregiī.
17. Lēgātus improbus victōriam Gallōrum fīnitimōrum vīdit.
18. In īnsulā fīnitimā erant Gallī.
19. Gallī Rōmānīs proximī erant.
20. Gallī cum Rōmānīs multa et repentīna bella gessērunt. *(Do not translate the 'et.')*
21. Gallī amīcī Rōmānīs nōn erant.
22. Lēgātus improbus in jūdicium cum amīcīs vēnit.
23. Multae vigiliae in arce erant.

24. Post bellum lēgātus cum mīlitibus in castra nova vēnit.
25. Ante diem erat proelium cum Gallīs.

EXERCISE 4

Translate:

1. The Gauls were steady and good.
2. The lieutenant was outstanding.
3. The attack was sudden.
4. The lieutenant gave the remarkable soldier many slaves.
5. The camp was next to the great river.
6. The forest was large.
7. The soldiers saw the true cause.
8. There were daily battles.
9. The messengers were friendly to the enemy.
10. The Gauls gave many (and) new swords to the wicked men.
11. After the war the neighboring states were strong.
12. He saw the new camp of the Gauls.
13. They came into the forest nearest to the river.
14. The Gauls had a true cause of war.
15. Before the battle many soldiers came into the forest.
16. Many new swords were in the large camp.
17. There were many good soldiers in the camp.
18. The lieutenant had new sentinels.
19. The neighbors waged war with the wicked legions.
20. There were unexpected battles in the new province.

SUPPLEMENTARY

EXERCISE 5

Translate:

1. Proximī Gallīs erant.
2. Proelia erant cotīdiāna.
3. Nauta improbus erat.
4. Tēla nova erant.

5. Cum novīs cōpiīs in silvam vēnit.
6. Ēgregius erat mīles.
7. Cum multīs et bonīs mīlitibus in oppidum vēnit.
8. Novās cōpiās habuit.
9. Erant vigiliae in jūdiciō.
10. Glōria mīlitum erat magna.
11. In multa oppida vēnit.
12. Novum exercitum vīdit.
13. Lēgātō novam prōvinciam dedit.
14. Ante proelium repentīnum in castrīs erat lēgātus.
15. Novum habuit equitātum.
16. Lēgēs novās Gallīs dedit.
17. Multās et bonās fīliās vīdit.
18. Proximum silvīs erat flūmen.
19. Castra erant firma.
20. Conjūrātiōnem nōbilitātis nōn laudāvit.
21. Nova tēla legiōnibus dedērunt.
22. Virtūs mīlitis erat ēgregia.
23. Cum fīnitimīs bellum gessērunt.
24. Amīcitia erat vēra.
25. Post proelium mīlitēs in castra vēnērunt.

LESSON 11

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS *(continued)*

20; 21

VOCABULARY

right (of direction)	**dexter, dextera, dexterum** *or* **dexter, dextra, dextrum**
left	**sinister, sinistra, sinistrum**
beautiful	**pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum**
frequent *numerous*	**crēber, crēbra, crēbrum**
sick *ill*	**aeger, aegra, aegrum**
bad *evil*	**malus, a, um**
fresh *whole* *entire*	**integer, integra, integrum**
wretched *miserable*	**miser, misera, miserum**
a troop *squadron* (of cavalry)	**turma, ae**
an arrow	**sagitta, ae**
on (from) the right	**dextrā**
on (from) the left	**sinistrā**
knight *horseman* *cavalryman*	**eques, equitis,** ***m.***

EXERCISE 1

Decline:

fīlia pulchra	cīvitās misera
turma bona	lēgātus aeger
castra firma	via sinistra
homō malus	mīles miser
bella crēbra	multae sagittae
mīles aeger	lībertās pulchra

EXERCISE 2

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Cōpiae multae et integrae in silvās fīnitimās vēnērunt.
2. Turmae ēgregiae magnam glōriam habuērunt.
3. Mīlitēs et equitēs miserī erant.
4. Dextrā erat magna silva; sinistrā magnum flūmen.
5. Ante bellum integrae cōpiae in castra lēgātī malī vēnērunt.
6. Erant multae sagittae et multa tēla in lēgātī castrīs.
7. Dextrā vīdit multōs Gallōs.
8. Post bellum lēgātus cum multīs et integrīs cōpiīs in Galliam vēnit.
9. Lēgātus ēgregius Gallīs bonīs lībertātem dedit.
10. Post proelium multī mīlitēs vulnera habuērunt.

EXERCISE 3

Translate:

1. The beautiful daughter of the Gaul saw many slaves in the camp of the soldiers.
2. After the battle the Gaul gave the outstanding envoy a new sword.
3. The wicked daughter of the Gaul came into the forest.
4. The wretched soldiers had many wounds.
5. There was a great forest on the left; the camp was on the right, next to the river.

6. He saw a squadron of cavalry on the left in the great forest.
7. There were frequent reports of battles.
8. The sick lieutenant came into the camp with fresh troops.
9. The forest on the right was large, and the wicked envoy saw the battle line of Gauls next to the forest.
10. The lieutenant came into the neighboring fields with a squadron of cavalry.

EXERCISE 4

Translate:

1. Virtūs lēgātī erat ēgregia.
2. Erat in dextrā rīpā flūminis.
3. Nūntiī bellī erant crēbrī.
4. Castellum erat firmum.
5. Erant in silvīs cotīdiāna proelia.
6. Vulnera lēgātī erant multa.
7. Sinistrā erant vigiliae hostium.
8. Vigiliae in agrīs Gallōrum erant.
9. Currūs et coetus cīvium erant in viā sinistrā.
10. Fugam mīlitum vīdit.
11. Post proelium erat timor in castrīs.
12. Cōpiae lēgātī erant integrae.
13. Inopia sagittārum erat in exercitū.
14. Cōnsul novus erat.
15. In sinistrā flūminis rīpā erat arx urbis.
16. Mīles erat aeger.
17. Cīvēs malī et improbī amīcitiam vēram nōn laudāvērunt.
18. Latus castrōrum in rīpā erat.
19. Fugitīvus miser erat.
20. Cum parte cōpiārum integrārum in agrōs vēnit.
21. Virtūs exercitūs erat ēgregia.
22. Lēx nova erat.
23. Fīlia lēgātī pulchra erat.
24. Lacūs multōs et magnōs in Galliā vīdit.
25. Aciēs proxima flūminī erat.

EXERCISE 5

Translate:

1. He saw the greed of the ambassador.
2. The sentinels were new.
3. The battle was sudden.
4. He came into the camp with many sick soldiers.
5. He praised the courage of the cavalry.
6. The cavalry were on the right bank.
7. He saw the camp on the left bank of the river.
8. They gave a beautiful sword to the messenger.
9. They gave a new sword to the wicked Gaul.
10. Many were the wounds of the fugitive.
11. Many were the wounds of the sick soldier.
12. The wretched daughter of the soldier was in the forest.
13. They praised the laws of the new province.
14. The crimes of the wicked envoy were the cause of the war.
15. They waged war with bad neighbors.
16. They gave the soldiers many new weapons.
17. The Gauls saw the wounds of the sailor.
18. The ships were good and strong.
19. They gave swords to the wicked (men).
20. After the battle the soldiers had many wounds.
21. Fresh troops came into the new camp.
22. He gave the Gauls arrows.
23. They praised the manliness of the messenger.
24. The new camp was on the right bank of the river.
25. The lakes in Gaul were not large.

EXERCISE 6

Write ten complete sentences that contain some form of the word 'lēgātus.'

LESSON 12

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

22

VOCABULARY

heavy *important*	**gravis, e**
brave	**fortis, e**
all *every*	**omnis, e**
noble	**nōbilis, e**
hard *difficult*	**difficilis, e**
easy	**facilis, e**
of cavalry *cavalry* (adj.)	**equester, equestris, equestre**
fresh *recent*	**recēns, recēns, recentis**
unbelievable	**incrēdibilis, e**
equal	**pār, pār, paris; *dat.* (*like* gravis)**
swift	**celer, celeris, celere**
fortunate *happy*	**fēlīx, fēlīx, fēlīcis**
unarmed	**inermis, e**
weary *tired*	**dēfessus, a, um**

EXERCISE 1

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Mīlitēs fortēs erant.

2. Adulēscēns nōbilis erat.
3. Lēgātus multōs et nōbilēs mīlitēs habuit.
4. Recentia vulnera habuit.
5. Gallī Rōmānīs parēs nōn erant.
6. Mīlitēs multōs gladiōs lēgātō fortī dedērunt.
7. Bellum erat difficile et grave.
8. Via facilis erat.
9. Gallī inermēs erant.
10. Equitēs celerēs erant.
11. Omnis Gallia magna erat.
12. Post bellum mīlitēs dēfessī in castra vēnērunt.
13. Erat bellum incrēdibile in prōvinciā.
14. Gallīs inermibus gladiōs dedit.
15. Omnēs Gallī bellum cum lēgātō et mīlitibus fortibus gessērunt.
16. Lēgātus cum multīs et novīs cōpiīs in silvam vēnit.
17. Mīlitēs dēfessī cum lēgātō in castra vēnērunt.
18. Omnēs Gallī gladiōs pulchrōs habuērunt.
19. Post proelium equestre glōriam incrēdibilem lēgātī nōbilis laudāvērunt.
20. Cīvēs fēlīcēs erant.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. The lieutenant came into the river with the brave soldiers and the swift cavalry.
2. On the left the noble Gaul saw the mountains of the province.
3. The daughter gave the noble soldiers an unbelievable number of swords.
4. They praised the swift and brave Gauls.
5. The unarmed soldiers with the noble lieutenant came into the fields next to the camp.
6. The brave messenger had the standard of the legion; he came into the towns of the Gauls. He saw the ramparts of the

GOVT GIRLS COLLEGE SRINAGA ACC. NO

towns, the number of slaves, the beasts of burden, the swift cavalry.

EXERCISE 3

Translate:

1. He saw the beautiful river of Gaul.
2. The Gauls were brave and numerous.
3. He came into the camp with an unarmed soldier.
4. The glory of the lieutenant was unbelievable.
5. There were soldiers in the beautiful cities of the Gauls.
6. He saw the weary daughter of the Gaul.
7. They were equal to the Gauls.
8. He gave a sword to the unarmed soldier.
9. The chief was ill.
10. There was a beautiful ship on the lake.
11. The battle line was on the beautiful bank of the river.
12. Every chief in Gaul was noble.
13. The way was hard.
14. The lieutenant came into the beautiful province with fresh troops and brave cavalry.

SUPPLEMENTARY

EXERCISE 4

Translate:

1. The young man was fortunate.
2. The road was easy.
3. The slaves were not happy.
4. The new ambassador was in Gaul.
5. The outstanding citizen was in the beautiful province.
6. There were wretched Gauls in the beautiful province.
7. There was a camp in Gaul.
8. The messenger of the envoy was wicked.
9. He praised the manliness of the cavalryman.
10. The war was sudden.
11. There was a sudden war in Gaul.

12. The soldiers were wicked.
13. The troops were fresh.
14. There were many fresh troops in the camp.
15. There were good soldiers in the large camp.
16. The troops were in the forest.
17. The fresh troops were in the province.
18. There was a cavalry battle in the forest.
19. The slave came into the fort.
20. The lieutenant saw the nature of the place.
21. The lieutenant had great glory.
22. The battle was the cause of the lieutenant's glory.
23. The sudden victory was the cause of great glory.
24. The friendship of the Gauls was beautiful.
25. The soldier was on the bank.
26. The whole legion was in the citadel.
27. There were many sudden attacks in the mountains.
28. The battles were frequent.
29. The Gauls were brave.
30. There were wicked and good Gauls in the province.
31. The wicked Gauls came into the forest.
32. Fresh troops came into the camp.
33. The lieutenant praised true courage.
34. After the recent battle all the soldiers were tired.
35. The territory of the Gauls was next to the great river.
36. The wretched soldiers had many sorrows.
37. The state was strong.
38. The senate was good.
39. The affair was bad.
40. The battle was the cause of the war.
41. The battle line was strong.
42. The hope of freedom was great.
43. The new army was in the forest.
44. The army was large and brave.
45. The envoy gave new swords to the soldiers.
46. The soldiers gave many new swords to the Gauls.
47. The Gauls saw the baggage of the army.

48. The new standards of the legions were beautiful.
49. The soldiers had many good weapons.
50. Before the war all the Gauls were in the fields.

LESSON 13

PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND PERSONS

31

VOCABULARY

courage, bravery	**fortitūdō, fortitūdinis**
authority, influence	**auctōritās, auctōritātis**
father	**pater, patris (patrum)**
brother	**frāter, frātris (frātrum)**
boundary, territory	**fīnēs, fīnium, *m.***
chain, bond	**vinculum, ī**
leader, guide, general	**dux, ducis, *m.***
arms, weapons	**arma, armōrum**
fort, garrison	**praesidium, ī**
Italy	**Italia, ae**

EXERCISE 1

Translate and parse:

tē	nōs	mēcum
tibi	ego	vōbīscum
mihi	nostrī	nōbīs

mē	tū	meī
vestrī	tuī	tēcum
vestrum	nostrum	vōbīs

EXERCISE 2

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Frāter Gallī mihi arma dedit.
2. Dux tē in silvīs vīdit.
3. Gallī bellum vōbīscum gessērunt.
4. Mīlitēs nōbīscum in castra vēnērunt.
5. Pater mēcum in urbem vēnit.
6. Pater lēgātī mē cum hostibus in Italiā vīdit.
7. Fortitūdō patris lēgātī glōriam nōbīs omnibus dedit.
8. Pōns erat in flūmine.
9. Mīlitēs nōbīscum in colle erant.
10. Auctōritās senātūs magna erat.
11. Frāter cōnsulis in fīnēs hostium mēcum vēnit.
12. Mīlitēs dēfessī nōbīs tēla dedērunt.
13. Lēgātus improbus mē in vinculīs habuit.
14. Praesidium urbis magnum et firmum erat.
15. Hostis in Italiā erat.

EXERCISE 3

Translate:

1. The consul's brother gave me the weapons.
2. The messenger came with me into the fort.
3. The sailor gave you a ship.
4. The senate gave the lieutenant a province.
5. To all of you *(to you all)* he gave swords.
6. The general gave you a strong garrison.
7. They saw me on the road.
8. They came into the fort with me.
9. The man saw you on the bridge.

10. They waged war with you.
11. The brother's authority was great.
12. The guide came with us into the territory of the enemy.
13. There were arms and chains in Italy.
14. The father's courage was remarkable.
15. The influence and bravery of the consul was unbelievable.

EXERCISE 4

Give the genitive plural of:

rēs	āgmen	ager
flūmen	cohors	fortis
gravis	mōtus	pār
mōns	diēs	mīles
magnus	nox	opus
servus	dux	firmus
hostis	integer	eques
frāter	turma	legiō

REVIEW WORD LIST NO. 2

This list contains all the new words introduced since the last Review Word List.

next to *nearest to*	**proximus, a, um; *dat.***
daily (adj.)	**cotīdiānus, a, um**
neighboring	**fīnitimus, a, um; *dat.***
neighbors	**fīnitimī, fīnitimōrum**
strong *steady*	**firmus, a, um**
wicked *bad*	**improbus, a, um**
new	**novus, a, um**
brave	**fortis, e**
weary *tired*	**dēfessus, a, um**
sudden	**repentīnus, a, um**
unarmed	**inermis, e**
swift	**celer, celeris, celere**
after	**post, *prep. w. acc.***
before	**ante, *prep. w. acc.***
equal	**pār, pār, paris; *dat.***
unbelievable	**incrēdibilis, e**
friendly	**amīcus, a, um; *dat.***
sentinels	**vigiliae, vigiliārum**
fresh *recent*	**recēns, recēns, recentis**
true	**vērus, a, um**

much *many* (pl.)	**multus, a, um**
outstanding *remarkable*	**ēgregius, a, um**
easy	**facilis, e**
hard *difficult*	**difficilis, e**
right (of direction)	**dexter, dextera, dexterum** **dexter, dextra, dextrum**
left	**sinister, sinistra, sinistrum**
frequent *numerous*	**crēber, crēbra, crēbrum**
noble	**nōbilis, e**
all *every*	**omnis, e**
sick *ill*	**aeger, aegra, aegrum**
courage *bravery*	**fortitūdō, fortitūdinis**
father	**pater, patris (patrum)**
bad *evil*	**malus, a, um**
Italy	**Italia, ae**
arms *weapons*	**arma, armōrum**
on (from) the right	**dextrā**
on (from) the left	**sinistrā**
an arrow	**sagitta, ae**
a troop *squadron* (of cavalry)	**turma, ae**
boundary *territory*	**fīnēs, fīnium, *m.***

garrison *fort*	**praesidium, ī**
chain *bond*	**vinculum, ī**
wretched *miserable*	**miser, misera, miserum**
brother	**frāter, frātris (frātrum)**
sudden *unexpected*	**subitus, a, um**
fresh *whole* *entire*	**integer, integra, integrum**
beautiful	**pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum**
authority *influence*	**auctōritās, auctōritātis**
leader *guide* *general*	**dux, ducis, *m.***
knight *horseman* *cavalryman*	**eques, equitis, *m.***
great *large*	**magnus, a, um**
good	**bonus, a, um**
judgment *trial*	**jūdicium, ī**
fortunate *happy*	**fēlīx, fēlīx, fēlīcis**
heavy *important*	**gravis, e**
of cavalry *cavalry* (adj.)	**equester, equestris, equestre**

LESSON 14

REVIEW

20-22

soul *mind* *character*	**animus, ī**
refinement *culture* *mercy*	**hūmānitās, hūmānitātis**
supreme power *(highest) command*	**imperium, ī**
wrong *injustice*	**injūria, ae**
boldness	**audācia, ae**
speech	**ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis**
death	**mors, mortis**
wall	**mūrus, ī**
nation *people*	**populus, ī**
a German	**Germānus, ī**
but	**sed,** *conj.*
however	**autem,** *conj., postp.*[1]
Roman	**Rōmānus, a, um**

EXERCISE 1

Translate:

Gallia pulchra erat. In Galliā magna flūmina, silvae, montēs erant. In montibus et agrīs Gallī multa oppida habuērunt. In

---

[1] postp. = postpositive; *i. e., autem* never stands first in a clause.

agrīs frūmentum erat; in oppidīs tēla et jūmenta et servī. Lībertās et pāx in Galliā erat. Rōmānī autem in Galliam vēnērunt. Montēs magnōs et agrōs bonōs vīdērunt. Servōs et jūmenta Gallōrum vīdērunt. Senātus Galliam lēgātō dedit. Lēgātus cum Gallīs bellum gessit. Victōria autem nōn erat Gallīs. In silvīs et agrīs mīlitēs Rōmānī castra habuērunt. Pāx in Galliā erat, sed lībertās nōn erat.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. Animī Gallōrum firmī erant.
2. Post mortem ducis mīlitēs in Italiam vēnērunt.
3. Post bellum legiōnēs in Galliam vēnērunt.
4. Incrēdibilem audāciam ducis laudāvit.
5. Cum cōpiīs recentibus in silvās vēnit.
6. Tēla nova mīlitibus dedit.
7. Conjūrātiōnem nōbilitātis nōn laudāvērunt.
8. Multa tēla in castrīs erant.
9. Hūmānitātem populī Rōmānī laudāvit.
10. Pater Gallī malus erat.
11. Multī mīlitēs erant in oppidō.
12. In ponte erat praesidium firmum.
13. Equitātus celer in collė erat.
14. Prīncipēs improbī imperium in Galliā habuērunt.
15. Omnēs Gallī tēla habuērunt.
16. Parēs erant Germānīs.
17. Mūrī Rōmānōrum firmī erant.
18. Gallus currum habuit pulchrum.
19. Gallīs inermibus gladiōs dedit.
20. Cum hominibus improbīs in oppidum vēnit.
21. Mīlitēs fortēs dēfessī erant.
22. Post proelium nauta dēfessus erat.
23. Prīnceps ōrātiōnem Rōmānōrum laudāvit.
24. Injūria erat causa bellī.
25. Turmās celerēs vīdit.

EXERCISE 3

Translate:

1. The Romans however saw the Germans on the left bank.
2. They praised the culture and boldness of the Roman people.
3. After the death of the chief the magistrates had supreme power.
4. The character of the consul was steady.
5. After the injustices of the consul, they did not praise the Roman nation.
6. He praised the refinement but not the speech of the Romans.
7. He praised the unbelievable movements of the mind.
8. The chief was on the wall.
9. The chiefs saw the culture of the Romans.
10. He did not praise the wrong.

LESSON 15

THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

39-48; Page 30

VOCABULARY

I excite *I arouse*	**incitō, *1, tr.***
I pacify	**pācō, *1, tr.***
I lay waste	**vāstō, *1, tr.***
I prepare	**parō, *1, tr.***
I summon *I call*	**vocō, *1, tr.***
I call together	**convocō, *1, tr.***
I fight	**bellō, *1, intr.*** ***'with,'* cum, *prep. w. abl.*** ***'against,'* contrā, *prep. w. acc.***
I take by storm	**expugnō, *1, tr.***
I strengthen *I encourage*	**cōnfirmō, *1, tr.***
I seize	**occupō, *1, tr.***
I give	**dō, dare, dedī, datus, *1, tr.***
I help	**adjuvō, adjuvāre, adjūvī, adjūtus, *1, tr.***
Caesar	**Caesar, Caesaris**

EXERCISE 1

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Lēgātus Gallōs incitābat.
2. Mīlitēs cum equitibus Galliam pācant.

3. Gallī gladiōs parābant.
4. Fīlia frūmentum mīlitibus dat.
5. Caesar amīcitiam cōnfirmat.
6. Prīncipēs cīvitātis convocō.
7. Gallōs in urbem vocās.
8. Contrā Germānōs bellātis.
9. Ego urbem occupābō; tū castra occupābis.
10. Legiōnēs fortēs agrōs vāstābant.
11. Caesar arcem urbis pulchrae expugnābit.
12. Gallī contrā Caesarem bellābunt.
13. Gallī legiōnēs fortēs adjuvābunt.
14. Turma equitum improbōrum Gallōrum agrōs vāstat.
15. Gladiōs parō.
16. Omnēs amīcōs vocābam.
17. Animōs mīlitum cōnfirmās.
18. Caesar mē vocat.
19. Caesar oppida hostium expugnat.
20. Agrōs cīvium vāstābis.
21. Mihi lībertātem dās.
22. Collem occupābunt.
23. Multī mīlitēs oppidum occupābunt.
24. Ante bellum legiōnēs ēgregiae tēla parābant.
25. Post prīncipis mortem Galliam pācābitis.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. I will lay waste the fields next to the city.
2. They are fighting against the wicked Germans.
3. You, Caesar, will pacify Gaul.
4. The leader was strengthening the neighboring garrisons and laying waste the fields of the Gauls.
5. He summons the sentinels into the new camp.
6. He seizes the large camp.
7. You, soldiers, will prepare swords and weapons.
8. The legions were laying waste all the fields.

9. I shall seize the hills and the mountains; you will seize the forest.
10. The leader was arousing the Gauls.
11. I was helping the brave soldiers.
12. On the right Caesar was fighting with a squadron of horsemen; on the left I was seizing the beautiful city of the Gauls.
13. The wicked lieutenant was summoning the leading men of Gaul into the camp.
14. We were fighting against the Gauls.
15. You will pacify the Gauls in the province.

EXERCISE 3

Contest

Write as many sentences as you can using the second person only.

SUPPLEMENTARY

EXERCISE 4

Translate:

1. We shall arouse the citizens and the slaves.
2. The leader is summoning us.
3. He calls all of you *(you all)*.
4. I give you laws.
5. I take the city by storm.
6. We are fighting with you.
7. You are strengthening the peace of Gaul.
8. After the arrival of the messenger there were daily battles.
9. You are helping me.
10. He is calling together the leading men of the state.
11. We are seizing the hill.
12. After the cavalry battle he will seize the fort.
13. He will give grain to the friendly barbarians.
14. The soldiers are not helping Caesar.
15. Caesar helps us.

16. There was a strong garrison in the city.
17. I am preparing darts and swords.
18. He is laying waste the fields.
19. We are laying waste the fields.
20. You are pacifying all Gaul.
21. You will seize the bridge.
22. We are seizing the kingly power.
23. I am encouraging you.
24. After the death of the envoy, Caesar summons the leading men of the state.
25. I shall help Caesar.

EXERCISE 5

Translate:

1. You are exciting.
2. He was pacifying.
3. I am fighting.
4. We shall encourage.
5. They will seize.
6. He was helping.
7. You (pl.) will prepare.
8. I shall call.
9. We prepare.
10. You take by storm.
11. We strengthen.
12. They were calling.
13. I am praising.
14. You are calling.
15. He fights.
16. He arouses.
17. He is exciting.
18. I shall summon.
19. They were giving.
20. I am seizing.
21. We shall help.
22. He calls together.
23. You are fighting.
24. You fight.
25. We were giving.
26. We help.
27. You (pl.) summon.
28. He pacifies.
29. We shall praise.
30. He was giving.

LESSON 16

THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

Page 30

VOCABULARY

I see	**videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, *2, tr.***
I come	**veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *4, intr.***
I hold	**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, *2, tr.***
I have	**habeō, *2, tr.***
I defend	**dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, *3, tr.***
I show	**ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, { ostentus, / ostēnsus, } *3, tr.***
I bear *I carry on* *I wage* (war)	**gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *3, tr.*** ***'with,'* cum, *prep. w. abl.*** ***'against,'* contrā *or* in, *preps. w. acc.***
water	**aqua, ae**
plunder *booty*	**praeda, ae**
hostage	**obses, obsidis, *c.***
across	**trāns, *prep. w. acc.***

EXERCISE 1

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Gallī multās sagittās habēbant.
2. Multōs mīlitēs et multa tēla vidēbimus.
3. Tibi currūs in arce ostendam.
4. Turma celeris omnēs collēs tenet.
5. Urbem Gallōrum tenēbam.

6. Causās bellī audiēs.
7. Concursum omnium cīvium bonōrum vidēs.
8. Tū, dux, Galliam habēbis.
9. Urbēs pulchrās Galliae omnēs vidēbitis.
10. Omnēs gladiōs mīlitum mihi ostendēs.
11. Rōmānī Gallīs parēs erant.
12. Nūntius inermis veniēbat trāns flūmen in castra Gallōrum.
13. Prōvinciam vidēbō.
14. In urbem veniam.
15. Lēgātus Gallīs improbīs tēla et legiōnēs ostendēbat.
16. Mīlitēs castra dēfendēbant.
17. Lēgātus Galliam tenēbit.
18. Urbem tenēbō.
19. Gallī multa bella cum lēgātō gerent.
20. Cōnsul fēlīx vēram amīcitiam laudābat.
21. Vōs, mīlitēs, cum malīs hostibus multa bella gerētis.
22. In silvās veniēbās.
23. Nūntius cum integrīs cōpiīs trāns flūmen veniet.
24. Nūntium nōn audiēs.
25. Vincula improbōs hominēs tenent.
26. Videō incrēdibilem mīlitum numerum.
27. Novum erat bellum in Galliā.
28. Mīlitēs mūrum castrōrum dēfendent.
29. Gallus multōs amīcōs habēbat.
30. Lēgātus equitātum in silvās mittet.
31. Gallī agrōs dēfendent.
32. Vōs mē dēfendētis.
33. Vōs dēfendēbam.
34. Mīlitēs lēgātum improbum in silvīs tenēbant.
35. Mīlitēs fortēs in montibus videō.
36. Mīlitēs cōpiam aquae et frūmentī habent.
37. Gallī obsidēs Caesarī nōn dabunt.
38. Multa vulnera post bellum gerēbam.
39. Vōbīs obsidēs mittēbāmus.
40. Oppida in Italiā dēfendēmus.
41. Gallī multōs et fortēs servōs habēbant.

42. Equitātus in montēs veniet.
43. Gallī obsidēs inter sē *(among themselves)* dant.
44. Mīlitēs in cōnspectū Caesaris praedam dēfendēbant.
45. Frāter cōnsulis cum equitibus in tempore veniet.
46. Gallī oppida dēfendent.
47. Caesar prīncipēs Gallōrum in castra vocābat.
48. Gallī silvās et montēs nōn tenēbunt.
49. Dextrā aciem Gallōrum videō.
50. Gallī obsidēs nōn tenent.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. I shall carry on the war.
2. They were coming into the river.
3. The brave Gauls defend the city.
4. He will show the soldier the great mountain.
5. They were waging war in the mountains.
6. We hear the men.
7. The Gauls do not have many weapons.
8. Before the battle the leader was coming across the river with the troops.
9. The Gauls will hold the mountain.
10. The wicked leaders were holding the forest.
11. We will defend the senate.
12. We shall hear the truth. *(Use neuter accusative plural of 'vērus.')*
13. They were showing the envoy the arms, the grain, the carts, and the soldiers.
14. You all see the neighboring nations.
15. Many sentinels were holding the roads.
16. A strong nation will defend the boundaries.
17. I was waging war with the brave Gauls.
18. All the Gauls were coming across the great river.
19. We were defending the ditches.
20. We praise the remarkable courage of the brave legions.

21. You all see the beautiful standards of the soldiers.
22. The soldiers have a supply of water and grain.
23. The brave soldiers are defending the cities.
24. The sailors do not have the booty.
25. In the province of the general there was a supply of men and grain and weapons.
26. We shall come into the province.
27. We will hold the grain and the weapons of the wicked men.
28. You will defend the beautiful city and the province after the battle.
29. They were holding the grain in the city.
30. We praise the courage of the remarkable soldier.
31. You hear the cause of the war.
32. They will give the leader hostages.
33. The hostages were coming across the river into the camp of the brave general.
34. The soldiers were coming across the mountains.
35. The sick lieutenant shows the camp to the new soldiers.
36. The leading men of the Gauls will give you grain.
37. I see the fresh troops in the forest.
38. A squadron of cavalry is holding the forest.
39. The Roman soldiers wage frequent wars with the brave Gauls.
40. The wicked soldiers will come into the province of the brave general.
41. We see the wretched soldiers.
42. The enemy was in the mountains.
43. They were defending the beautiful cities of the province.
44. The brave soldiers were hearing the causes of the battle.
45. They were listening to the speech of the consul.
46. The brave citizens will bear arms.
47. He is waging war with wicked men.
48. The enemy is holding the plunder and the citizens.
49. Caesar is coming across the mountains.
50. The weary soldiers were brave.

SUPPLEMENTARY

EXERCISE 3

Translate:

1. Galliam vidēs.
2. In Galliam veniēs.
3. Oppida Gallōrum tenēbimus.
4. Lēgēs Gallōrum audiam.
5. Gallōs fortēs vidēmus.
6. Bellum cum Germānīs gerimus.
7. Flūmen dēfendēbāmus.
8. In prōvinciam veniēmus.
9. Cum Gallīs bellum gerunt.
10. Equitātus agrōs vāstābit.
11. Trāns flūmen Germānī erant.
12. Agrōs trāns flūmen Gallī habent.
13. Mihi castra ostendet.
14. Vōbīscum in silvās veniam.
15. Virtūtem ēgregiam Gallōrum vidēbimus.
16. Castra Rōmānōrum Gallī tenent.
17. Multōs obsidēs habēbant.
18. In Gallōrum fīnibus bellum gerimus.
19. Mīlitēs audiō.
20. Vōs flūmen dēfendētis; nōs castra dēfendēmus.
21. Omnem Galliam mihi ostendit.
22. Praedam mīlitēs tenēbunt.
23. Bellum nōbīscum gerēbātis.
24. Montēs in Galliā vidēbis.
25. In Gallōrum castrīs mīlitēs Rōmānī erant.
26. Germānōs audīs.
27. Obsidēs prīncipum cīvitātis tenēbās.
28. Aquam nōn habēmus.
29. Obsidēs Rōmānōs nōn tenēbunt.
30. Mē et Gallum dēfendēbās.
31. Agrōs et oppida Gallōrum mihi ostendunt.
32. Bellum nōn gerētis.

33. Tē nōn dēfendam.
34. Equitātum vidēbis.
35. Pontem tenent et trāns flūmen veniunt.
36. Pontem nōn dēfendēmus sed castra dēfendēmus.
37. Germānī trāns flūmen venient.
38. Obsidēs in castrīs tenēbitis.
39. Mihi tēla dabis.
40. Bellum cum Gallīs gerēmus et agrōs Gallōrum vāstābimus.
41. Tē nōn audiēbam.
42. In oppidum veniet.
43. Montēs vidēbimus.
44. Castra trāns flūmen erant.
45. Trāns montēs in Galliam veniēmus.
46. Lacum vidētis.
47. Obsidēs habent.
48. Galliam pācābimus.
49. Agrōs Germānōrum vāstābant.
50. In prōvinciam cum integrīs cōpiīs veniet.

LESSON 17

THE PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE

49; 52; Page 31

VOCABULARY

I bring in *I import*	**importō, *1, tr.***
I support *I hold up* *I sustain*	**sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentus, *2, tr.***
I place *I station*	**collocō, *1, tr.*; in *w. abl.***
I frighten	**perterreō, *2, tr.***
I lead	**dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, *3, tr.***
I fortify	**commūniō, *4, tr.*** **mūniō, *4, tr.***
I arrive at	**perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum, *4, intr.*; ad *or* in *w. acc.***
to[1] *towards*	**ad, *prep. w. acc.***
narrow pass *difficulty*	**angustiae, angustiārum**
soldier's pack *baggage*	**sarcinae, sarcinārum**
short	**brevis, e**
against	**contrā, *prep. w. acc.***
month	**mēnsis, mēnsis, *m.***

[1] When 'to' expresses movement or motion as with verbs of sending, coming, etc., use *ad;* otherwise, use the dative of the indirect object. Thus: *Ad castra veniō,* I come to the camp; but, *Servōs tibi dō,* I give slaves to you.

EXERCISE 1

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Gallī ad flūmen pervēnērunt.
2. Caesar in castra mīlitum pervēnit.
3. Mīlitēs impetum Gallōrum sustinuērunt.
4. Mīlitēs in angustiīs erant et impedīmenta dēfendēbant.
5. Gallī in oppida tēla et gladiōs importāvērunt.
6. Caesar in viīs vigiliās collocāvit.
7. Legiō castra commūnīvit.
8. Legiōnēs in montēs ante proelium pervēnerant et castra commūnīverant.
9. Mīlitēs trāns flūmen in prōvinciam dūxī.
10. Tū equitātum in silvās dūxerās.
11. Equitēs Gallōs perterruerant.
12. Gallī cum lēgātō improbō breve bellum gessērunt.
13. Gallī legiōnēs perterruerant.
14. Tēla et frūmentum importāvistis.
15. Glōriam victōriae nōn habēbitis.
16. Pontem contrā hostem dēfendērunt.
17. Natūram locī vīdistī.
18. Sarcinās in colle collocāvērunt.
19. Omnia Galliae oppida vīdī.
20. Caesar omnēs angustiās tenuit.
21. Mihi multa tēla dedistī.
22. Ad mūrōs mīlitēs dūxerās.
23. Nūntium audīvī.
24. Urbem et agrōs Gallī dēfenderant.
25. Caesarem ante bellum vīderāmus.
26. Mīlitēs cum equitātū in montēs pervēnerant.
27. Caesar pontem in flūmine commūnīvit.
28. Caesar bellum in Galliā gessit.
29. Gallī pervēnērunt in urbem; Caesar omnēs Gallōs perterruerat.
30. Exercitus impetum equitātūs nōn sustinuit; Caesar equitātum dūxerat.

31. Integrōs mīlitēs in proelium Caesar dūxit.
32. Multa proelia et multās victōriās vīdimus.
33. Caesar ante proelium animōs mīlitum cōnfirmāverat.
34. Caesar lēgātōs in urbem vocāvit.
35. Post mēnsem Caesar omnēs cīvitātēs pācāverat.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. Caesar fought with the wicked Gauls.
2. The slaves of the Gauls did not have liberty *(liberty was not to)*.
3. The Gauls had great glory *(there was . . . to)*.
4. The soldiers had seized the hill.
5. The cavalry was helping the soldiers.
6. Caesar had led the legions into battle.
7. The legions laid waste the fields of the Gauls.
8. He summoned all the envoys.
9. The brave soldiers were coming into the city.
10. We have seen Caesar.
11. Caesar had taken the cities by storm.
12. The cavalry frightened the slaves.
13. Caesar showed you the remarkable legions.
14. We saw the beautiful standards of the legions.
15. He had prepared weapons and strengthened the morale *(animōs)* of the men before the battle.
16. After the battle we shall see the remarkable courage of the brave legions and the cavalry.
17. You had taken the camp by storm.
18. They defended the wall.
19. After a short war Caesar laid waste all Gaul.
20. After a month I heard the message of the soldier.
21. The Gauls gave Caesar hostages.
22. They came across the mountains towards the city.
23. I will show you the great mountains of Gaul.
24. We waged a short war with the brave Germans.

25. A brave lieutenant had fought against the Gauls.
26. They had fortified the camp and were bringing in grain and water.
27. You will have fortified the city.
28. We arrived at the city before the war.
29. The army did not sustain the attack of the cavalry.
30. He had given the Gauls a hostage.
31. We have not seen the ships of the sailors.
32. They have seen the neighboring islands.
33. They defended the soldiers' packs.
34. You had stationed the legions on the hill and the cavalry in the forest.
35. They placed the baggage in the carts.

EXERCISE 3

Translate:

1. I supported.
2. You were leading.
3. He had frightened.
4. They sent.
5. He will have sent.
6. They arrived.
7. I stationed.
8. We imported.
9. I am importing.
10. You are sustaining.
11. He had stationed.
12. They will fortify.
13. He fortified.
14. They frightened.
15. They held up.
16. You lead.
17. He led.
18. He had seen.
19. You will come.
20. We had arrived.
21. I was coming.
22. You pacified.
23. They had prepared.
24. He will fortify.
25. I saw.
26. He had listened.
27. We held.
28. They will hear.
29. I defended.
30. He had defended.

LESSON 18

THE SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE[1]

PURPOSE CLAUSES

Pages 32-33

In English to express the purpose, object, or end of an action we use a subordinate clause introduced by *in order that, that, etc.*

He came in order that he might see Caesar.
He came that he might see Caesar.

Or we use the infinitive:

He came to see Caesar.
He came in order to see Caesar.

These expressions answer the question: For what purpose did he come? Why did he come?

To express purpose in Latin a subordinate clause introduced by **ut,** or, when negative, by **nē,** is used. The verb in this subordinate clause is always in the *subjunctive mood*. The present tense is used when the main verb is present or future, and the imperfect tense when it is past.

I come { *to* / *in order to* / *in order that I may* / *that I may* } *see Caesar.*

Veniō ut Caesarem videam.

He fought { *lest the Gauls capture* / *in order that the Gauls might not capture* / *so that the Gauls would not capture* } *the city.*

Pugnāvit nē Gallī urbem expugnārent.

---

[1] The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive should be learned at this point for the sake of completeness; sentences employing these forms will be given later.

VOCABULARY

I fight	pugnō, *1, intr.* *'with,'* cum, *prep. w. abl.* *'against,'* contrā, *prep. w. acc.*
I report	nūntiō, *1, tr.*
I spend the winter	hiemō, *1, intr.*
I renew	redintegrō, *1, tr.*
I hand over	trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus, *3, tr.*
I place *I put*	pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *3, tr.;* in *w. abl.*
I pitch camp	castra pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *3, tr.*
I hasten *I struggle*	contendō, contendere, contendī, *3, intr.*
I inhabit *I dwell in*	incolō, incolere, incoluī, incultus, *3, tr.*
(I) come together	conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventum, *4, intr.*
I meet *I interview*	conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventus, *4, tr.*

EXERCISE 1

Translate in three different ways; diagram:

1. Veniō ut victōriam tibi nūntiem.
2. In montēs vēnērunt ut hiemārent.
3. In Galliam vēnit ut bellum redintegrāret.
4. In prōvinciam contendit nē Gallī urbem occupārent.
5. Prīncipem convēnit ut amīcitiam cōnfirmāret.
6. Equitēs mīsit ut frūctum in arce dēfenderent.
7. Pugnāvistis ut glōriam bellī habērētis.
8. In castra vēnī ut signa vidērem.
9. Pugnāvit ut Gallōs pācāret.
10. Vōs in praesidiō collocō ut cum Gallīs pugnētis.
11. Gladium tibi dō ut contrā hostem pugnēs.

12. Veniō ut nūntium lēgātī audiam.
13. Caesar prīncipēs oppidī convocāvit ut nūntium audīrent.
14. In prōvinciam contendit ut urbēs dēfenderet.
15. In Italiam vēnit ut obsidēs trāderet.
16. Frūmentum trādidērunt nē Gallī castellum expugnārent.
17. Legiōnēs fortēs in castra vēnērunt nē vulnera Gallīs ostenderent.
18. Īnsulam Germānī incolēbant.
19. Multās victōriās Caesar nūntiāvit.
20. Vēnērunt ut trāns flūmen incolerent.
21. Convēnērunt ut Caesarem audīrent.
22. Caesar in prōvinciam contendit ut urbem commūnīret.
23. Vēnistī ut lēgātum audīrēs.
24. Cīvēs pugnāvērunt nē hostēs arcem occupārent.
25. Legiōnēs in montēs contendērunt ut Caesarem adjuvārent.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. I came to see the leader.
2. We were fighting in order to defend the city.
3. Caesar hastened into Gaul to defend the province.
4. We came to report the victory.
5. The soldiers fortified the wall to sustain the attack.
6. They came together to renew the war.
7. The Gauls brought in weapons to defend the town.
8. The Gauls laid waste the fields so that Caesar would not have a supply of grain.
9. They struggled with the enemy.
10. A squadron of cavalry came to take the camp by storm.
11. I showed you the way so that you might hasten to the city.
12. They pitched camp and handed over the hostages.
13. We were fighting with the fugitives in the forest.
14. We came to fight the Gauls.
15. We spent the winter in Gaul so that the Gauls would not seize (our) baggage.

SUPPLEMENTARY

EXERCISE 3

Translate:

The cavalryman reported to Caesar the wrong done to the envoy.[1] Caesar was in the great Roman province. He did not have the new legions. He did not hear the messenger of the senate. With the legions and the squadrons of cavalry he came into the territory of the Gauls. The Gauls were in the fields and the mountains. They saw the standards of the legions and the swords of the soldiers. There was fear in the towns of the Gauls. They came to battle with many troops to defend the liberty of the Gauls. The victory was Caesar's. The Gauls handed over their standards and gave many swords and hostages to Caesar. There was peace in Gaul after the war but no(t) liberty.

EXERCISE 4

Translate:

Erant in Caesaris prōvinciā multī servī. Servīs lībertās et pāx nōn erat. Multōs dolōrēs et vulnera habēbant. Castra occupāverant ut lībertātem parārent *(obtain)*. Rem lēgātō equitēs nūntiāvērunt. Lēgātus cum omnibus cōpiīs in dextrā rīpā flūminis erat. Trāns flūmen mīlitēs dūxit ut cum servīs pugnāret. Servī mīlitum fortium impetum nōn sustinuērunt; in silvās vēnērunt et collēs occupāvērunt. Caesar cum novīs legiōnibus contrā servōs improbōs vēnit. Servī dēfessī erant et frūmentum nōn habēbant. Caesar omnēs servōs proeliō magnō interfēcit *(killed)*. Post proelium pāx erat in prōvinciā.

---

[1] Injūriam lēgātī.

REVIEW WORD LIST NO. 3

This list contains words which require special emphasis.

daily	**cotīdiānus, a, um**
sudden	**repentīnus, a, um**
neighboring	**fīnitimus, a, um; *dat.***
neighbors	**fīnitimī, fīnitimōrum**
soul *mind* *character*	**animus, ī**
wicked *bad*	**improbus, a, um**
brother	**frāter, frātris (frātrum)**
outstanding *remarkable*	**ēgregius, a, um**
sentinels	**vigiliae, vigiliārum**
I prepare	**parō, *1, tr.***
abundance *supply*	**cōpia, ae**
troops	**cōpiae, cōpiārum**
much *many* (pl.)	**multus, a, um**
before	**ante, *prep. w. acc.***
after	**post, *prep. w. acc.***
refinement *culture* *mercy*	**hūmānitās, hūmānitātis**
lake	**lacus, ūs**
I summon *I call*	**vocō, *1, tr.***

courage *manliness* *virtue*	**virtūs, virtūtis, *f.***
right (direction)	**dexter, dextera, dexterum** **dexter, dextra, dextrum**
I see	**videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, *2, tr.***
beautiful	**pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum**
boundary *territory*	**fīnēs, fīnium, *m.***
desire *greed* *passion*	**cupiditās, cupiditātis**
I give	**dō, dare, dedī, datus, *1, tr.***
speech	**ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis**
I come	**veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *4, intr.***
I hold	**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, *2, tr.***
bridge	**pōns, pontis, *m.***
cavalry	**equitātus, ūs**
death	**mors, mortis**
I help	**adjuvō, adjuvāre, adjūvī, adjūtus, *1, tr.***
hill	**collis, collis, *m.***
against	**contrā, *prep. w. acc.***
bond *chain*	**vinculum, ī**
garrison *fort*	**praesidium, ī**
I defend	**dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, *3, tr.***
I show	**ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, {ostentus, / ostēnsus,} *3, tr.***
I bear *I carry on* *I wage* (war)	**gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *3, tr.*** ***'against,'* contrā *or* in, *prep. w. acc.*** ***'with,'* cum, *prep. w. abl.***

water	**aqua, ae**
I bring in *I import*	**importō, *1, tr.***
I support *I hold up* *I sustain*	**sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentus, *2, tr.***
plunder *booty*	**praeda, ae**
location *site*	**situs, ūs**
I place *I station*	**collocō, *1, tr.;* in *w. abl.***
I frighten	**perterreō, *2, tr.***
hostage	**obses, obsidis, *c.***
I fortify	**commūniō, *4, tr.***
I arrive at	**perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum, *4, intr.;* ad *or* in *w. acc.***
to *towards*	**ad, *prep. w. acc.***
baggage	**impedīmenta, impedīmentōrum**
narrow pass *difficulty*	**angustiae, angustiārum**
soldier's pack *baggage*	**sarcinae, sarcinārum**
short	**brevis, e**
left	**sinister, sinistra, sinistrum**
fresh *recent*	**recēns, recēns, recentis**
frequent *numerous*	**crēber, crēbra, crēbrum**
weary *tired*	**dēfessus, a, um**

flight	fuga, ae
sick *ill*	aeger, aegra, aegrum
I fight	bellō, *1, intr.* '*with*,' cum, *prep. w. abl.* '*against*,' contrā, *prep. w. acc.*
equal	pār, pār, paris; *dat.*
swift	celer, celeris, celere
fresh *whole* *entire*	integer, integra, integrum
wrong *injustice*	injūria, ae
wretched *miserable*	miser, misera, miserum
unarmed	inermis, e
journey *way*	iter, itineris, *n.*
a troop *squadron* (of cavalry)	turma, ae
scarcity *lack*	inopia, ae
I seize	occupō, *1, tr.*
I spend the winter	hiemō, *1, intr.*
field	ager, agrī
I renew	redintegrō, *1, tr.*
I hand over	trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus, *3, tr.*
I inhabit *I dwell in*	incolō, incolere, incoluī, incultus, *3, tr.*
trust *confidence* *loyalty*	fidēs, fideī

in *on*	in, *prep. w. abl.*
into	in, *prep. w. acc.*
(I) come together	conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventum, *4*, *intr.*
I meet *I interview*	conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventus, *4*, *tr.*
nation *people*	populus, ī
I fight	pugnō, *1*, *intr.* *'with,'* cum, *prep. w. abl.* *'against,'* contrā, *prep. w. acc.*
chariot *cart*	currus, ūs
I call together	convocō, *1*, *tr.*

LESSON 19

SUM

Pages 46-47

VOCABULARY

seacoast	**ōra, ae**
opinion *vote*	**sententia, ae**
danger	**perīculum, ī**
raft	**ratis, ratis**
fortification	**mūnītiō, mūnītiōnis**
worth *esteem* *honor*	**dignitās, dignitātis**
client *dependent*	**cliēns, clientis, *m.***
rainstorm	**imber, imbris**
tower	**turris, turris**
king	**rēx, rēgis, *m.***
on account of *because of*	**propter, *prep. w. acc.*** **ob, *prep. w. acc.***
free	**līber, lībera, līberum**
skiff	**linter, lintris, *f.***
tribe *race* *nation*	**gēns, gentis**

THE INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

EXERCISE 1

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. In perīculīs sum.
2. Rēx est.
3. Clientēs rēgis sunt.
4. Erat imber in prōvinciā.
5. Mīlitēs in turre erant.
6. Cum exercitū erat.
7. Galliae ōram vīdī.
8. Aqua in castrīs nōn erat.
9. Post bellum in castrīs erō.
10. Caesar cum mīlitibus erat.
11. Mīlitēs propter imbrem in castrīs erant.
12. Mīlitēs legiōnum Caesaris fortēs erunt.
13. Cīvitās erat lībera.
14. Lēgātus propter perīculum in castra vēnit.
15. Adulēscēns fortis erat.
16. Sententia rēgis bona et fortis erat.
17. Mīlitēs Caesaris sumus.
18. In Galliā estis.
19. Gēns Rōmāna ēgregia erat.
20. Tēcum sum ut tē adjuvem.
21. Sententiās lēgātōrum rēx audīvit.
22. Gallī ratēs et lintrēs habent.
23. In Galliā ego fuī.
24. Ante proelium Caesar in urbe erat.
25. Caesar mīsit mē ut vōs in montēs dūcerem.
26. Fugitīvī nōn erunt fortēs.
27. Caesar rēx Rōmānōrum erit.
28. Tē ob dignitātem laudāvī.
29. Vōs eritis praesidium prōvinciae Rōmānae.
30. Eram cum fugitīvīs in silvīs.
31. Fortēs in proeliō erātis.
32. Mūnītiōnēs in rīpā sunt.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. Caesar is with the legions.
2. He is king of the Germans.
3. The lieutenant is in the skiff.
4. The Gauls were in the fields.
5. There is water in the camp.
6. The Romans were brave.
7. You will be in Gaul.
8. The soldiers of the king will be brave.
9. The young man was in the tower.
10. You were with the fugitives on the island.
11. The seacoast is beautiful.
12. He heard the opinion of the messenger.
13. They will see the fortifications of the Romans.
14. The fugitives are in the hills.
15. Caesar came to help the Gauls.
16. The Gauls are nearest the Germans.
17. All of the Gauls[1] are brave and free.
18. After the battle the Germans will not be in Gaul.
19. There was an abundance of grain.
20. After the death of the king there were many wars.
21. Because of the rainstorm the ships were in the port.
22. There was a road in the mountains.
23. There were many Roman legions in Gaul.
24. There had been a bridge on the river.
25. You will be fugitives on account of the danger.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF *SUM*

EXERCISE 3

Translate:

1. Caesar pugnat ut rēx sit.
2. Agrōs vāstant nē cōpia frūmentī sit.

---

[1] Translate 'all the Gauls'; *omnēs* is never followed by the genitive in Latin.

3. Caesar cum mīlitibus vēnit nē caedēs Rōmānōrum esset.
4. Rēx mīlitēs in urbem dūxit nē proelium in silvīs esset.
5. Pugnātis ut līberī sītis.
6. Pugnāmus ut omnēs Gallī līberī sint.
7. Tibi currūs dō ut mihi amīcus sīs.
8. Contrā Caesarem pugnābātis nē vōs omnēs servī Rōmānōrum essētis.
9. Propter imbrem nautae in nāvibus nōn sunt.
10. Adulēscēns fortis erat.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE 4

1. You will be clients of Caesar.
2. The Roman race is free.
3. There were rafts on the river.
4. We are dependents of the Germans.
5. On account of the danger he came into the citadel.
6. The Germans dwell across the river.
7. The chiefs of the nations are free.
8. He had been free.
9. You will be in danger.
10. Because of the votes of the chiefs, we shall not be free.

LESSON 20

THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

Pages 35-36

VOCABULARY

I kill *I murder*	**necō, *1, tr.***
I rule	**regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus, *3, tr.***
I excite *I alarm*	**permoveō, permovēre, permōvī, permōtus, *2, tr.*** **commoveō, commovēre, commōvī, commōtus, *2, tr.***
I seek	**petō, petere, petīvī, petītus, *3, tr.***
I enroll	**cōnscrībō, cōnscrībere, cōnscrīpsī, cōnscrīptus, *3, tr.***
I break through	**perrumpō, perrumpere, perrūpī, perruptus, *3, tr.***
a deserter	**perfuga, ae, *m.***
village *street*	**vīcus, ī**
ally *companion*	**socius, ī**
slavery	**servitūs, servitūtis, *f.***
by night	**noctū, *adv.***
ignorance	**īnscientia, ae**
scout	**explōrātor, explōrātōris**
elevated *high*	**ēditus, a, um**

EXERCISE 1

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Prīncipēs Gallōrum necantur.
2. Lūna in silvīs vidētur.
3. Perfugae in Galliā necābantur.
4. Gallia pācābitur.
5. Novae legiōnēs cōnscrībēbantur.
6. Pāx in Galliā petitur.
7. Caesar commovētur.
8. Recēns victōria lēgātō nūntiātur.
9. Prīncipēs gentēs regunt.
10. Necor.
11. Omnēs vīcī hostium occupantur.
12. Senātus permovētur.
13. Mūnītiōnēs legiōnum perrumpēbantur.
14. Fuit proelium difficile in angustiīs.
15. Tēla et multum frūmentum in oppidīs parantur.
16. Prīncipēs omnium Gallōrum convocantur.
17. Multae urbēs noctū expugnābantur.
18. Frūmentum hominibus miserīs datur.
19. Fīnitimī in proeliō necantur.
20. Improbus lēgātus tenētur.
21. Vīcus dēfenditur.
22. Silvae dēfendentur.
23. Bella in Galliā geruntur.
24. Nūntius in castra vēnit.
25. Mīlitēs in montēs dūcuntur.
26. Gallī perterrentur.
27. Castra commūniuntur.
28. Vigiliae in castrīs collocābantur.
29. Explōrātor propter īnscientiam locī ad castellum nōn pervēnit.
30. Gallī perterrēbantur nē sociī Rōmānīs essent.
31. Gallī propter servitūtem fēlīcēs nōn erant.
32. Nāvēs in portū tenentur.
33. Gallī pugnābant ut līberī essent.

34. Omnēs perfugae necābuntur.
35. Perfugae ad Caesarem dūcēbantur.
36. Necāberis.
37. Sarcinae mīlitum in vīcōs importantur.
38. Proelium redintegrābitur.
39. Legiōnēs in Galliā hiemābant.
40. Prīncipēs fīnitimōrum populōrum in castra vocābantur.
41. Vīcus Caesarī trāditur.
42. Castra in locō ēditō pōnentur.
43. Agrī Gallōrum vāstābuntur.
44. Perfugae in castra dūcēbantur.
45. Arx noctū occupābitur.
46. Nox est et lūna vidētur.
47. Caesar loca[1] ēdita occupāverat.
48. Omnēs hominēs fortēs līberī erunt.
49. Concursus cīvium nūntiātur.
50. Mīlitēs audiuntur.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. An unbelievable number of men will be killed.
2. The noble lieutenant is held in the camp of the enemy.
3. The swift cavalry will be killed.
4. The soldiers will be seen in the mountains.
5. The weary soldiers will be alarmed.
6. Fresh soldiers will be enrolled.
7. Soldiers are being enrolled in the province.
8. The camp is being pitched in the field.
9. Grain is being brought into the camp.
10. The sick soldiers will be borne into the city.
11. The beautiful daughter of the Gaul is alarmed.
12. The arrows are being prepared.
13. A squadron will be sent to Caesar.
14. The wretched Gauls will all be killed.

---

[1] The plural of *locus* is generally neuter: *loca, locōrum.*

15. Peace will not be sought.
16. The Gaul with his companions was murdered.
17. The Gauls will all be free.
18. Before the battle sentinels were being stationed.
19. The fortifications will be broken through by night.
20. The wicked soldier is held in the village of the Gauls.
21. The opinions of the leading men are being heard.
22. The message of the leader will be heard.
23. Many brave allies are being sought.
24. They stationed the battle line in an elevated place.
25. Many soldiers are being enrolled.
26. The Gauls have many sorrows.
27. They were killed in a sudden battle.
28. I shall be seen in the city.
29. You will be killed; I shall be held.
30. The father of the soldier was being defended.
31. The daughter was defending her father *(the father)*.
32. The tribes are being excited.
33. There was a bridge on the river.
34. A strong garrison was stationed in the city.
35. He will be murdered in the street.
36. The authority of the senate is great.
37. The hills will be seized.
38. You will be killed.
39. Swords were given to you to defend yourselves.
40. The deserters were seen in the forest.
41. Weapons were being prepared in all the towns.
42. The Gauls sought peace.
43. The sailors were held in the port.
44. The camp will be pitched in a high place.
45. The allies of the Gauls will all be killed.
46. The city is being taken by storm.
47. The village was in a high place.
48. The scouts were stationed in the neighboring fields.
49. The soldiers are being alarmed.
50. The Gauls' ignorance of war was the cause of the victory.

LESSON 21

THE PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE

AGENCY, MEANS, INSTRUMENT

Page 37; 55, 2; 155; 157; 158

VOCABULARY

I avoid	**vītō, *1, tr.***
I bring together *I collect*	**comportō, *1, tr.***
I hold	**obtineō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus, *2, tr.***
I increase	**augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, *2, tr.***
I remove *I dislodge*	**submoveō, submovēre, submōvī, submōtus, *2, tr.***
I send ahead	**praemittō, praemittere, praemīsī, praemissus, *3, tr.***
I break through	**perfringō, perfringere, perfrēgī, perfrāctus, *3, tr.***
I set on fire *I burn*	**incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus, *3, tr.***
I overcome *I surpass* *I conquer* *I surmount*	**superō, *1, tr.***
hard	**dūrus, a, um**
small	**parvus, a, um**
timber	**māteria, ae**
the state *government* *common good*	**rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae**

EXERCISE 1

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Explōrātōrēs ā Caesare praemissī[1] sunt.
2. Aciēs Rōmāna ab hostibus perfrācta est.
3. Oppida ā Gallīs incēnsa sunt.
4. Dux in cōnspectū mīlitum necātus est
5. Hostēs submōtī erant.
6. Iter erat dūrum et difficile.
7. Ager Gallī parvus erat.
8. Māteria ab hoste incēnsa erat.
9. Tēla barbarōrum ab mīlitibus vītābantur.
10. Mīlitēs in silvās ā Caesare sunt missī.
11. Caesar nūntium per explōrātōrēs mīsit.
12. Nūntius ad hostēs missus est.
13. Mīles ēgregius in proeliō ab hoste necātus est.
14. In Galliā īnscientia bellī erat.
15. Gallī ā Rōmānīs superātī sunt.
16. Cōpiae integrae ā Caesare in castra sunt missae.
17. Victōria Caesarī nūntiāta est.
18. Caesar gladiīs hostem superāvit.
19. Dux tēlō necātus est.
20. Ego praemissus sum; tū in castrīs collocātus es.
21. Bellum cum Caesare ā Gallīs gestum erat.
22. Omnia oppida ā mīlitibus erant incēnsa.
23. Victōria Gallōrum erat magna.
24. Multa tēla Caesar in castra mīsit ut mīlitēs Gallōs superārent.
25. Prīncipēs Gallōrum in prōvinciam missī sunt ut pācem peterent.
26. Hostēs ā Caesare superātī sunt.
27. Urbs mūnītiōne et tēlīs dēfēnsa erat.
28. Mīlitēs ōrātiōne ducis cōnfirmātī sunt.
29. Caesar hostēs equitātū perterruit.

---

[1] The perfect passive participle is declined just like *magnus, a, um* and agrees with the word it modifies.

30. Īnsula parva erat.
31. Imperium ā rēge obtinētur.
32. In cōnspectū Caesaris mīlitēs urbem incendērunt.
33. Erat in castrīs hostium aquae et frūmentī inopia.
34. Vīcī omnēs incēnsī erant.
35. Gallī in urbem māteriam comportāvērunt ut mūrum commūnīrent.
36. Mīlitēs ratibus trāns flūmen ductī sunt.
37. Conventūs in Galliā nūntiantur.
38. Equitātum praemīsit ut impetum hostium sustinēret.
39. Numerus vigiliārum ā Caesare auctus est.
40. Novī mīlitēs ā lēgātō in prōvinciā cōnscrīptī sunt.
41. Agrī clientium in cōnspectū mīlitum vāstātī sunt.
42. Vōs, Gallī, ā Caesare superātī estis.
43. Rēs Caesarī nūntiāta est.
44. Magnīs itineribus in Galliam contendit.
45. Mors prīncipis ab explōrātōribus nūntiāta est.
46. Mīlitēs in Galliam ad Caesarem convēnerant.
47. Castra ā Rōmānīs fossā commūnīta sunt.
48. Vōs, mīlitēs Rōmānī, ā Gallīs nōn estis superātī.
49. Trāns flūmen ratibus et nāvibus vēnērunt.
50. Gallia ā Gallīs incolēbātur.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. The cavalry was sent ahead by Caesar.
2. The legions were overcome by the Gauls.
3. They fortified the camp with a ditch.
4. Caesar sent the message by a Gaul.
5. In the sight of Caesar the legion was conquered.
6. The darts of the enemy were avoided.
7. Scouts were sent into the mountains.
8. They broke through the fortifications by night.
9. The affair was reported by the scouts.
10. They arrived at the river.

11. There was a lack of grain and water on the journey.
12. We were led into the province by the brave leader.
13. We collected timber to fortify the bridge.
14. They were murdered by the soldiers.
15. The fugitives were killed by the king.
16. The troops were led through the narrow passes by a brave Gaul *(by a Gaul, a brave man)*.
17. The camp was defended by the soldiers.
18. The troops were led into Italy to spend the winter.
19. The young men were preparing rafts and ships.
20. Hostages were given to Caesar by the Gauls.
21. The booty was brought into camp by the leading men of the city.
22. The hope of victory was great.
23. The ships were set on fire by the wicked sailor.
24. The army was led into the forest by the deserter.
25. The site of the city was on a hill.
26. You fought against the Gauls that the province might be free.
27. The Gauls were helped by the cavalry.
28. Beasts of burden were handed over to the enemy by the wicked deserter.
29. The cavalry were overcome by the brave leader *(by the leader, a brave man)* and the enemy removed.
30. They were bringing together timber in carts.
31. The cavalry sustained the attack of the fresh soldiers and the brave Gauls.
32. Slaves flocked to the camp *(came together into the camp)*.
33. The number of cavalrymen was increased.
34. Caesar sent the message *(rem nūntiō)* by the scout.
35. The senate was murdered by the Gauls.
36. The baggage was set on fire by the enemy.
37. They had come to the camp.
38. The soldiers brought their packs into the camp.
39. The courage of the new legions was praised by Caesar.
40. The hill was held by the cavalry.

41. Caesar called together the troops.

42. The Gauls were frightened by the unarmed cavalry.

43. A squadron was sent ahead to withstand *(sustineō)* the attack of the legions.

44. The city was burned and all the soldiers were murdered.

45. The Gauls fought with the Romans to defend their liberty *(the liberty)*.

46. The recent victory was reported through scouts.

47. In Gaul the authority of a father was great.

48. The Gauls dislodged the fresh legions in order to seize the hill.

49. The slave's small field was laid waste by the Roman cavalry.

50. The right road was hard and difficult, and scouts were sent ahead to collect timber. After a cavalry battle they pitched camp and held the hill. They fortified the camp with timber.

LESSON 22

THE SUBJUNCTIVE[1] PASSIVE

Pages 38-39

VOCABULARY

favor	**grātia, ae**
Belgians	**Belgae, Belgārum, *m.***
knowledge	**scientia, ae**
fodder	**pābulum, ī**
an Helvetian (Swiss)	**Helvētius, ī**
I await *I wait for*	**exspectō, *1, tr.***
household *family*	**familia, ae**
sling	**funda, ae**
council	**concilium, ī**
ridge *yoke*	**jugum, ī**
general *commander-in-chief*	**imperātor, imperātōris**
building	**aedificium, ī**
large *ample*	**amplus, a, um**
I conquer	**vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, *3, tr.***
I betray	**prōdō, prōdere, prōdidī, prōditus, *3, tr.***
I remember	**memoriā teneō, tenēre, tenuī, *2, tr.***
I offend	**offendō, offendere, offendī, offēnsus, *3, tr.***

[1] The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive should be learned at this point for the sake of completeness.

EXERCISE 1

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Dux Belgārum concilium convocāvit ut obsidēs ad Caesarem mitterentur.
2. Mīlitēs missī sunt ut castra vāllō commūnīrentur.
3. Helvētiī equitēs mīsērunt ut aedificia incenderentur.
4. Gallus pugnāvit nē cum familiā in servitūtem trāderētur.
5. Imperātor urbem prōdidit ut in grātiā esset.
6. Equitēs in jugō collocāvit nē vincerētur.
7. Mīlitēs mīsit ut ampla cōpia pābulī importārētur.
8. Mīlitēs mīsit ut castra dēfenderentur.
9. Mīlitēs convocātī sunt ut laudārentur.
10. Caesar in silvās vēnit nē vidērētur.
11. Prīnceps adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāvit nē Caesar offenderētur.
12. Tū collem occupābis nē ab hoste occupētur.
13. Mīlitem dux vocāvit ut pābulum in castra mitteret.
14. Exercitum ōrātiōne cōnfirmāvit ut impetum hostium sustinērent.
15. Veniō ut ā Caesare audiar.
16. In jugō aciem collocāvit nē fundīs vincerētur.
17. Servus in castra venit nē necētur.
18. Virtūs mīlitum ēgregia erat.
19. Caesaris scientia bellī erat ēgregia.
20. Castra in prōvinciā posuit ut novī mīlitēs ā lēgātīs cōnscrīberentur.
21. Turma ā Caesare praemittitur nē impedīmenta ab hoste incendantur.
22. Bellum cum Helvētiīs gerēbātur nē trāns flūmen in prōvinciam venīrent.
23. Aquam et frūmentum in urbem comportābant Gallī nē in bellō inopia esset.
24. Helvētiī injūriās et lēgātī facinora memoriā tenēbant.
25. Omnēs prīncipēs Gallōrum in castra ā Caesare vocābantur ut pāx in Galliā esset.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. The soldiers were sent to defend the camp with slings and arrows.
2. The soldiers were sent ahead lest the camp should be seized by the enemy.
3. Many soldiers were killed in the camp.
4. The council was called together to be encouraged by the leading men.
5. The commander-in-chief remembered the wrongs of the tribe.
6. They were bringing in fodder and timber into the camp lest it be burned by the Belgians.
7. The Helvetians put the fodder and grain in large buildings.
8. We fight lest we be conquered.
9. The soldiers fought to be praised by Caesar.
10. The Belgians awaited the Germans so they would not be offended.
11. We were betrayed by a deserter.
12. The camp was fortified by a ditch and a rampart.
13. The camp was fortified by the soldiers.
14. An Helvetian was in the household of Caesar.
15. The affair was reported to Caesar lest war should be waged by the Gauls.
16. The general seized the neighboring ridge lest it be seized by the Gauls.
17. A wicked soldier betrayed the general so that he would be in Caesar's favor.
18. The Gauls conquered the cavalry with slings.
19. I will hand over the city to you lest I be betrayed by the people.
20. Caesar's courage and knowledge of war were remarkable.

LESSON 23

REVIEW

Pages 30-33 and 36-39

VOCABULARY

self-control	**temperantia, ae**
land	**terra, ae**
answer	**respōnsum, ī**
javelin	**pīlum, ī**
sun	**sōl, sōlis, *m.***
wife	**uxor, uxōris, *f.***
embassy	**lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis**
crowd *multitude*	**multitūdō, multitūdinis**
oath	**jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandī, *n.***
custom *habit*	**mōs, mōris, *m.***
character *customs*	**mōrēs, mōrum, *m.***
I wound	**vulnerō, *1, tr.***
without	**sine, *prep. w. abl.***
private	**prīvātus, a, um**
winter *storm*	**hiems, hiemis**
panic *dread*	**terror, terrōris**
merchant	**mercātor, mercātōris**

EXERCISE 1

Translate:

1. He praised the customs of the Gauls.
2. The Roman consul praised the soldiers.
3. Caesar praised the self-control of the soldiers.
4. Caesar saw the enemy on the bank.
5. The leader saw the enemy on the right bank.
6. The soldiers saw the enemy on the left bank.
7. The lieutenant was ruling Gaul.
8. The Romans did rule Gaul.
9. The multitude heard the answer of the ambassador.
10. Caesar led the troops into the province.
11. The leading men were in the province.
12. All the soldiers were in the camp.
13. The leading men will be murdered.
14. The soldier will be murdered in the camp.
15. Caesar summoned the Gauls to a meeting.
16. They are praising the diligence of the senate.
17. They were fortifying the fort.
18. The Gauls fortified the cities.
19. The senate praised you.
20. The senate will give you an army.
21. Caesar was sent into Gaul.
22. He had a large army and brave soldiers.
23. He was the leading man of the embassy.
24. They will send an embassy to the senate.
25. We came to help you.
26. The soldiers had been wounded.
27. The Gaul was being murdered.
28. They took the fort by storm.
29. The Gauls are taking the fort by storm.
30. Because of the winter the merchants did not have an abundance of grain.
31. He will take the city by storm.
32. They arrived at the river after the setting of the sun.

33. On account of the panic of the cavalry the soldiers were wounded.
34. The sailors were on land.
35. The Gauls were killing the scouts.
36. The soldiers were without javelins.
37. He saw the slave's dread.
38. Because of a custom of the barbarians, he waited for the setting of the sun.
39. In the sight of Caesar the fields were being laid waste.
40. He was a private citizen but he led the soldiers into Gaul.
41. Caesar sent the ships to the island.
42. They had been sent ahead.
43. The cavalry were sent ahead to fight with the Gauls.
44. A squadron of cavalry came into the fields.
45. They were laying waste the fields.
46. The Gaul was in a skiff.
47. The soldiers were avoiding the arrows of the Gauls.
48. I shall avoid death.
49. They were bringing in grain.
50. He held the kingly power.
51. An oath was given.
52. The soldiers were praised by the general.
53. The ambassador was killed by the Gauls.
54. They broke through the battle line.
55. The timber was burned by the crowd.
56. They had offended the good king because of ignorance of the law.
57. The lieutenant was killed in the sight of Caesar.
58. Caesar will defend the state.
59. Scouts were sent ahead by the leader.
60. The leader was killed by the soldiers.
61. They did not set the cities on fire.
62. Because of the storm the sailors were not on the ships.
63. The merchants praised the character of the Belgians.
64. The camp was pitched in a large and elevated place.
65. The fort was fortified by a rampart and a ditch.

66. He placed the cavalry on the ridge.
67. Hostages will be given to Caesar.
68. Caesar sent the infantry to kill the fugitives.
69. The opinion of the senate is bad.
70. They came to the camp to see the wall and the ditch.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. Bellum in Galliā geritur.
2. Propter imbrem mercātōrēs in urbem vēnērunt.
3. Imperium omnium cīvitātum Galliae tenēbat.
4. Dux Gallōrum exercitūs habuit.
5. Magna multitūdō hominum respōnsum mercātōris audīvit.
6. Propter hiemem nautae in terrā erant.
7. Caesar lēgātōs ad ducem Gallōrum mīsit.
8. Locus castrōrum erat ēditus.
9. Erat impetus repentīnus.
10. Caesar in Galliam pervēnit.
11. Ad flūmen perveniēs.
12. Temperantiam et mōrēs Belgārum laudāvit.
13. Lēgātus dīligentiā Gallōs vīcit.
14. Arma servīs data sunt.
15. Oppida omnia incenduntur.
16. Frūmenta in urbem comportantur.
17. Numerus mīlitum auctus est.
18. Prīnceps erat lēgātiōnis.
19. Uxōrēs propter terrōrem in castra vēnērunt.
20. Hostis castra in jugō pōnit.
21. Mīlitēs in urbe collocat.
22. Caedēs cīvium Rōmānōrum in Galliā erat.
23. Propter timōrem fugitīvī ad castra nōn vēnērunt.
24. Causa gravis est.
25. Mercātōrēs prīvātā dīligentiā sine caede sē *(themselves)* dēfendērunt.
26. Gallia est pācāta.

27. Ante occāsum sōlis pīlīs pugnāvērunt.
28. Cum Gallīs bellum gerēbant.
29. Caesar castra in locō ēditō posuit.
30. Partem Galliae Belgae incolunt.
31. Tēla nōn important.
32. Propter terrōrem urbem prōdidērunt.
33. Prīncipēs cīvitātum Gallōs regunt.
34. Rēs gravis est.
35. Caesar in Gallōrum fīnibus bellum geret.
36. Ob cupiditātem rēgnī magistrātūs necāvit.
37. Equitātus in fīnēs fīnitimōrum praemissus erat.
38. Bellum novum in Galliā erat.
39. Collem occupābis.
40. In colle castra pōnet.
41. Oppidum locī nātūrā mūnītum est.
42. Rēgnum Galliae obtinuit.
43. Multī mīlitēs sunt vulnerātī.
44. Caesar ā tē prōditus est.
45. Urbem ego tibi nōn dabō.
46. Tēla vītāverat sed gladiō necātus est.
47. Auctōritāte Caesaris permōtī sunt.
48. Numerum legiōnum augēbō.
49. Pācem petam.
50. Mīlitēs fortēs erant.

EXERCISE 3

Give the meaning:

prōdō	perrumpō	hiemō
vītō	noctū	hiems
via	ōra	sarcinae
augeō	ratis	sed
māteria	imber	obses
turris	cliēns	frūctus

REVIEW WORD LIST NO. 4

This list contains words which require special emphasis.

I avoid	**vītō, *1, tr.***
scout	**explōrātor, explōrātōris**
refinement *culture* *mercy*	**hūmānitās, hūmānitātis**
sight	**cōnspectus, ūs**
ignorance	**īnscientia, ae**
timber	**māteria, ae**
hard	**dūrus, a, um**
flight	**fuga, ae**
I hold	**obtineō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus, *2, tr.***
I conquer	**vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, *3, tr.***
wound	**vulnus, vulneris, *n.***
large *ample*	**amplus, a, um**
building	**aedificium, ī**
ridge *yoke*	**jugum, ī**
council	**concilium, ī**
character *customs*	**mōrēs, mōrum, *m.***
village *street*	**vīcus, ī**
land	**terra, ae**
fort	**castellum, ī**
answer	**respōnsum, ī**

javelin	**pīlum, ī**
meeting *assembly* *assizes*	**conventus, ūs**
oath	**jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandī, *n.***
fortification	**mūnītiō, mūnītiōnis**
I overcome *I surpass* *I conquer* *I surmount*	**superō, *1, tr.***
I set on fire *I burn*	**incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus, *3, tr.***
seacoast	**ōra, ae**
opinion	**sententia, ae**
speech	**ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis**
I kill *I murder*	**necō, *1, tr.***
I increase	**augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, *2, tr.***
I rule	**regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus, *3, tr.***
elevated *high*	**ēditus, a, um**
I break through	**perfringō, perfringere, perfrēgī, perfrāctus, *3, tr.***
free	**līber, lībera, līberum**
I bring together *I collect*	**comportō, *1, tr.***
death	**mors, mortis**
site *location*	**situs, ūs**
household *family*	**familia, ae**
I betray	**prōdo, prōdere, prōdidī, prōditus, *3, tr.***

crowd *multitude*	**multitūdō, multitūdinis**
I break through	**perrumpō, perrumpere, perrūpī, perruptus, *3, tr.***
embassy	**lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis**
skiff	**linter, lintris, *f.***
knight *horseman* *cavalryman*	**eques, equitis, *m.***
sun	**sōl, sōlis, *m.***
I seek	**peto, petere, petīvī, petītus, *3, tr.***
setting	**occāsus, ūs**
wife	**uxor, uxōris, *f.***
I excite *I alarm*	**permoveō, permovēre, permōvī, permōtus, *2, tr.*** **commoveō, commovēre, commōvī, commōtus, *2, tr.***
danger	**perīculum, ī**

LESSON 24

HIC, ILLE, ISTE, IS

33, 2; 35; 77

VOCABULARY

I am on guard duty	**in statiōne sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *intr.***
praetor	**praetor, praetōris**
immediately	**cōnfestim, *adv.***
daily	**cotīdiē, *adv.***
services *pains* *effort*	**opera, ae**
plan	**cōnsilium, ī**
children	**līberī, līberōrum**
ford (of a river) *shallow*	**vadum, ī**
crime *evil deed*	**maleficium, ī**
concerning *about*	**dē, *prep. w. abl.***
surrender	**dēditiō, dēditiōnis**
violent *strong*	**vehemēns, vehemēns, vehementis**
shameful *base*	**turpis, e**
careful	**dīligēns, dīligēns, dīligentis**
continually	**continenter, *adv.***
towards evening	**sub vesperum**

EXERCISE 1

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Haec via difficilis est.
2. Eīs frūmentum et aquam dedit.
3. Istī līberī pulchrī sunt.
4. Nāvēs in hīs vadīs erant.
5. Germānī trāns flūmen incolunt.
6. Belgae cum eīs bellum continenter gerunt.
7. Vehemēns et turpis erat ējus ōrātiō.
8. Hī hominēs maleficia ējus lēgātī nōn laudant.
9. Eī fīliam in mātrimōnium *(marriage)* dat.
10. Ea rēs per explōrātōrēs Helvētiīs nūntiāta est.
11. Fugitīvī in silvīs necātī sunt.
12. Oppida omnia hī incendunt.
13. Hōc cōnsilium turpe est.
14. Cum eā legiōne in silvās contendit.
15. Eōrum castella incendit.
16. Caesar adulēscentēs propter virtūtem laudāvit.
17. Contrā eōs cotīdiē pugnābat.
18. Cum hīs legiōnibus in Galliam contendit.
19. Eōrum fīnēs Helvētiī vāstābant.
20. Eum cum peditātū praemīsit.
21. Operā hūjus servī respōnsum ad uxōrem mīsī.
22. Praetor cum eō in Galliam vēnit.
23. Ea rēs per explōrātōrēs hostibus nūntiāta est.
24. Ille cōnsul dīligēns est.
25. Cōnsilium hostium ab hōc mīlite mihi nūntiātum est.
26. Legiōnēs impetum eōrum nōn sustinēbant.
27. Helvētiī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mittunt.
28. Post id bellum omnēs Gallōrum lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem convēnērunt et eum laudāvērunt.
29. Ampla est auctōritās hūjus cīvitātis.
30. Ējus bellī haec fuit causa.
31. Is multōs lēgātōs in fīnitimās cīvitātēs mīsit.
32. Is ad exercitum contendit.

33. Illī oppida commūniunt.
34. Ista sententia mala est.
35. Operā hūjus lēgātī pāx cōnfirmāta est.
36. Ad eum nūntium mīsit.
37. Hīc erat situs oppidī.
38. Hārum rērum amplam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat.
39. Caesar eōs in angustiīs exspectābat.
40. Post illud proelium victōria Caesarī nūntiāta est.
41. Hīs armīs hostēs superāvit.
42. Ad id concilium lēgātōs et mīlitēs convocāvit.
43. Mercātōrēs in eōrum castrīs erant.
44. Imperātor omnēs cōpiās in castra dūxit.
45. Hōc proelium trāns flūmen nūntiātum est.
46. Legiōnēs in statiōne ante castra erant.
47. Post id bellum cum omnibus hīs cōpiīs in Galliam contendit nē hostēs in eā prōvinciā urbēs et oppida incenderent.
48. Gallī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt.
49. Huic lēgātō magnam gladiōrum cōpiam Caesar dedit nē ējus castra ab hostibus expugnārētur.
50. Sub vesperum ad montēs pervēnērunt et in eō locō castra posuērunt nē hostēs noctū pugnārent.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. This man is careful.
2. Caesar praised him.
3. With all these legions he came into the forest.
4. This man reports the plans of the enemy daily.
5. He gave him grain and swords.
6. These crimes are wicked and base.
7. That fact *(thing)* was reported to the leader by the soldiers.
8. Those children (of yours) are beautiful.
9. Those nations dwell in Gaul.
10. They pitched camp in that forest.

11. A ship is in those shallows.
12. This was a shameful war.
13. The lieutenant encouraged them with a violent speech.
14. The Helvetians were laying waste their fields.
15. This praetor sent envoys concerning surrender.
16. The Helvetians were laying waste that province.
17. They gave these legions to the lieutenant.
18. They had all these ships in that province.
19. Their friends were the leading men of that state.
20. He sent them ahead to seize that hill.
21. Those legions were brave.
22. That town is held by a strong garrison.
23. This speech of the praetor was strong.
24. I shall defend that town with all these legions.
25. They showed their chains and their wounds.
26. I shall wage war with that nation.
27. We shall fight with these swords.
28. Caesar killed them all.
29. The number of these nations is large.
30. You have sent those slaves into the city.
31. We shall hold that hill with the cavalry lest the enemy fight against the infantry.
32. They burned the towers and killed the fugitives with slings and darts.
33. You had stationed those sentinels in the camp.
34. They will kill you.
35. These nations dwell across the river.
36. Soldiers are continually on guard duty by night.
37. Towards evening the cavalry will arrive at that river.
38. The scouts reported these things to Caesar.
39. They fought with these legions in daily battles *(no preposition)*.
40. The baggage was defended by these soldiers.
41. He praised the refinement of this nation.
42. He defended this law with a violent speech.
43. After these battles Caesar hastened into this town.

44. He fortified all those forts.
45. A large part of those legions was sent ahead.
46. These legions are fresh.
47. Those soldiers were enrolled in the province.
48. His noble brother is sick.
49. There were many legions on the bank of this river.
50. This was the cause of that new and sudden war.

EXERCISE 3

THE DEATH OF DUMNORIX[1]

Caesar could rarely trust the Gallic clans he had conquered. Hence, to prevent the Gauls from rebelling after he had crossed into Britain, he planned to take the more prominent chiefs with him. One of these, Dumnorix, attempted to escape.

Dumnorix cum equitibus Haeduorum *(of the Haedui)* e castris, insciente Caesare *(without Caesar's knowledge)*, venit. Hoc Caesari nuntiatum est. Confestim magnam partem equitatus misit ut Dumnorigem tenerent. Dumnorix autem se *(himself)* defendebat. "Liber sum," inquit *(he said)*, "et liberae sum civitatis!" Equites autem a Caesare missi sunt et eum circumvenerunt *(surrounded)* et necaverunt.

[1] The macrons are omitted in these exercises to provide practice in reading.

LESSON 25

IDEM, IPSE

35; 36

VOCABULARY

disaster *misfortune*	**calamitās, calamitātis**
ancestors	**mājōrēs, mājōrum,** *m.*
crowded	**cōnfertus, a, um**
doubtful (literally 'double-headed')	**anceps, anceps, ancipitis**
uneven *unjust* *unfavorable*	**inīquus, a, um**
safe	**incolumis, e**
as soon as possible	**quam prīmum,** *adv. phrase*
unwilling(ly)	**invītus, a, um**
I deliberate	**dēlīberō,** *1, tr. and intr.* **'***about,***'** **dē** *w. abl.*
I change	**commūtō,** *1, tr.*
stone	**lapis, lapidis,** *m.*
I am silent *I pass over in silence*	**taceō,** *2, tr., and intr.*
height *depth*	**altitūdō, altitūdinis**

EXERCISE 1

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. In eōdem locō castra pōnet.

2. Eīsdem legiōnibus Caesar frūmentum dat.
3. Adulēscentēs lapidēs ad castra comportābant.
4. Idem Helvētiī petīvērunt.
5. Altitūdō ējusdem flūminis nōn erat magna.
6. In eīsdem locīs multī populī erant.
7. In ipsō proeliō incolumis erat.
8. Eīdem lēgātī ad Caesarem mittentur ut cum eō amīcitiam cōnfirment.
9. Eāsdem calamitātēs nōn invītus taceō.
10. Īdem ad mē vēnit.
11. Eaedem rēs Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant.
12. Injūriās ējusdem lēgātī ipse memoriā tenēbat.
13. Fugitīvī ab ēisdem mīlitibus necātī sunt.
14. In eōsdem Gallōs equitēs quam prīmum mittent.
15. Locus castrōrum hostium erat ēditus; equitātus ipsīus Caesaris in locō inīquō erat.
16. Lēgātus ipse in eōdem proeliō prōditus est.
17. Eīdem in itinere legiōnem ipsīus Caesaris continenter perterruērunt.
18. Eāsdem legiōnēs in sinistrā partē aciēī collocāvit.
19. Adventū ējusdem rēs commūtāta est.
20. Lēgātus ipse cum eīsdem legiōnibus ad īnsulam mittitur.
21. Gallī ipsum lēgātum necāvērunt.
22. Dē eādem rē dēlīberābunt.
23. Ipsī hostēs cōnfertī erant.
24. Caesar ipse mīlitēs in proelium dūxit.
25. In eōdem locō erat proelium anceps.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. Caesar sent the same report to the scouts.
2. Many soldiers were killed in the same place by the Gauls.
3. He was himself alarmed by the same disaster.
4. The wretched sailor reported the same thing.
5. He sent the same ships to that island.

6. These people have the same laws.
7. The place was uneven and the battle doubtful.
8. The towns and buildings were burned by the same men.
9. He was himself unjust.
10. He waged war with the same nation.
11. Caesar himself changes (his) plans.
12. The lieutenant himself was unwilling.
13. All those soldiers were silent.
14. The slaves themselves were crowded in the same place.
15. Victory was doubtful.
16. The same cavalry was in an unfavorable place.
17. Caesar hastened into the forest as soon as possible.
18. We shall deliberate about this matter *(thing)*.
19. The lieutenant unwillingly *(unwilling)* came into the camp.
20. The daughter of the Gaul betrayed the Romans.
21. He passed over in silence the misfortunes of the ancestors of Caesar himself.
22. The leader himself was safe; his army was not conquered.
23. The soldiers were silent in the camp.
24. They fortified the same camp with stones and timber.
25. Because of the height of the mountains the Romans did not come immediately into Gaul.

LESSON 26

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

37; 77

In English the relative pronoun

is expressed by { *that* for persons and things
which for things
who for persons

or is implied.

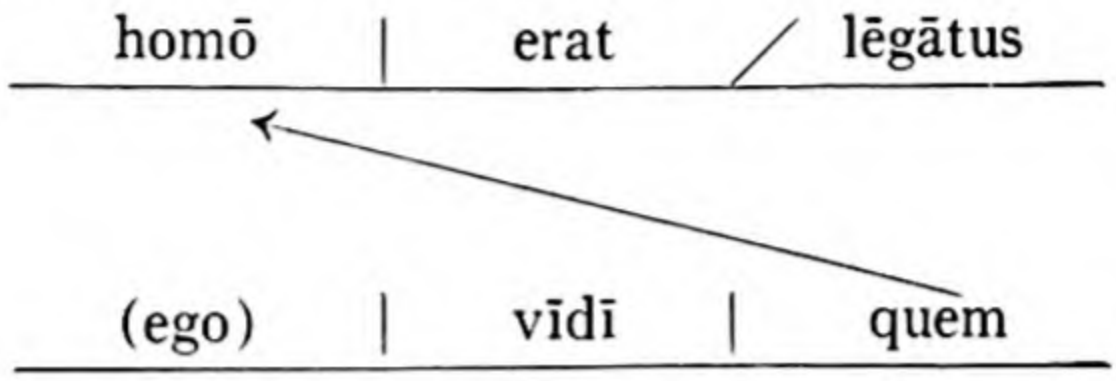
The man who is a deserter was a lieutenant.
The army which was in Gaul was large.
The man that is a deserter was a lieutenant.
The army that was in Gaul was large.
The man I saw was a lieutenant.

In Latin the relative pronoun
is expressed by **quī, quae, quod**
and is never implied.

Homō quī perfuga est lēgātus erat.
Exercitus quī in Galliā erat magnus erat.
Homō quī perfuga est lēgātus erat.
Exercitus quī in Galliā erat magnus erat.
Homō quem vīdī lēgātus erat.

NOTE

Relative clauses are adjective clauses.



VOCABULARY

speed *rapidity*	**celeritās, celeritātis**
mound *dike* *rampart*	**agger, aggeris**
will	**voluntās, voluntātis**
as quickly as possible	**quam celerrimē,** ***adv. phrase***
afterwards	**posteā,** ***adv.***
far into the night	**in multam noctem**
a victor *conqueror*	**victor, victōris**
safety	**salūs, salūtis,** ***f.***
district *canton* *clan*	**pāgus, ī**
through informers	**per indicium**

EXERCISE 1

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Ad eōs quī in angustiīs erant Caesar cum omnibus cōpiīs contendit.

2. Crassus quī equitātum dūcēbat victōriam Caesarī nūntiāvit.

3. Cum eā legiōne quam in prōvinciā habēbat vēnit.

4. In eum locum quem Caesar ostenderat frūmentum comportāvērunt.

5. Mīlitēs victōrēs quam celerrimē in Italiam contendērunt.

6. Eam lībertātem quam ā mājōribus habēbant armīs dēfendēbant.

7. Mīlitēs quōs in aggere collocāverat in multam noctem pugnāvērunt.

8. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs quī proximī flūminī sunt cum equitātū mittit.

9. Posteā bonam voluntātem rēgis laudāvit.

10. Haec rēs Brūtō quī cum classe erat per indicium nūntiāta est.

11. Proximī sunt Germānīs quī trāns flūmen incolunt.

12. Rēgnum quod pater ējus in illā cīvitāte ante eum habuerat occupāvit.

13. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium nūntiāta.

14. Omnēs amīcī quōrum magnum numerum habēbat ad jūdicium convēnērunt.

15. Propter salūtem reī pūblicae pugnāmus.

16. Ad montem Jūram, quī in fīnibus Helvētiōrum est, pervēnērunt.

17. Legiōnēs quae in Galliā hiemābant in Italiam dūxit.

18. Cum Germānīs quī trāns flūmen incolunt continenter bellum gerunt.

19. Eī quī trāns flūmen vīcōs et oppida habēbant ad Caesarem convēnērunt.

20. Lēgātiōnem ad Caesarem mittunt, cūjus lēgātiōnis prīnceps erat Dīvicō.

21. Omnēs Gallī quī in silvīs et montibus erant necātī sunt.

22. Ad urbem quae proxima est Gallīs sub vesperum pervēnērunt.

23. In colle quem lēgātus cum equitātū occupāverat castra posuērunt.

24. Propter celeritātem equitum hīc Helvētiōrum pāgus necātus est.

25. Erat in Galliā novum et repentīnum bellum cūjus causa haec erat.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. He came with the legion which he had enrolled in the province.
2. The leader who was afterwards the victor heard these things through informers.
3. He praised the good will of the canton that had sent hostages.
4. They are fighting with the Germans who dwell across the river.
5. Caesar with all his cavalry fought with those who had killed the Roman citizens.
6. The leader fortified the town which he had seized with a ditch and a rampart.
7. This was reported to the lieutenant who had been sent ahead.
8. The enemy saw the camp in which Caesar was.
9. The Gauls are laying waste the fields in the sight of Caesar himself.
10. He did not lay waste the fields in which the Romans had pitched camp.
11. He sent envoys concerning the safety of the hostages which this district had handed over.
12. The soldiers whom Caesar had sent into the camp built the fortifications as quickly as possible.
13. The grain which had been in the enemy's camp was given to the soldiers.
14. The wretched soldier who was in the camp had many wounds.
15. The leader sent the large ship which had been in the port to the island.
16. The message which he had heard was important.

17. All the sailors who had come into the port were killed by the Gauls.

18. The garrison which Caesar had sent into the city was strong.

19. The soldiers whose courage Caesar had praised fought with the enemy far into the night.

20. The lieutenant who was in the camp sent the cavalry to Caesar as soon as possible.

21. Because of the speed of the cavalry Caesar seized the mound by which the town was defended.

22. The soldier you killed was a brave man.

23. The army which came into Gaul after the war was large.

24. There was a new war in Gaul, the cause of which was the wrong done to *(the wrong of)* the hostages who had been sent into Caesar's camp.

25. The Gauls did not have a supply of beasts of burden, water and grain, and they sent an embassy to Caesar, who was in the Roman camp, to seek these things. He did not send them.

EXERCISE 3

THE INHABITANTS OF BRITAIN

To the Romans of Caesar's day Britain was a land of remote mystery as are the upper reaches of the Amazon or the highlands of the Himalayas today. Caesar's brief descriptions of the inhabitants and of their customs were no doubt avidly read in Rome.

Britanniae pars una ab eis incolitur quorum majores in insula semper *(always)* incoluerunt. Pars autem maritima *(on the sea)* ab eis incolitur qui trans mare ex Belgis venerant ut contra Britannos bellarent et praedam haberent. Horum est incredibilis multitudo in Britannia. Eadem tela habent quae Galli (habent).

LESSON 27

INTERROGATIVES

38

VOCABULARY

size *greatness*	**magnitūdō, magnitūdinis**
order *rank*	**ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.***
weather *storm*	**tempestās, tempestātis**
high *deep*	**altus, a, um**
sea	**mare, maris (mare *or* marī, maria, marium)**
beginning	**initium, ī**
at the beginning of winter	**initiō hiemis**
benefit *good deed*	**beneficium, ī**
winter quarters	**hīberna, hībernōrum, *n.***
I divide (into)	**dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus, *3, tr.;* in *w. acc.***
quickly	**celeriter, *adv.***
bravely	**fortiter, *adv.***
wonderful *marvelous*	**mīrus, a, um**
conversation *talk*	**sermō, sermōnis, *m.***

EXERCISE 1

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Quis illīus lēgātiōnis prīnceps fuit?
2. In quō proeliō necātī sunt?
3. Cum quibus cōpiīs Caesar in silvās contendit?
4. Quās ob causās bellum in Galliā erat?
5. Cūjus sunt illae sarcinae?
6. Quōrum erant illa castra?
7. In quōs pāgōs dīvīsi sunt Helvētiī?
8. Quās in silvās missī sunt equitēs?
9. Cūjus nāvis in marī est?
10. Quibus gladiōs dant?
11. Quās ob injūriās Caesar mīlitēs in Galliam mīsit?
12. Quō in locō castra posuit?
13. Cui hanc praedam dedit?
14. Quibuscum bellum geritis?
15. Quōcum fuistis?
16. Quem in viā vīdistī?
17. Quem exercitum vīcistis?
18. Quem collem occupābis?
19. Quis cum peditātū vēnit?
20. Quōrum sarcinās in hunc locum comportāvistis?
21. Quibus tēlīs mūnītiōnem dēfendētis?
22. Ad quam urbem rēx vēnit?
23. Quī vēnērunt?
24. In quā urbe erat Caesar?
25. Cui obsidēs Gallī dedērunt?
26. Initiō hiemis in marī altō erant tempestātēs.
27. Cūjus beneficia laudās?
28. Propter terrōrem mīlitēs sine signīs et sine ōrdinibus pugnābant.
29. Quī mīlitēs hīberna fortiter dēfendēbant?
30. Haec erant mīra.
31. Quis nōn laudāvit Caesaris magnitūdinem animī?
32. Quis sermōnem cōnsulum audīvit?

33. Quī celeriter veniunt?

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. Who came at the beginning of winter?
2. With what companions did he come?
3. Into what parts is Gaul divided? *(Use the perfect.)*
4. Who will lead the army?
5. Whom did you see in the forest?
6. To whom did you give the sword?
7. With what nations did Caesar wage war?
8. Whose building is that?
9. In what war were they killed?
10. To what city will we come?
11. On what sea are we?
12. On account of what injustice has Caesar come?
13. Of what embassy is he the chief?
14. Who are fighting in the field?
15. With what general did you come into Gaul?
16. The size of the ship was marvelous.
17. Who heard the talk of the generals?
18. Whose winter quarters are these?
19. There were storms on the deep sea.
20. The soldiers fought bravely but without ranks.
21. Because of the good deeds of the chief, the Belgians praised his *(ējus)* greatness of soul.
22. Because of the weather the sailors were not on the ship.
23. The scouts quickly reported the conversation of the chief.
24. Who did not praise the general's greatness of soul?
25. Whom will you send into winter quarters?

LESSON 28

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

32; 33, 1; 34; 170, 1

VOCABULARY

ambush *plot* *snare*	**īnsidiae, īnsidiārum**
gate	**porta, ae**
delay	**mora, ae**
a letter (of the alphabet)	**littera, ae**
a letter (epistle)	**litterae, litterārum**
I preserve *I save*	**servō, *1, tr.***
even *just*	**aequus, a, um**
between *among*	**inter, *prep. w. acc.***
I conspire	**conjūrō, *1, intr.***
I surrender	**dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus, *3, tr.***
I get ready *I dispatch*	**expediō, *4, tr.***
ready *light-armed*	**expedītus, a, um**
summer	**aestās, aestātis**
tongue *language*	**lingua, ae**

EXERCISE 1

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Cūjus currus est ille?
2. Ducem nostrum laudābimus.
3. Bellum cum mīlitibus vestrīs gerēmus.
4. Inter nōs conjūrābimus.
5. Arma expediēmus.
6. Caesarī nōs dēdēmus.
7. Tibi litterās mittam.
8. Erant īnsidiae in prōvinciā nostrā.
9. Post aestātem nostrī mīlitēs sine morā in hīberna contendērunt.
10. Rem pūblicam servābimus.
11. In Galliam vēnimus ut prōvinciam nostram dēfenderēmus.
12. Obsidēs inter nōs damus.
13. Mīlitēs quī in prōvinciā cōnscrīptī sunt aegrī sunt.
14. Victōria mea Caesarī nūntiābitur.
15. Omnēs amīcōs meōs vīdī.
16. Caesar equitātum praemīsit ut explōrātōrēs vincerent.
17. Haec erat locī nātūra in quō castra nostra erant.
18. Aciēs nostra in sinistrā rīpā flūminis erat.
19. Caesarī gladium meum dedī.
20. Ante portam in locō aequō mīlitēs eōrum in statiōne erant.
21. Nostrī vulnera multa habēbant.
22. Omnis Gallia ā nostrīs mīlitibus post hiemem pācāta est.
23. Caesar legiōnēs suās dūcēbat.
24. Helvētiī servōs suōs Caesarī trādiderant.
25. Hūjus adventū perterritī sunt Gallī.
26. Lingua eōrum nōn erat facilis.
27. Gallī in oppida sua contendērunt.
28. Hostēs in ipsā nostrōrum castrōrum portā erant cōnfertī.
29. Gallī lēgātum nostrum in castellō tenēbant.
30. Ab eīs quī trāns Rhēnum *(the river Rhine)* incolēbant ad Caesarem lēgātī sunt missī.
31. Ob eās rēs Caesar ā senātū laudātus est.

32. Propter frīgora frūmenta in agrīs nostrīs bona nōn erant.
33. In Italiam Caesar cum omnibus mīlitibus suīs contendit.
34. Pāx in nostrā prōvinciā ā prīncipibus cōnfirmāta est.
35. Caesar legiōnēs suās in hīberna dūxit.
36. Mūnītiōnēs nostrae nōn erant firmae.
37. In hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat.
38. Subitum bellum in prōvinciā meā erat.
39. Hūjus bellī haec fuit causa.
40. Haec in castrīs nostrīs geruntur.
41. Hostēs in castrīs suīs erant.
42. Ante aestātis initium omnēs Helvētiōrum pāgī in Galliam contendērunt.
43. In multam noctem nostrī invītī pugnābant.
44. Sine morā dux vester legiōnem in portā ipsā collocāvit.
45. Caesar mīlitēs suōs in aciē ante portam celeriter collocāvit.
46. Ad sōlis occāsum ad urbem tuam perveniēmus.
47. Erat inopia frūmentī in prōvinciā.
48. Ōrātiōnem meam nōn audīvērunt.
49. Lēgēs cīvitātis vestrae sunt aequae.
50. Praetor equitēs propter eōrum celeritātem laudāvit.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. There was grain in our fields.
2. The enemy hastened to our camp.
3. Our (men) fought until *(to)* the setting of the sun.
4. Towards evening we came into our camp.
5. The enemy came into their own towns.
6. We withstood *(sustineō)* the attack of the Gauls with slings and swords.
7. After the battle envoys were sent to Caesar by our leading men.
8. The Helvetians gave their swords to Caesar.
9. We shall defend our cities against the enemy.
10. The senate praised their leader.

11. The light-armed troops will be on the left bank of the river.

12. After my death you will preserve peace in Gaul.

13. This was the nature of the place in which we fought with the cavalry.

14. Because of these things the leader was killed by his own troops.

15. The Gauls waged war with our army.

16. Our camp was on the right bank of the river.

17. The Gauls held our ambassador.

18. Without delay our men placed an ambush in the valley.

19. Caesar praised the soldier because of his diligence.

20. The legions defended their own standards.

21. The state has been saved by his services.

22. We shall surrender the carts and the produce without delay.

23. They were conspiring among themselves *(inter sē)* by letter.

24. After the beginning of summer the light-armed troops were stationed before the gates of the city.

25. The enemy stationed their battle line in an even place.

EXERCISE 3

POLITICS IN GAUL

The quarrels of leaders and their partisans kept Gallic politics in disorder both in individual states and in the whole of Gaul. It was this constant internal dissension among the Gauls themselves that enabled Caesar to divide and conquer them.

In Gallia in omnibus civitatibus et in omnibus pagis erant factiones *(parties)*. Harum factionum principes erant qui auctoritatem in civitatibus habebant. Hi principes eos qui ex suis factionibus erant fortiter defendebant. Itaque *(and so)* omnes civitates Galliae divisae erant in duas *(two)* partes.

LESSON 29

NUMERALS

28;[1] *29*

VOCABULARY

often	**saepe, *adv.***
the rest *the remaining*	**reliquus, a, um**
for	**nam, *conj.*** **enim, *conj.*, *postp.*[2]**
and	**atque (ac), *conj.***
and for this reason	**quā dē causā *(lit. 'for which reason')***
or	**aut, *conj.***
either . . . or	**aut . . . aut, *conjs.***
among *at the house of* *near*	**apud, *prep. w. acc.***
I hold in *I contain* *I bound*	**contineō, continēre, continuī, contentus, *2, tr.***
almost	**ferē, *adv.* (follows the word it modifies)**
also	**quoque, *adv.*, *postp.***
I precede *I surpass*	**praecēdō, praeoēdere, praecessī, praecessus, *3, tr.***
I get ready *I provide*	**comparō, *1, tr.***

---

[1] It is not necessary to learn the whole list given in 28; 1-10, 100, 1,000 should be thoroughly mastered.

[2] postp. = postpositive; *i. e., enim* never stands first in a clause.

EXERCISE 1

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Mīlitēs nōn saepe ad eōs veniunt.
2. Caesar cum decem legiōnibus quās in prōvinciā cōnscrīpserat in montēs contendit.
3. Centum mīlitēs in proeliō necātī sunt.
4. Ūnam Galliae partem Belgae incolunt.
5. Tertiam partem Galliae Gallī incolunt.
6. Decem mīlia hominum in castrīs erant.
7. Duodecim oppida incendunt et quadringentōs vīcōs.
8. Cum duōbus mīlitibus Caesar inermis in castra hostium vēnit.
9. Erant duo itinera.
10. Erat in Galliā legiō ūna.
11. Caesar ipse trēs legiōnēs quae in Galliā hiemābant in Italiam dūxit.
12. Octō aut novem servōs in currū vīdī.
13. Hostēs decem nāvēs habēbant.
14. Decimam legiōnem propter ēgregiam virtūtem Caesar ipse laudāvit.
15. Septem prīncipēs atque trēs praetōrēs amīcitiam cōnfirmāverant.
16. Cum legiōnibus tribus in Galliam contendit.
17. Nam omnis cīvitās Helvētiōrum in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est.
18. Duōs lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt.
19. Quattuor mīlia equitum praemīsit ut castra dēfenderent.
20. Propter frīgora frūmenta in agrīs nōn erant.
21. Duo servī in aggere erant.
22. Propter vulnera mīlitum nostrī in eō locō castra posuērunt.
23. Hī trēs populī contrā Caesarem bellum gerent.
24. Decem explōrātōrēs praemīsit ut castra hostium vidērent.
25. Duōbus flūminibus et montibus altīs Helvētiī continēbantur.
26. Quīnque currūs in vīcō vīdī.

27. Omnēs ferē mīlitēs ipse necāvit.
28. Hōc idem decem lēgātī petēbant.
29. Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt.
30. Apud Helvētiōs erant decem oppida et quadringentī vīcī.
31. In prīmā aciē Caesar equitātum collocāvit ut impetum hostium sustinēret.
32. Decima legiō in Italiā hiemābit.
33. Hōc decimum bellum Caesar cum Gallīs gerit.
34. Sex collēs Rōmānī occupāvērunt nē hostēs illōs tenērent.
35. Caesar omnēs ferē ducēs mīlitum praecēdit.
36. Apud Caesarem erō.
37. Reliquās novem legiōnēs in urbem mīsit.
38. Hōc enim octāvō bellō omnem Galliam pācābit.
39. Sex gentēs in servitūtem trādidit.
40. Lēgātum in prōvinciam mīsit ut trēs novās legiōnēs cōnscrīberet.
41. Haec duo flūmina alta erant.
42. Mīlle mīlitēs cōnscrīptī sunt ā Caesare.
43. Duo lēgātī ēgregiī missī sunt.
44. Aut Gallōs vincēmus aut ab illīs vincēmur.
45. Quā dē causā octō mīlitēs in castellō collocāvit.
46. In octō urbēs omne frūmentum comportābant.
47. Caesar mīlitēs in castrīs continēbat.
48. Haec Galliae pars duōbus proeliīs pācāta est.
49. Sub vesperum quīnta legiō cum duābus equitum turmīs mīlle ferē hostēs vīcit.
50. Caesar ipse cum hīs tribus lēgātīs celeriter ad prīmam aciem pervēnit.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. In the sight of our army your cities will not be taken by storm.
2. The Gauls are surpassed by the Helvetians.
3. Caesar fought against the enemy with the tenth legion.

4. The lieutenant enrolled ten new legions in the province.
5. Caesar placed the sixth legion in winter quarters.
6. For these three tribes were bounded by high mountains or deep rivers.
7. In the first battle line were the Helvetians and the Belgians.
8. There were one hundred men in the fort.
9. And for this reason the ninth legion was sent ahead.
10. Caesar with these five legions came as quickly as possible into Italy.
11. The general often got two legions ready in Gaul.
12. There was a sixth war in Gaul.
13. Fifty men were killed in the battle.
14. The Gauls had a thousand horsemen.
15. I was at the house of Caesar.
16. Towards evening the tenth legion with five squadrons of cavalry arrived at the mountains.
17. Caesar pitched four camps on the bank.
18. There were two armies in Gaul.
19. He was fighting with five Gauls.
20. The Helvetians had forty towns.
21. There were thousands of swords in the camp.
22. And for this reason the troops were held in the camp.
23. Among the Gauls the chiefs precede the magistrates.
24. He sent the tenth legion into the forest.
25. For the thousand remaining soldiers were either killed or wounded.

EXERCISE 3

THE CHALLENGE OF THE GERMAN KING

Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, refused to leave Gaul at the bidding of Caesar. He replied with the pride of a barbarian and a conqueror.

"Ipsi Galli nos rogaverunt *(asked)* ut trans Rhenum *(Rhine)* veniremus. Venimus ut eos adjuvaremus. Agros et frumenta et

reliquas res habuimus quae eidem Galli nobis dederunt. Galli ipsi obsides nobis dederunt. Galli autem contra nos bellaverunt, non nos contra illos. Uno proelio vicimus Gallos, qua de causa Gallia nostra est. Nam victorum praeda est. Cur *(why)* vos, Romani, in agros nostros venistis? Cur contra nos bellum paratis? Cur Galliam contra nos defenditis? Gallia nostra est, non vestra. Nam nos Gallos superavimus. Si *(if)* nobiscum pugnabitis, fortiter pugnabimus et vos quoque vincemus. Germani victores erunt."

SUPPLEMENTARY

EXERCISE 4

Translate:

1. Six carts.
2. In two forts.
3. After the third battle.
4. One pace.
5. Two winters.
6. The tenth legion.
7. Four tribes.
8. With the fifth legion.
9. Eight slaves *(acc.)*.
10. Two roads.
11. To three praetors.
12. Two brothers.
13. Of ten citizens.
14. In five battles.
15. Two thousand men.
16. Ten darts.
17. Four thousand clients.
18. Of a thousand soldiers.
19. With three thousand men.
20. Seven cantons.

EXERCISE 5

THE PLEA OF DIVITIACUS

The Haedui were allies of Caesar in his campaign against the Helvetians (a people living in what is now Switzerland). But one of their leaders, Dumnorix, was implicated in a plot to cut off Caesar's supplies. Divitiacus, however, the brother of Dumnorix, was a loyal friend of Caesar, and, when Caesar told him of his intention to punish Dumnorix, he begged for mercy.

"Omnia quae de fratre dixisti *(you have said)* vera sunt.

Propter hanc rem magnum dolorem habeo. Amore *(love)* autem fratris commoveor et timore multitudinis. Ego autem tibi, Caesar, amicus sum. Si *(if)* a te frater necatus erit, omnes Galli me culpabunt *(will blame)*. Vidisti amicitiam, fidem, voluntatem—parce ei *(spare him)*. Fortius *(more bravely)* contra hostes populi Romani pugnabo!"

LESSON 30

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

23; 24; 25

VOCABULARY

better	**melior, melius**
best	**optimus, a, um**
worse	**pējor, pējus**
worst	**pessimus, a, um**
more	**plūs, plūris, *n.***
most	**plūrimus, a, um**
lesser, *smaller*	**minor, minus**
least, *smallest*	**minimus, a, um**
nearer	**propior, propius** { *dat.* / *acc.*
upper, *higher*, *former*, *superior*	**superior, superius**
highest, *last*	**suprēmus, a, um**
highest	**summus, a, um**
farther	**ulterior, ulterius**
farthest, *last*	**ultimus, a, um**
on this side, *hither*	**citerior, citerius**
outermost, *last*	**extrēmus, a, um**

foreign	**exterus, a, um**
low *humble*	**īnferus, a, um**
lowermost	**īnfimus, a, um**
lowest	**īmus, a, um**
following (of time) *next*	**posterus, a, um**
last	**postrēmus, a, um**
than	**quam,** *adv.*
greater *larger*	**mājor, mājus**
greatest *largest*	**maximus, a, um**

EXERCISE 1

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae.
2. Apud Helvētiōs nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorīx.
3. Flūmen Rhēnus altissimum[1] est.
4. Caesar cōpiās suās in proximum collem dūxit.
5. In Ulteriōre Galliā erant duae legiōnēs quae in prōvinciā cōnscrīptae erant.
6. Caesar cum omnibus lēgātīs in Citeriōrem Galliam contendit.
7. Erat novum bellum in Ulteriōre Galliā; Caesar enim in Italiam contenderat.
8. Mōrēs populōrum exterōrum nōn laudat.
9. In locō superiōre sextam legiōnem collocāvit.
10. Erant plūrēs mīlitēs in castrīs quam in agrīs.
11. Hīc mōns altior est quam ille.
12. Erat pessimus homō.

---

[1] The Latin superlative is often best translated by using 'very' or 'exceedingly,' *e. g.*, 'very deep,' 'exceedingly deep.'

13. Caesar dux melior erat quam prīnceps Gallōrum.
14. Adulēscentēs lapidēs ad mūnītiōnēs cotīdiē comportābant.
15. Eī quī in superiōre aciē erant sarcinās dēfendēbant.
16. Prīma aciēs impetum equitātūs sustinuit.
17. Plūrima vulnera accēpit *(received)*.
18. Prīma aciēs propior flūminī erat.
19. Gallus miserrimus erat.
20. Caesar nōbilior erat quam Brūtus.
21. Equitēs sunt celerrimī.
22. Loca superiōra occupāvit.
23. Mīlitēs in castra dūxit.
24. Cum Gallīs bellum gerunt.
25. In īnfimō locō erat.
26. Haec calamitās pējor est.
27. Hīc currus minor est.
28. Haec gēns omnium minima et ultima est.
29. In īnsulā extrēmā erat summa virtūs et hūmānitās.
30. Maximum omnium bellōrum hōc bellum erat.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. The garrison in the city is stronger than the garrison in the camp.
2. This road is easier.
3. Of all the horsemen this man is the swiftest.
4. The sailor is worse than the soldier.
5. The attack was most sudden.
6. The Gauls are more miserable than Caesar.
7. There were more soldiers in the camp of the enemy.
8. Of all the Romans Caesar was the noblest.
9. They pitched the camp on higher ground *(locus)*.
10. There were six legions in Farther Gaul.
11. He had enrolled new troops in Hither Gaul.
12. They were worse men.
13. The cavalry of Caesar were very swift.

14. This ship is better than that.
15. The camp of the enemy was nearer to the river.
16. We are nearer to the cavalry.
17. He led the men into the next province.
18. Of all the rivers this is the deepest.
19. The battle was on low ground *(locus)*.
20. The camp was pitched by the soldiers on high ground.
21. The Belgians were the bravest of the Gauls.
22. The first legion was in the lowest place.
23. This is the last city of the Province.
24. There was a war in Farther Gaul.
25. Caesar was the best general among the Romans.

EXERCISE 3

Give the meaning:

passus	sententia	noctū
ostendō	ōra	īnscientia
obses	ratis	augeō
angustiae	perrumpō	jugum
redintegrō	ēditus	temperantia

LESSON 31

ADVERBS; THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

26; 27

VOCABULARY

a long time	**diū, *adv.***
a longer time	**diūtius, *adv.***
longest *a very long time*	**diūtissimē, *adv.***
sharply *bitterly*	**ācriter, *adv.***
boldly	**audācter, *adv.***
badly	**male, *adv.***
worse	**pējus, *adv.***
worst	**pessimē, *adv.***
greatly	**magnopere, *adv.***
more	**magis, *adv.***
most *very much* *very greatly*	**maximē, *adv.***
much	**multum, *adv.***
more	**plūs, *adv.***
most	**plūrimum, *adv.***
well	**bene, *adv.***
almost	**prope, *adv.***
near *close to*	**prope, *prep. w. acc.***

EXERCISE 1

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Haec omnia ā Gallīs laudāta sunt.
2. Nostrī ācriter atque diū pugnāvērunt.
3. Helvētiī quī prope flūmen erant magnopere sunt perterritī.
4. Ea rēs Caesarem multum adjuvābat.
5. Post illam victōriam Caesar magis laudātur.
6. Caesarem plūs laudat quam ego.
7. Caesarem plūs laudat quam mē.
8. Nostrī impetum hostium audācter sustinēbant.
9. Gallī diūtissimē pugnāvērunt sed male.
10. Diūtius cum eō erat.
11. Prope necātus est.
12. Diūtius in urbe fuit.
13. Pessimē pugnat.
14. Hīc pējus vīdit quam ille.
15. Maximē laudātus est.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. The enemy fought against us more boldly.
2. He praised the general more than the soldiers.
3. Our men fought most bravely.
4. He built the bridge very poorly *(worst)*.
5. We praised you greatly.
6. They dwelt in Gaul a long time.
7. We will fight more bravely than you.
8. He was very much alarmed.
9. We will fight against you more bravely.
10. I shall not be in Gaul a long time.
11. It is well; we are close to the enemy.
12. Almost all fought bitterly (for) a very long time.
13. The general fought more bravely than the soldiers.
14. Caesar praised greatly the courage of the lieutenant.

EXERCISE 3

THE GAULS

The Gauls had once been as terrible in war as the Germans, but easier living conditions and border contacts with Roman luxury had weakened the race.

Aliquando *(once)* Galli fuerant fortiores quam Germani et homines trans Rhenum miserant ut agros Germanorum occuparent. Itaque optima Germanorum loca Galli incoluerant. Multa bella cum Germanis gesserunt et saepe eos superaverant. Sed, ubi *(when)* Caesar in Galliam venit, Germani fortiores erant quam Galli et ab his magnopere timebantur *(were feared)*. Trans Rhenum flumen Germani saepe veniebant, aedificia Gallorum incendebant, Gallos ipsos necabant. Nam Galli finitimi erant provinciae Romanae. Ex ea provincia importabant ea quae animos effeminant *(weaken)*. Qua de causa Germani postea fortiores erant atque saepe Gallos vincebant.

LESSON 32

ALIUS, ALTER, AND OTHER PRONOUNS[1]

29, 1

VOCABULARY

which (of two)	**uter, utra, utrum, utrīus**
neither (of two)	**neuter, neutra, neutrum, neutrīus**
any *anyone*	**ūllus, a, um, ūllīus**
no *none*	**nūllus, a, um, nūllīus**
alone	**sōlus, a, um, sōlīus**
whole	**tōtus, a, um, tōtīus**
one	**ūnus, a, um, ūnīus**
the other (of two)	**alter, altera, alterum, alterīus**
other *another*	**alius, alia, aliud, alterīus, alterī**

EXERCISE 1

Translate:

1. Alteram partem Belgae incolunt.
2. Aliam viam habēmus nūllam.
3. Neutra via facilis erat.
4. Hae sarcinae nūllīus sunt.
5. Nūllī hominī hōc dabimus.
6. Dux in silvās sōlus vēnit.
7. Erat ūnus mīles in castrīs.
8. Tōtīus Galliae imperium petīvit.
9. Nōn vīdī arma ūllīus mīlitis.
10. Utrī litterās dedistī?

[1] These are all declined like *ūnus, a, um* (29, 1).

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. This is the sword of the other consul.
2. I saw no soldiers.
3. To which one (of the two) did you give the chariot?
4. The soldier was alone.
5. Of all Gaul this is the largest part.
6. I gave the letter to neither one.
7. He praised the courage of the other soldiers.
8. He was greatly alarmed by the death of this one man.
9. There were no soldiers in the village.
10. He gave it to the other consul.
11. He saw the other camp of the Gauls.

EXERCISE 3

HOW THE GERMANS ENTERED GAUL

The Germans originally gained entrance into Gaul as mercenaries called in by Gallic chiefs to aid them in local wars. But the Germans remained to threaten the liberty and peace of all Gaul. When Caesar had demonstrated his power in his first campaign against the Helvetians, the Gallic chiefs explained the situation to him and begged him to expel Ariovistus.

"Galliae totius factiones *(factions)* sunt duae; harum alterius principes sunt Haedui, alterius Arverni. Hi inter se diu contendebant. Qua de causa Arverni Germanos trans flumen vocaverunt. Horum milia quindecim venerunt; postea plures traducti sunt. Nam agros et fructus et oppida Gallorum hi barbari petebant. Sunt in Gallia multa milia Germanorum. Horum opera Arverni sine mora alios Gallos vicerunt. Ariovistus, autem, rex Germanorum, magnam partem agri Arvernorum occupavit. Qua de causa Arverni minimis finibus continentur atque apud eos est inopia frumenti et pabuli. Arverni multos obsides Ariovisto dederunt. Sed res pejor erit. Nam plures Germani exspectantur. Nam trans flumen in agros Arvernorum venient. Ariovistus est homo

turpis atque durus. Qua de causa ad te de hac re venimus. Quis alius adjuvabit nos? Tu, Caesar, nos defendes atque hunc pessimum hominem Ariovistum vinces et nostros vicos, agros, aedificia, civitates ipsas servabis!"

EXERCISE 4

THE DEATH OF TWO BROTHERS

In eo proelio multi equites necati sunt; in his homo optimus Piso Aquitanus qui amicus a senatu nostro appellatus *(called)* erat. Hujus frater ab hostibus in proelio vulnerabatur. Qua de causa Piso ad eum contendit ut eum adjuvaret. Ipse autem ab hostibus circumventus *(surrounded)* atque necatus est. Morte ejus frater magnopere commotus est atque contra hostes contendit. Acriter et fortiter pugnavit sed ab hostibus ipse necatus est.

GENERAL REVIEW EXERCISES[1]

EXERCISE 1

Give in successive drill

1. *the genitive singular;*
2. *the gender;*
3. *the meaning;*
4. *the ablative singular;*
5. *the genitive plural:*

adulēscēns	gēns	nāvis
arx	jugum	pars
virtūs	jūmentum	pōns
cīvis	jūsjūrandum	ratis
rēs	cohors	turris
classis	collis	urbs
mōns	hostis	mora
vulnus	imber	pāgus
vāllum	tempus	mōtus
vallēs	grātia	diēs
cliēns	mors	mīles
vigilia	multitūdō	mēnsis
linter	magnitūdō	

EXERCISE 2

Give the correct form of magnus *to agree with:*

partēs	animōs	fīnibus
lingua	Germānīs	rēgnī
lēgibus	bellum	cupiditāte
flūmen	causa	conjūrātiōnem
hūmānitāte	virtūte	nōbilitātis
mercātōrēs	proeliīs	cīvitātī

[1] For vocabulary review see the classified lists on pages 355-424.

cōpiīs	currūs	vīcōs
imperium	vinculīs	aedificia
nātūram	armīs	cōnsiliō
monte	agrīs	itineribus
lacū	magistrātūs	ratibus
dolōre	mortem	perīculō
glōriā	oppida	exercitum
fortitūdinis	montem	īnsula

EXERCISE 3

Give in successive drill the form of* hīc, ille, iste, *and* is *to agree with:

castra	pābulī	voluntātī
āgmen	cōpiā	collem
prōvinciā	nāvibus	jugō
equitātū	ōrātiōne	legiōnēs
arcem	conventū	locum
proeliō	uxōrem	equitātuī
hostem	fugā	aciem
diēs	obsidēs	gladiīs
iter	voluntātem	monte
passuum	dolōris	signa
frūmentum	dolōrī	montī
frīgora	tempus	hostī
agrīs	oppidō	rē

EXERCISE 4

Decline:

ager	servitūs	linter
agger	frāter	vulnus
puer	arx	mors
altitūdō	mōns	jūs
eques	jūsjūrandum	iter
pater	rēs pūblica	jūdicium
sermō	cohors	classis

EXERCISE 5

Give the genitive (all genders):

ēditus	vester	mājor
nūllus	ūnus	pējor
aeger	turpis	vērus
celer	pār	superior
crēber	fēlīx	suprēmus
equester	anceps	minor
integer	līber	tōtus
dexter	dīligēns	tuus
ūllus	miser	uter
noster	recēns	alter
pulcher	vehemēns	alius
sinister	brevis	fortis

EXERCISE 6

Give in successive drill
1. the principal parts;
2. the meaning:

dēdō	ostendō	habeō
dīvidō	perfringō	expediō
necō	vincō	commūniō
dēfendō	perrumpō	veniō
contendō	videō	nūntiō
dūcō	teneō	pugnō
parō	petō	adjuvō
incendō	trādō	conveniō
incolō	taceō	collocō
praemittō	regō	bellō
perterreō	praecēdō	cōnscrībō
audiō	prōdō	obtineō
incitō	perveniō	permoveō
offendō	augeō	submoveō
pōnō	commoveō	sustineō
exspectō	contineō	dō

EXERCISE 7

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Gallī sunt proximī Germānīs quī trāns flūmen incolunt.
2. Mīlitēs quōs Caesar in Italiā cōnscrīpserat fortēs erant.
3. Equitēs cōnfestim contrā hostēs mīsit ut impetum sustinērent.
4. Equitēs Gallōrum omnēs agrōs vāstābant nē cōpia frūmentī in prōvinciā esset.
5. Dux nūllōs explōrātōrēs praemīsit.
6. Fugitīvī Rōmānīs ā servō prōditī sunt.
7. Gallī omnēs ratēs et lintrēs incendērunt nē Rōmānī trāns flūmen venīrent.
8. Mercātōrēs propter timōrem in oppida nōn veniēbant.
9. Lēgātus, homō optimus, cum Gallīs multa bella gessit.
10. Erat in Galliā magna cīvium Rōmānōrum caedēs.

EXERCISE 8

Translate:

1. The fugitives whom Caesar had seen in the forest hastened into the mountains.
2. There was a great and sudden war in Gaul.
3. Caesar hastened with all his troops into the province so that the Helvetians would not come across the river.
4. The Belgians were the bravest of all the Gauls, but the Germans were braver than the Belgians.
5. Caesar was praised by the Roman senate because of his victories.
6. He stationed sentinels in front of *(ante)* the camp and strong garrisons in all the forts.
7. There was a cavalry battle in the forest, but the infantry were held in the camp by Caesar and the lieutenants.
8. I have not fought against the Romans, but the Romans have fought against me.
9. Caesar awaited the arrival of the ships which Brutus had provided.

10. They laid waste all Gaul; the grain and buildings they burned; the infantry and cavalry they killed, and the wives and children were slaves.

EXERCISE 9

Translate:

1. Senātus victōriam laudāvit.
2. Nauta in rīpā erat.
3. Rōmānī agrōs Gallīs nōn dedērunt.
4. Puerī mīlitēs laudant.
5. Mīlitēs in castrīs erant.
6. Nūntius ad Caesarem contendit.
7. Hīc servus erat.
8. Lībertās pulchra est.
9. Quae fuit causa bellī?
10. Dīligentiam lēgātōrum laudāvērunt.
11. Obsidēs Caesar necāvit.
12. Frūmentum in agrō nōn erat.
13. Puerī nāvēs in portū vīdērunt.
14. Ego contrā tē nōn pugnāvī.
15. Quis est iste?
16. Cui arma dedistī?
17. Quid in urbe vīdistī?
18. Quid audīvistis?
19. Āgmen in valle erat.
20. Quis tē ad mē mīsit?
21. Rēgem offendērunt.
22. Agrī nostrī in cōnspectū Caesaris vāstantur!
23. Nūllī servī necātī sunt.
24. Nāvis in lacū erat.
25. Cotīdiē nūntium ad Caesarem mittit.
26. Lēgātus ad Caesarem cum equitātū celeriter contendit.
27. Est mōtus in prōvinciā.
28. Pācem cōnfirmāvistī.
29. Hōc tibi dabō.

30. Equitēs hostēs perterrēbant.
31. Frūmentum in prōvinciam importābātur.
32. Erat proelium in angustiīs.
33. Proximī Germānīs erant.
34. Trāns flūmen incolunt.
35. Ūnam partem Galliae Belgae incolunt.
36. Erant duo itinera.
37. Quem ad Caesarem mīsit?
38. Quis necātus est?
39. Septem legiōnēs ad lēgātum mīsit.
40. Hanc victōriam senātuī nūntiābis.
41. Equitēs proelium redintegrāvērunt.
42. Gallī ad flūmen convēnērunt.
43. Servum Rōmānīs trādidit.
44. Sententia lēgātī audīta est.
45. Turrēs incendēbantur.
46. Quī mīlitēs cōnscrīptī sunt?
47. Aciēs perrupta est.
48. Explōrātōrēs noctū in castra ductī sunt.
49. Propter grātiam Caesaris hī Rōmānīs amīcī sunt.
50. Nōn erat pābulum in agrīs.

LESSON 33

PARTICIPLES

TENSE BY RELATION

Pages 34, 40;[1] 51; 55; 95

Participles are verbal adjectives.

They have tense, voice, may take objects, are modified by adverbs; } therefore **verbs.**

They agree with a noun in gender, number, and case; } therefore **adjectives.**

In English we have more participles than in Latin. An ordinary verb in Latin has only a present and future participle active, and a perfect participle passive.

Present Active: The leader was wounded fighting.

Dux pugnāns vulnerātus est.

Future Active: Caesar was about to fight.

Caesar pugnātūrus erat.

The future participle in English is rarely used; the same idea is usually expressed some other way. "Caesar was just on the point of fighting."

Perfect Passive: The soldier, { having been summoned, / summoned, } came.

Mīles, vocātus, vēnit.

---

[1] For completeness all the forms on pages 34 and 40 should be learned at this point.

The participle in English and Latin often expresses the same idea as a clause.

Dux pugnāns vulnerātus est.
The leader was wounded while he was fighting.
The leader was wounded fighting.

Mīles, vocātus, vēnit.
The soldier came after he had been summoned.
The soldier, having been summoned, came.

The tense of participles and of infinitives is determined by the *rule of relative time* (No. 95).

EXAMPLES

Contemporaneous: Caesar pugnāns mīlitēs vocat.

Caesar { *while fighting* / *fighting* / *as he fights* } *summons the soldiers.*

Caesar pugnāns vulnerātus est.
Caesar was wounded fighting.

Prior: Dux vulnerātus in hostium castrīs est.
The leader, having been wounded, is in the enemy's camp.

Dux vulnerātus in castrīs erat.

The leader, { *having been wounded,* / *after being wounded,* } *was in the camp.*

Subsequent: Caesar pugnātūrus mīlitēs vocat.

Caesar, { *about to fight,* / *being about to fight,* } *summons the soldiers.*

Caesar pugnātūrus vulnerātus est.
Caesar being about to fight was wounded.

VOCABULARY

I weep	**fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, *2, intr.***
I restrain *I check*	**reprimō, reprimere, repressī, repressus, *3, tr.***
and so	**itaque, *conj.***
desirous of *eager for*	**cupidus, a, um; *gen.***
always	**semper, *adv.***
soon	**mox, *adv.***
at first *in the beginning*	**prīmō, *adv.***
I do *I drive*	**agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *3, tr.***
I drive *I defeat*	**pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, *3, tr.***
I flow	**fluō, fluere, flūxī, *3, intr.***
I lead to *I induce*	**addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus, *3, tr.***
I lead into *I induce*	**indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductus, *3, tr.***
hindered *encumbered*	**impedītus, a, um**
I join battle with	**proelium committō, committere, commīsī, commissus, *3, tr.;* cum *w. abl.***
another's *foreign*	**aliēnus, a, um**
barbarous *uncivilized*	**barbarus, a, um**
vehemently *vigorously*	**vehementer, *adv.***
hour	**hōra, ae**
life	**vīta, ae**

EXERCISE 1

Translate; parse the participles:

1. Itaque fīnitimī, Venetōrum *(the Veneti)* auctōritāte adductī, bellum cum Rōmānīs gessērunt.
2. Mīlitēs vulnerātī in castra contendērunt.
3. Ā mīlitibus nostrīs superātī, lēgātum dē pāce mīsērunt.
4. Classis nostra, ab hostibus vīsa, ad portum pervēnit.
5. Barbarī hominēs, cupiditāte inductī, semper male agunt.
6. In eōs venientēs equitēs mīsit.
7. Hominēs malī, cupiditāte inductī, semper cupidī sunt rērum aliēnārum.
8. Prīnceps, victōriā Caesaris commōtus, lēgātōs dē dēditiōne mīsit.
9. Hōra est! Vītam cīvium servābō.
10. Gallus flēns pācem petīvit.
11. Helvētiī, repentīnō ējus adventū commōtī, lēgātōs dē pāce mittunt.
12. Germānus, ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, trāns Rhēnum cōpiās dūxit.
13. Itaque equitēs mīlitēs impedītōs adjūvērunt.
14. Gallī, ab equitibus Rōmānīs pulsī, trāns montēs nōn vēnērunt.
15. Puerī flentēs ad patrem vēnērunt.
16. Hōc altissimum flūmen celeriter fluit.
17. Eum venientem vīdī.
18. Mīles castra dēfendēns necātus est.
19. Explōrātor, mīlitēs trāns montēs dūcēns, hostēs in dextrā rīpā vīdit.
20. Gallus frātrēs vocāns necātus est.
21. Ā clientibus inductus mox proelium cum hīs hominibus barbarīs committet.
22. Barbarī ē silvīs venientēs ā Caesare vīsī sunt.
23. Prīmō proelium nōn commīsit; posteā, caede cīvium commōtus, equitēs contrā barbarōs mīsit.
24. Cupiditāte imperiī adductus Venetōs incitāvit.

25. Ab equitibus submōtī barbarī sē dēdidērunt.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. The king, frightened, came to Caesar.
2. Caesar summoned the council of leading men.
3. He saw the swiftly *(celeriter)* flowing river.
4. The barbarian, weeping, was killed.
5. The soldiers, having been stationed in front of the camp, bravely defended their standards.
6. The Gaul was desirous of war.
7. The children, weeping, came to Caesar.
8. Of all these men the lieutenant is far *(longē)* the bravest.
9. The Romans, induced by a desire for fame, waged many wars.
10. The envoy, having been praised by the senate and people of Rome, was sent to Caesar.
11. And so, vehemently alarmed by the slaughter of Roman citizens, he at first sent two legions to check those barbarous tribes.
12. And so the Belgians, having been defeated by the uncivilized Germans, joined battle with the encumbered soldiers of the consul.
13. It will soon be the hour. We shall kill the magistrates and seize the citadel.
14. Foreign nations, frightened by the victories of the Romans, did not always fight to save liberty and life.
15. In the beginning the Romans were not eager for kingly power, but, induced by passion, they afterwards conquered foreign nations.

LESSON 34

-IO VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

56

VOCABULARY

I hurl *I throw*	**jaciō, jacere, jēcī, jactus, *3, tr.***
I throw back *I repulse*	**rējiciō, rējicere, rējēcī, rējectus, *3, tr.***
I throw away *I reject*	**prōjiciō, prōjicere, prōjēcī, prōjectus, *3, tr.***
I cast down *I disappoint*	**dējiciō, dējicere, dējēcī, dējectus, *3, tr.***
I do *I make*	**faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *3, tr.***
I complete *I exhaust*	**cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus, *3, tr.***
I perform *I complete*	**perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus, *3, tr.***
I affect *I treat*	**afficiō, afficere, affēcī, affectus, *3, tr.; abl.***
I take *I capture*	**capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, *3, tr.***
I undertake	**suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus, *3, tr.***
I take back *I recapture*	**recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus, *3, tr.***
I inform of	**certiōrem faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *3, tr.;* dē *w. abl.***
I flee	**fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *3, tr. and intr.***

EXERCISE 1

Write out the present system of faciō, fugiō, and jaciō.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. Conjūrātiōnem nōbilitātis facit.
2. Magnō dolōre afficiēbantur.
3. Cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem cōnfirmāvit.
4. Orgetorīx lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipit.
5. Rēgnum in cīvitāte Helvētiōrum occupāvit.
6. Gallī Caesarī obsidēs dedērunt.
7. Vulneribus cōnfectus fūgit.
8. Pontem in flūmine faciunt.
9. Injūriās lēgātī memoriā teneō.
10. Mīlitēs fugientēs captī sunt.
11. Hostēs in silvās fugiunt.
12. Urbs ā legiōnibus capiēbātur.
13. Rem suscipiam.
14. Gallī arma prōjiciunt ut pācem petant.
15. Cum Gallīs in itinere pugnat ut dēfessī capiantur.
16. Mīlitēs pugnābant ut collem reciperent.
17. Pontem in flūmine faciēmus.
18. Mīlitēs hostēs fundīs rējiciēbant.
19. Gallī arma dējiciunt.
20. Caesar perfugās recipit.
21. Hostēs in montēs fugiunt.
22. Arma prōjēcērunt et in silvās fūgērunt.
23. Orgetorīx lēgātiōnem suscipiet.
24. Perficiam mūnītiōnem sub vesperum.
25. Vāllum faciēs.
26. Injūriā affectī cīvēs necāvērunt.
27. Hostēs tēla jaciēbant.
28. Gallī lēgātum injūriā afficiēbant.
29. Collem, mīlitēs, capiētis.
30. Hostēs nōs capiunt.

EXERCISE 3

Translate:

1. I will flee into the mountains.
2. The Gauls were affected with great sorrow.
3. I shall inform the consul of this affair.
4. The grain will be recaptured.
5. The cavalry are hurling the darts; the soldiers will capture the camp.
6. You will make a bridge over *(on)* the river.
7. We shall complete the fortification towards evening.
8. Caesar will take back the deserters.
9. A squadron of cavalry fought with the legions on the march *(journey)*.
10. The Belgians, repulsed by the cavalry, threw away their arms and fled.
11. The soldiers were burning the city and the Gauls were fleeing.
12. Disappointed in this hope *(no preposition)* they took the town and killed the merchants.
13. The soldier will soon be exhausted.
14. Orgetorix will undertake an embassy to Caesar.
15. A great victory was reported by the scout.
16. They were laying waste the fields of the Gauls.
17. They threw javelins into the cavalry.
18. The cities of the Gauls are being recaptured.
19. They did badly.
20. The cavalry fled into the mountains.
21. They were casting down stones.
22. He treated the scouts of the Gauls with indignity *(injūriā)*.
23. We shall make a journey into Italy.
24. There was a lack of fodder in the fields of the Gauls.
25. He will be captured fighting.
26. Caesar called together all the magistrates of the state.
27. The enemy were fleeing into the fields.
28. They hurled darts into the battle line.

29. I will undertake the embassy.

30. They captured the towns of the enemy so that there would not be a lack of grain and water in the army.

EXERCISE 4

THE BELGIANS

In northern Gaul lived the warlike Belgians. These, too, felt the threat of Caesar's legions and formed a league to resist the Roman aggression.

Belgae orti *(descended)* erant ab Germanis qui antiquitus *(in ancient times)* trans Rhenum venerant et agros bonos in Gallia occupaverant. Hi fortes et barbari erant et apud Gallos magnam habebant auctoritatem. Prope provinciam Romanam non erant; itaque ea quae animos effeminant *(weaken)* non importabant. Habebant militum incredibilem numerum. Propter audaciam et fortitudinem horum militum principes Belgarum cum ipsis Romanis proelium saepe committebant. Caesar autem sua diligentia et militum Romanorum virtute eos vicit et amicos populi Romani fecit.

LESSON 35

DEPONENT VERBS

58

VOCABULARY

I try *I attempt*	**cōnor, *1, tr.; infin.***
I get booty *I plunder*	**praedor, *1, tr.***
I exhort *I encourage*	**hortor, *1, tr.*** **cohortor, *1, tr.***
I delay	**moror, *1, tr. and intr.***
I plunder *I lay waste*	**populor, *1, tr.***
I promise	**polliceor, *2, tr.***
I set out	**proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *3, intr.***
I follow	**sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *3, tr.***
I follow out (a plan, *etc.*)	**exsequor, exsequī, exsecūtus sum, *3, tr.***
I overtake *I attain* *I get*	**cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum, *3, tr.***
I pursue	**īnsequor, īnsequī, īnsecūtus sum, *3, tr.***
I speak *I talk*	**loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *3, tr. and intr.*; *'about,' 'of,'* dē, *prep. w. abl.***
I rise up *I arise*	**coorior, coorīrī, coortus sum, *4, intr.***
I attack	**aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum, *3, tr.***
I die	**morior, morī, mortuus sum, *3, intr.***

EXERCISE 1

Write out the whole conjugation of:

1. cōnor
2. polliceor
3. sequor
4. coorior
5. morior

EXERCISE 2

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Ad urbem profectus sum.
2. Ad flūmen hostem secūtī sunt.
3. Victōriam mīlitēs cōnsecūtī sunt.
4. Dē multīs rēbus locūtus es.
5. Agrōs Gallōrum mīlitēs populābantur.
6. Gallī praedābantur.
7. Barbarī nostrōs in itinere aggressī sunt.
8. Bellum coortum est.
9. Caesar mīlitēs hortātus est ut pontem dēfenderent.
10. Amīcitiā inductus haec pollicitus est.
11. Explōrātor moriēbātur.
12. Magistrātūs cohortatus sum ut jūs exsequerentur.
13. Sub vesperum ad montēs pervēnērunt.
14. Castra in silvīs posita sunt.
15. Caesar in Galliā morātur.
16. Gallī bellō lībertātem cōnsequentur.
17. Dē proeliō lēgātus et Caesar locūtī sunt.
18. Sub vesperum mīlitēs ad castra hostium profectī sunt.
19. In cōnspectū Caesaris Gallī agrōs in prōvinciā nōn populābuntur.
20. Nōn es cōnātus.
21. Lībertātem cōnsequēris.
22. Mīlitēs in flūmen equitātum īnsequuntur.
23. Mīlitēs praemissī sunt ut agrōs populārentur.
24. In Galliam tē sequar.
25. Hostēs sub vesperum aggrediēmur.

26. Sub vesperum equitātus cum impedīmentīs nōs sequētur.

27. Mē in Galliam secūtī estis ut agrōs populārēminī, Gallōs vincerētis, glōriam reī pūblicae augērētis.

28. Sub vesperum lēgātus cum omnibus cōpiīs Caesarem in montēs Galliae secūtus est et castra in montibus posuit ut impedīmenta dēfenderent.

29. Caesar in Italiā morābātur ut novī mīlitēs cōnscrīberentur et lēgātī convenīrent.

30. Tēcum dē multīs rēbus loquar.

EXERCISE 3

Translate:

1. I will set out for the camp.
2. The Gaul, dying, talked about liberty and life.
3. The Gauls will get peace with their swords.
4. The soldiers were sent ahead by the leader to lay waste the fields.
5. I will speak with you about the battle.
6. The enemy will attack the cavalry.
7. The camp was defended by a strong garrison lest the Gauls should capture the baggage.
8. The scout spoke with Caesar concerning the nature of the mountains.
9. He sent the cavalry to frighten the army of the Gauls.
10. Caesar exhorted the legions.
11. Towards evening they arrived at a large lake in the mountains.
12. They spoke about the laws.
13. The scouts were attacking the camp of the Gauls.
14. Caesar did not delay in the camp.
15. A war arose, and the enemy plundered our fields.
16. He promised everything *(all things)*.
17. He set out with all the legions for Gaul to defend the cities of the province.
18. Soldiers, show the Gauls the courage of the Roman legions.

19. The weary soldiers followed the cavalry of the enemy to the camp of the Gauls.
20. We shall capture the camp towards evening.
21. He encouraged the cavalry.
22. The wicked soldier will betray the camp of the Romans.
23. Brave men always try.
24. We overtook the cavalrymen who were plundering.
25. They will hasten into the mountains to pursue the enemy.
26. The journey was difficult.
27. They fought against the Gauls that there might be peace.
28. The soldier spoke to the leader about the lack of water.
29. An unarmed man followed Caesar into the camp.
30. He followed out this plan in order to get booty.

EXERCISE 4

CAESAR'S FIRST BATTLE WITH THE GERMANS

The Germans were a brave and barbarous people who lived across the Rhine. Many of them had crossed into Gaul and their coming was feared by the Gauls and the Romans alike. Caesar struck at their increasing power during his first year in Gaul.

Germani erant fortes et barbari. Qua de causa ante proelium milites Romani timore afficiebantur. Caesar autem legiones suas contra Ariovistum, regem Germanorum, confestim duxit ut Germanos rejiceret et ipsum Ariovistum necaret. Primo omnes fere milites Caesaris vehementer sunt perterriti. Legati Caesarem de hac re certiorem fecerunt. Itaque legiones convocavit et, vehementer locutus, eorum virtutem confirmavit. Postea, in proelium a Caesare ipso ducti, milites Romani cum Germanis fortiter pugnabant atque eos vulneribus confectos superaverunt. Itaque, defessi sed victores, in castra sub vesperum venerunt. Legatus, a Caesare in Italiam missus, hanc victoriam senatui nuntiavit. Itaque senatus atque populus Romanus Caesarem et ejus milites laudaverunt.

LESSON 36

REVIEW

55; 95

VOCABULARY

artifice *trickery*	**dolus, ī**
eagerness *zeal* *devotion*	**studium, ī**
institution	**īnstitūtum, ī**
punishment	**supplicium, ī**
opportune *favorable*	**opportūnus, a, um**
threefold	**triplex, triplex, triplicis**
common	**commūnis, e**
fight	**pugna, ae**
suitable *fit*	**idōneus, a, um** { *dat.* ad *w. acc.*
I drive back	**repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus, *3, tr.***
I disclose *I speak out*	**ēnūntiō, *1, tr.***
I attack *I assault*	**adorior, adorīrī, adortus sum, *4, tr.***
condition *terms* *state*	**condiciō, condiciōnis**
I wander about	**vagor, *1, intr.***
I follow after *I follow closely*	**subsequor, subsequī, subsecūtus sum, *3, tr.***

EXERCISE 1

Translate:

1. Dē īnstitūtīs Belgārum atque dē commūnī salūte locūtus, condiciōnēs pācis ēnūntiāvit.
2. Dux equitēs cōnfestim subsecūtus locum idōneum ad castra vīdit.
3. Helvētiī Rōmānōs adortī triplicem in colle aciem perfrēgērunt.
4. Propter gravissimum supplicium prīncipis dējectī Gallī proelium commīsērunt.
5. In pugnā repulsī in Galliā vagābantur.
6. Studium lēgātōrum laudāvit sed nōn hostium dolum.
7. Tempus opportūnum est et locus idōneus.
8. Equitēs āgmen Gallōrum subsecūtī celeriter trāns flūmen vēnērunt.
9. Rēx vulnerātus in silvā captus est.
10. Equitēs latus hostium adortī ab eīs repulsī sunt.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. The leader, having set out towards evening, saw a place suitable for a camp.
2. The barbarians, having attacked our men, were driven back.
3. They held the captured scouts in the camp.
4. A sudden battle was fought.
5. The merchants, having been called together, spoke about the common good *(salūs commūnis)* of Gaul.

EXERCISE 3

Translate:

1. He praised the laws and institutions of the Gauls and the zeal of the chiefs.
2. The punishment of the captured deserters was very great.

3. Having attacked the Romans they followed the fugitives into the province.

4. This battle is most opportune.

5. They drove back the Gauls.

EXERCISE 4

Translate:

1. Because of the favorable time, they sought terms of peace.

2. They pitched the camp in a suitable place.

3. The Gauls, strengthened by the speech of Orgetorix, made a sudden attack.

4. He saw the trickery of the Gauls who had come into the camp.

5. Induced by the speech of the envoys, the leading men of the canton made peace.

EXERCISE 5

Translate:

1. Alarmed by Caesar's sudden arrival, they all fled.

2. They sent the noblest men of the state to make peace with the Romans.

3. The nation, aroused by this evil deed, waged war with the Germans.

4. After the fight the infantry followed the cavalry closely.

5. Caesar saw the messenger coming into the camp.

EXERCISE 6

Translate; give the reason for the tense of the participles:

1. The Germans, having been defeated by the artifices of the general, were wandering about in Gaul.

2. The Gauls, having been conquered in battle, sent envoys to Caesar's camp.

3. The leader was killed (while) speaking with the ambassador.

4. Having spoken about the conditions of surrender, Caesar praised the devotion of his soldiers.

5. The affair was disclosed to Caesar.

6. Caesar, having assaulted the fort by night, followed after the scouts.

7. They burned the captured towns.

8. The leaders, having been called together, spoke about the common safety of all Gaul.

9. The chief, having spoken vigorously, saw the eagerness of his soldiers.

10. The Gauls, driven back, seized the elevated places.

11. The battle was sudden but opportune.

12. The battle line was threefold.

13. The time will be opportune.

14. The Gauls, having been driven back by Caesar's legions, sought peace but not liberty.

15. He attacked the Romans as they were coming into the new camp.

16. The envoy, while fighting bravely, was wounded by an arrow.

17. When he had been captured, the envoy was held in the camp of the Germans.

18. As he was coming into the forest he saw the light-armed cavalry of the Gauls.

19. After he was wounded he was captured by the Romans.

20. After they had overtaken the scout they saw a place fit for a camp.

21. The envoy, when he had been captured, did not speak with the Gauls.

22. Caesar, after he had been helped by his soldiers, fled into the camp.

23. They burned the captured weapons and killed the captured soldiers.

24. While talking with the lieutenant he saw the messenger.

25. Caesar praised the lieutenant who had been killed by the enemy. *(Translate the relative clause by a participle.)*

SUPPLEMENTARY

EXERCISE 7

Translate; parse the participles:

1. Itaque fīnitimī, Venetōrum *(the Veneti)* auctōritāte adductī, conjūrātiōnem cum eīs fēcērunt.
2. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar certior factus, nautās ex prōvinciā vocat.
3. Venetī dē Caesaris adventū certiōrēs factī bellum parant.
4. A mīlitibus nostrīs superātī in montēs fūgērunt.
5. Classis nostra ab hostibus vīsa ad portum pervēnit.
6. Omnēs collēs ab exercitū tenēbantur.
7. Ille sē gladiō dēfendēbat.
8. Hostēs, multitūdine nāvium perterritī, in oppida celeriter fūgērunt.
9. Eōs fugientēs mīlitēs Caesaris diū sequēbantur.
10. Rēx barbarōrum, victōriā Caesaris commōtus, lēgātōs dē dēditiōne mīsit.

EXERCISE 8

EXERCISES IN IMITATION

(The word order and structure of the model sentence is to be imitated in the translation.)

***Model A:* Gallus flēns pācem petīvit.**

1. The children, weeping, spoke with Caesar.
2. Caesar gave grain to the weeping children.
3. The daughters of the Gauls, weeping, spoke to Caesar about the lack of water.

***Model B:* Hostēs, timōre perterritī, fūgērunt.**

1. The enemy, aroused by fear, sent envoys for *(dē)* peace.
2. The soldiers, frightened by the speech of the deserter, fled into the forest.

Model C: **Orgetorīx, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus, conjūrātiōnem fēcit.**

1. Caesar, induced by the desire for victory, enrolled more troops.

2. The Gauls, induced by the desire for land *(fields)*, waged war with their neighbors.

Model D: **Ad flūmen profectus,[1] Caesar hostēs vīdit.**

1. Having set out for the forest, Ariovistus was defeated by the Romans.

2. Having set out for Italy, Caesar sent the cavalry ahead.

3. When he had set out for the river, Caesar was wounded by an arrow.

Model E: **Hīs rēbus adductus, Caesar bellum gessit.**

1. Induced by these things, Ariovistus came into Gaul.

2. Induced by this affair, the envoy did not at first come.

3. Induced by Caesar's speech, Ariovistus confirmed *(cōnfirmō)* the peace.

Model F: **Hostēs, nōs impedītōs aggressī, vīcērunt.**

1. Caesar, having attacked the encumbered Germans, was defeated.

2. Ariovistus, having attacked the camp fortified by a wall and a ditch, did not capture (it).

Model G: **In nostrōs venientēs tēla conjēcērunt.**

1. They withstood *(sustineō)* our men making an attack.

2. They made an attack on the advancing *(veniō)* soldiers.

Model H: **Cīvitās, ob eam rem incitāta, jūs armīs exsecūta est.**

1. The soldiers, aroused by Caesar's speech, made an attack.

---

[1] Remember that this is a *deponent* verb.

2. The cavalry, aroused by the leader's death, killed the leading men.

Model I: Gallus, locūtūrus, necātus est.

1. Caesar, being about to speak, was wounded.
2. The lieutenant, just as he was about to speak, was killed.
3. The messenger, just as he was about to arrive at the river, was captured.

Model J: Equitēs, hostēs īnsecūtī, inīquō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium commīsērunt.

1. The lieutenant, having pursued the enemy, was defeated and captured.
2. And so the soldiers, having attacked the army, captured the baggage.
3. When the soldiers had pursued the cavalry of the enemy, they were tired.

Model K: Helvētiī, repentīnō ējus adventū commōtī, lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt.

1. Caesar, alarmed by the number of the enemy, held his soldiers in the camp.
2. The lieutenant, alarmed by the message, sent the cavalry to take the town.

Model L: Ariovistus, ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, trāns Rhēnum cōpiās dūxit.

1. The senate, influenced *(induced)* by the speech of Caesar, sent new legions into Gaul.
2. The king, aroused by the victory, sent cavalry to seize the hill.
3. The Helvetians, alarmed by the arrival of Caesar, surrendered the hostages.

EXERCISE 9

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Caesar, ab explōrātōribus certior factus, exercitum in montēs dūxit.
2. Hostēs, adventū legiōnum perterritī, fugiunt.
3. Ipse, dē mōtū certior factus, cum omnibus cōpiīs in Galliam proficiscitur.
4. Ā *(from)* multīs īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt.
5. Gallī, hostem omnibus cōpiīs subsecūtī, magnum eōrum numerum necāvērunt.
6. Ab equitibus repulsī vītam fugā servāvērunt.
7. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī fūgērunt.
8. Nāvēs ventīs *(by the winds)* āctae ad īnsulam sub vesperum pervēnērunt.
9. Nostrī inter sē *(each other)* cohortātī fortiter cum barbarīs pugnāvērunt.
10. Hostēs nostrōs impedītōs mox aggredientur.
11. Itaque equitēs mīlitēs impedītōs adjūvērunt.
12. Rōmānī rēgnī cupidī semper erant.
13. Frūmentum Belgae petent.
14. Nostrī fortiter pugnāvērunt.
15. Flūmen inter montēs altōs fluit.

EXERCISE 10

Translate:

1. The king, frightened, came to Caesar.
2. Our men having encouraged each other *(inter sē)* bravely attacked the strong camp of the enemy.
3. The envoy, having spoken secretly *(sēcrētō)* with Caesar, hastened into the town.
4. All things which the slave reported were heard by the leader.
5. The victory was reported.
6. The barbarians, having been captured, are in chains.
7. The barbarian, weeping, was killed.

8. The lieutenant, having spoken vigorously about the disaster, was praised by the senate.

9. The soldiers, having been placed before the camp, bravely defended the standards.

10. The enemy hurled darts against *(**in** w. acc.)* our soldiers as they advanced *(veniō)*.

11. The children, weeping, came to Caesar.

12. The Gaul was desirous of war.

13. And so our men, making the attack, were fighting bravely.

14. The new legions, having been quickly enrolled, were sent to Caesar.

15. The legions which had been enrolled in the new province were put in the first line of battle.

16. The barbarians, having been defeated, fled to the nearest hills.

17. The wicked chief, having been informed of Caesar's arrival, sent him hostages.

18. The soldiers joined battle with the oncoming *(veniō)* barbarians.

19. At first they were frightened by Caesar's legions.

20. Led on by the desire for the throne *(kingly power)*, he formed *(made)* a conspiracy of the nobility.

21. Gaul as a whole is divided into many parts.

22. Of all these men the lieutenant is far *(longē)* the bravest.

23. Among the Helvetians the noblest man was Orgetorix.

24. The Romans, induced by desire of glory, waged many wars.

25. The envoy, having been praised by the senate and the Roman people, was sent to Caesar.

LESSON 37[1]

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

95; 111

NOTE

The ablative absolute should be translated into English by adverbial clauses or phrases. A literal translation will generally be poor English. English clauses and phrases, on the contrary, may often be translated into Latin by the ablative absolute.

VOCABULARY

light	**lūx, lūcis**
at dawn (lit. 'at the first light')	**prīmā lūce**
already *now* *by this (that) time*	**jam, *adv.***
broad *wide*	**lātus, a, um**
useful	**ūtilis, e; ad *w. acc.***
safe	**tūtus, a, um**
active *eager*	**alacer, alacris, alacre**
skilled in *experienced in*	**perītus, a, um; *gen.***
I fill up (with)	**compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus, *2, tr.; abl.***
I obtain *I gain* (by asking)	**impetrō, *1, tr.***

[1] The reading of the Helvetian War (pages 303-46) should be begun at this lesson with the assistance and supervision of the teacher.

little	**exiguus, a, um**
man (*i. e.*, male)	**vir, virī** (*like* **puer, puerī,** *etc.*)
I throw together *I hurl*	**conjiciō, conjicere, conjēcī, conjectus, *3, tr.***
I nourish *I maintain*	**alō, alere, aluī, {altus, / alitus,} *3, tr.***
I besiege *I blockade*	**obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus, *2, tr.***
I send away *I dismiss*	**dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissus, *3, tr.***
back *rear*	**tergum, ī**
I retreat	**tergum vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, *3, tr.***
I put in charge of	**praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus, *3, tr.*** {*acc. of person* / *dat. of thing of which*}

EXERCISE 1

Translate; parse all the participles:

1. Hīs rēbus factīs, Caesar ad portum cum legiōnibus pervēnit.
2. Caesar diū in eō locō morātus, prīmā lūce nāvem solvit *(set sail)*.
3. Quā rē nūntiātā, Caesar omnem equitātum mīsit.
4. Rē audītā, lēgātōs dīmīsit.
5. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Labiēnum cum tribus legiōnibus mīsit ut portum dēfenderet.
6. Repulsī ab equitātū in silvās fūgērunt.
7. Hīs rēbus factīs, Caesar ad nāvēs vēnit.
8. Nostrō adventū commōtī, Britannī pācem petēbant.
9. Multīs bellīs cōnfectīs, Gallia pācāta est.
10. Jam exiguum est tempus ante lūcem.
11. Multīs captīs atque necātīs, hostēs terga vertērunt.
12. Multīs incēnsīs nāvibus, classis superāta est.

EXERCISE 2

EXERCISES IN IMITATION

(The word order and structure of the model sentence is to be imitated in the translation.)

Model A: **Quibus audītīs, Caesar concilium dīmīsit.**

1. And these things having been heard, the army made an attack.
2. When this message had been heard, they pitched camp.
3. After these things had been done, the leading men came into the camp of the Romans.
4. After this speech of Caesar had been heard, they joined battle with the enemies.

Model B: **Vocātīs mercātōribus, Caesar haec locūtus est.**

1. When the merchants had been summoned, Caesar reported the victory.
2. After the army had been defeated, the king fled.
3. After the soldiers had been summoned, the fugitive was killed.
4. After the envoys had been summoned, Caesar explained *(ostendō)* his plan.

Model C: **Conciliō dīmissō, Caesar in Galliam contendit.**

1. The messenger having been dismissed, Caesar summoned the envoys.
2. When the council was dismissed, Caesar killed the leading men of the state.
3. When the envoys had been dismissed, the Gauls made a conspiracy.

Model D: **Omnī Galliā pācātā, Caesar in Italiam contendit.**

1. When all Italy had been pacified, the soldiers made Caesar commander-in-chief.

2. When all the Gauls had been conquered, envoys came to Caesar about peace.

Model E: **Praemissō equitātū, Caesar cum omnibus cōpiīs hostem subsecūtus est.**

1. After the soldiers had been sent ahead, Caesar waited for the cavalry.

2. After the scouts had been sent ahead, the victory was reported to Caesar.

3. When the cavalry had been sent into the grove, Caesar waited for the baggage.

Model F: **Hōc proeliō factō, Gallus imperium tōtīus Galliae cōnsecūtus est.**

1. After this battle was fought *(faciō)*, many soldiers were in the camp of the enemy.

2. After this battle had been fought *(faciō)*, the enemy fled.

Model G: **Bellō cōnfectō, Caesar in hīberna mīlitēs dēdūxit.**

1. After this war was completed, Caesar led the legions into Italy.

2. After these wars were completed, there was peace in Gaul.

3. After this war was completed, envoys came to Caesar to praise him.

SUPPLEMENTARY

EXERCISE 3

EXERCISES IN IMITATION

(The word order and structure of the model sentence is to be imitated in the translation.)

Model A: **Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, in fīnēs fīnitimōrum cōpiās dūxērunt.**

1. When everything *(omnia)* had been made ready for war, they captured the Roman merchants.

Model B: **Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā, Caesar mīlitēs in hīberna dēdūxit.**

1. When a small part of the winter remained *(use an adjective)*, Caesar hastened with new legions into Gaul.

Model C: **Eō opere perfectō, mīlitēs Helvētiōrum impetum exspectābant.**

1. When this fortification had been completed, he sent the tenth legion to the nearest hill.

Model D: **Hōc respōnsō datō, lēgātōs dīmīsit.**

1. These hostages having been given, peace was strengthened in Gaul.

EXERCISE 4

Translate:

1. Quibus audītīs, mīlitēs alacrēs proelium commīsērunt et hostēs vīcērunt.
2. Caesar, vir bellī perītus, Gallōs vīcit.
3. Hostibus vīsīs, mīlitēs fossam māteriā complēvērunt.
4. Hōc impetrāvit.
5. Hī mīlitēs, proeliō factō, lūcem proximam nōn vidēbunt.
6. Haec tēla ūtilia nōn sunt.
7. Hīs factīs, tēla in eum omnēs conjēcērunt.
8. Turmās equitum Orgetorīx alēbat.
9. Quibus audītīs, Caesar castra obsidēbat.
10. Hōc proeliō cōnfectō, Orgetorīx cum omnī familiā in silvās fūgit.
11. In Galliā Rōmānī tūtī nōn erant.
12. Cōpia frūmentī in itinere suppetēbat *(held out)*.
13. Impetū autem factō, hostēs concursū mīlitum ā flūmine repulsī sunt.
14. Cōnsul, ā senātū laudātus, haec dē bellō nūntiāvit.
15. Flūmen lātissimum et altissimum erat.

EXERCISE 5

Translate:

1. When a battle was fought at dawn *(use the ablative absolute)*, the enemy were driven back.
2. The sailors hurled darts against the soldiers of Caesar.
3. When the higher places had been seized, our men withstood *(sustineō)* the attack of the Helvetians.
4. After the council had been dismissed, he put the lieutenant in charge of the camp.
5. When the enemy had been driven back, the men fortified the hill by means of a rampart and a ditch.
6. The citizens came to Caesar after the battle had been fought *(done)*.
7. The cavalry were driven back by the onset *(concursus)* of our men.
8. The grain was set on fire.
9. He was skilled in these things.
10. After the victory had been reported, the soldiers were brave and eager.
11. The river was broad and deep.
12. He filled the hill with men.
13. The citizens reported his death to the senate.
14. Orgetorix, however, with his household had already fled into the territory of the neighboring people.
15. After he had died, the senate sent the new commander with fresh troops into Gaul.
16. After the war the legions of the Romans were safe in Gaul.
17. At dawn the enemy will make an attack on the camp.
18. The road was difficult, and there was a scarcity of grain, but after these things had been heard, the soldiers were eager and brave.
19. The Helvetians, violently alarmed by the sudden arrival of Caesar, sent envoys to him concerning peace.
20. Caesar, having been informed about the journey of the Helvetians, fortified the right bank of the river with a ditch and

many forts. At dawn the Helvetians were leading their men across the river. Caesar's cavalry made a sudden attack on them; the Helvetians were defeated and many were killed. Many leaders were captured and held in Caesar's camp.

LESSON 38

INTRANSITIVE VERBS WITH THE DATIVE, GENITIVE, AND ABLATIVE

Many Latin intransitive verbs (*i. e.*, verbs that do not take an accusative object) regularly take the genitive, dative, or ablative case to complete their meaning. Many of these verbs are translated by English transitive verbs. The cases they govern must be carefully learned from the vocabulary, where they will be given thus: *I congratulate,* **grātulor,** *1, intr.; dat.*

I congratulate Caesar.
Caesarī grātulor.

Do not confuse such datives with the dative of the indirect object. **Grātulor** takes a dative object only to complete its meaning. **Dō,** 'I give,' a transitive verb, takes an accusative object and also an indirect object:

I congratulate Caesar.
Caesarī grātulor.

(ego)	grātulor	Caesarī

I give you a sword *(I give a sword to you).*
Tibi gladium dō.

(ego)	dō	gladium
		tibi

VOCABULARY

I am under *I am near*	**subsum, subesse, *intr.; dat.***
I survive *I am left*	**supersum, superesse, superfuī, superfutūrus, *intr.; dat.***
I am in charge of *I am at the head of*	**praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus, *intr.; dat.***
I am lacking to *I desert*	**dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, *intr.; dat.***
I am present (to help)	**adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus, *intr.; dat.***
I am among *I take part in* *I am present at*	**intersum, interesse, interfuī, interfutūrus, *intr.; dat.***
I profit *I benefit*	**prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, *intr.; dat.***
I am away *I am distant*	**absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *intr.;* ab (ā), *prep. w. abl.***
I injure	**noceō, *2, intr.; dat.***
I spare	**parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus, *3, intr.; dat.***
I congratulate	**grātulor, *1, intr.; dat.***
I use *I employ*	**ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *3, intr.; abl.***
I gain possession of	**potior, *4, intr.*** { ***abl.*** / ***gen.***

EXERCISE 1

Translate:

1. Montibus subsumus.
2. Proeliō superfuērunt.
3. Septimae legiōnī praeest.

4. Virtūs tibi deest.
5. Tibi aderō.
6. Castrīs nostrīs nōn potiētur.
7. Hīs tēlīs ūtuntur.
8. Gallī fundīs ūtuntur.
9. Rōmānī gladiīs ūtēbantur.
10. Quid nōbīs prōdest?
11. Bellum mīlitibus et ducibus prōdest.
12. Vēnērunt ut Caesarī grātulārentur.
13. Tibi grātulor.
14. Mihi grātulātus est.
15. Ā castrīs āfuit.
16. Nōbīs nōn nocēbit.
17. Hostibus nōn pepercērunt.
18. Peditātus Gallīs deerat.
19. Hōc cōnsiliō ūtentur.
20. Quis adest?
21. Cui pepercistī?
22. Quis tibi grātulātus est?
23. Quis huic legiōnī praeest?
24. Illī proeliō interfuī.
25. Hōc cōnsiliō ūsus, castrīs potītus est.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. Who congratulated you?
2. This will not injure you.
3. Water was lacking.
4. Which plan will he use?
5. They are near the mountains.
6. War does not profit citizens.
7. He was away from the camp.
8. Whom did they spare?
9. He was present at this council.
10. They came to congratulate the king.

11. Having used this plan, they captured the towns of the Gauls.

12. After they had captured the towns of the enemy, they congratulated their leaders.

13. This leader was in charge of the cavalry.

14. Whom did it injure?

15. Who will gain possession of the supreme power?

16. Who will survive?

17. They were using swords and arrows.

18. They will use trickery.

19. He took part in that embassy.

20. They will spare the captured Gauls.

21. Using their swords they drove back the Gauls.

22. When they had seen the barbarians, they joined battle.

23. I will congratulate you.

24. Whom will the barbarians spare?

25. Who was in charge of the legion that had been stationed in the town?

REVIEW WORD LIST NO. 5

This list contains all the verbs seen since page 152.

Deponents

I set out	**proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *3, intr.***
I follow	**sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *3, tr.***
I follow out	**exsequor, exsequī, exsecūtus sum, *3, tr.***
I overtake *I attain* *I get*	**cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum, *3, tr.***
I pursue	**īnsequor, īnsequī, īnsecūtus sum, *3, tr.***
I speak *I talk*	**loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *3, tr. and intr.*; 'about,' 'of,' dē, *prep. w. abl.***
I plunder *I lay waste*	**populor, *1, tr.***
I exhort *I encourage*	**hortor, *1, tr.*** **cohortor, *1, tr.***
I delay	**moror, *1, tr. and intr.***
I attack	**aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum, *3, tr.***
I die	**morior, morī, mortuus sum, *3, intr.***
I get booty *I plunder*	**praedor, *1, intr.***
I try *I attempt*	**cōnor, *1, tr.; infin.***
I rise up *I arise*	**coorior, coorīrī, coortus sum, *4, intr.***
I promise	**polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, *2, tr.***
I attack *I assault*	**adorior, adorīrī, adortus sum, *4, tr.***

I follow after *I follow closely*	**subsequor, subsequī, subsecūtus sum, *3, tr.***
I wander about	**vagor, *1, intr.***
I congratulate	**grātulor, *1, intr.; dat.***
I use *I employ*	**ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *3, intr.; abl.***
I gain possession of	**potior, *4, intr.*** *abl.* / *gen.*

-IO Verbs of the Third Conjugation

I hurl *I throw*	**jaciō, jacere, jēcī, jactus, *3, tr.***
I throw back *I repulse*	**rējiciō, rējicere, rējēcī, rējectus, *3, tr.***
I throw away *I reject*	**prōjiciō, prōjicere, prōjēcī, prōjectus, *3, tr.***
I cast down	**dējiciō, dējicere, dējēcī, dējectus, *3, tr.***
I do *I make*	**faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *3, tr.***
I complete *I exhaust*	**cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus, *3, tr.***
I perform *I complete*	**perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus, *3, tr.***
I affect *I treat*	**afficiō, afficere, affēcī, affectus, *3, tr.; abl.***
I take *I capture*	**capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, *3, tr.***
I undertake	**suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus, *3, tr.***
I take back *I recapture*	**recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus, *3, tr.***
I flee	**fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *3, tr. and intr.***
I hurl together *I throw*	**conjiciō, conjicere, conjēcī, conjectus, *3, tr.***

I put in charge of	praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus, *3, tr.* { *acc. of person* / *dat. of thing of which*
I inform of	certiōrem faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *3, tr.;* dē *w. abl.*

Compounds of Sum

I am away / *I am distant*	absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *intr.;* ab (ā) *w. abl.*
I am present (to help)	adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
I am lacking / *I desert*	dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
I am among / *I take part in* / *I am present at*	intersum, interesse, interfuī, interfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
I am in charge of / *I am at the head of*	praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
I profit / *I benefit*	prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
I am under / *I am near*	subsum, subesse, *intr.; dat.*
I survive / *I am left*	supersum, superesse, superfuī, superfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*

Other Verbs

I weep	fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, *2, intr.*
I restrain / *I check*	reprimō, reprimere, repressī, repressus, *3, tr.*
I do / *I drive*	agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *3, tr.*
I drive / *I defeat*	pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, *3, tr.*

I flow	**fluō, fluere, flūxī, *3, intr.***
I lead to *I induce*	**addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus, *3, tr.***
I lead into *I induce*	**indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductus, *3, tr.***
I join battle	**proelium committō, committere, commīsī, commissus, *3, tr.;* cum *w. abl.***
I drive back	**repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus, *3, tr.***
I disclose *I speak out*	**ēnūntiō, *1, tr.***
I fill up (with)	**compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus, *2, tr.; abl.***
I obtain *I gain* (by asking)	**impetrō, *1, tr.***
I nourish *I maintain*	**alō, alere, aluī, {altus, alitus,} *3, tr.***
I besiege *I blockade*	**obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus, *2, tr.***
I send away *I dismiss*	**dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissus, *3, tr.***
I retreat	**tergum vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, *3, tr.***
I injure	**noceō, *2, intr.; dat.***
I spare	**parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus, *3, intr.; dat.***

LESSON 39

REVIEW

56; 58

VOCABULARY

I comfort	**cōnsōlor, *1, tr.***
I merit	**mereor, *2, tr.***
I get *I obtain*	**nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum, *3, tr.***
I go out	**ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, *3, intr.*** — **ex(ē) *w. abl.*** / ***abl.***
I kill	**interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus, *3, tr.***
and not *nor*	**neque (nec), *conj.***
neither . . . nor	**neque . . . neque (nec . . . nec), *conjs.***
on one side *on the one hand*	**ūnā ex parte**
on the other side *on the other hand*	**alterā ex parte**
in the sight of all	**sub oculīs omnium**
especially	**in prīmīs**
at sunset	**occāsū sōlis**
back *again*	**rūrsus (rūrsum), *adv.***
better	**melius, *adv.***
best	**optimē, *adv.***
not yet	**nōndum, *adv.***

necessarily	necessāriō, *adv.*
less	minus, *adv.*
I keep away from	prohibeō, *2, tr.* { *abl.* / ab (ā) *w. abl.*

EXERCISE 1

Give in successive drill:

1. ***the principal parts;***
2. ***the present participle;***
3. ***the future infinitive;***
4. ***the perfect passive participle;***
5. ***the third person future indicative active;***
6. ***other parts as the teacher desires:***

proficīscor	īnsequor	subsum
populor	recipiō	absum
jaciō	ēnūntiō	compleō
fleō	obsideō	committō
cōnor	aggredior	praedor
suscipiō	hortor	agō
faciō	afficiō	noceō
repellō	vagor	parcō
ūtor	supersum	moror
potior	intersum	impetrō
loquor	coorior	vertō
conjiciō	polliceor	sum
indūcō	perficiō	sequor
alō	grātulor	fugiō
adorior	morior	dējiciō

EXERCISE 2

Translate orally:

1. They captured the wounded soldiers.
2. Whom did he spare?
3. They comforted his wife.

4. Whom did they attack?
5. They were bounded on one side by mountains, on the other side by a river.
6. Seeing him they fled.
7. They again went out of *(ē)* the camp at sunset.
8. At sunset this was reported.
9. He was alarmed by the message.
10. They will not spare the slaves.
11. They captured the scouts.
12. They killed the barbarians.
13. He was killed fighting.
14. They got neither good ships nor good weather.
15. This fortification kept them away better.
16. Induced by the desire of glory, they waged this war.
17. They will use this plan.
18. They were hurling darts.
19. They were affected with great sorrow.
20. The lieutenant was in charge of the fort.
21. They were near the mountains.
22. They were attacking the Gauls.
23. The Gauls threw down their weapons.
24. They killed the fugitives in the sight of all.
25. Towards evening they captured the camp.
26. Who survived?
27. They will make a rampart.
28. They were following the scouts.
29. Which plan will you follow out?
30. What injured him?
31. The barbarians attacked our soldiers.
32. After he had been seen by the enemy, he fled.
33. The lieutenant was dying.
34. The horsemen have merited best.
35. The general having been killed, the Romans will necessarily be defeated.
36. They will capture the fort.
37. Which hill will the cavalry take?

38. They made a conspiracy.
39. These fields are less good.
40. Will you make a conspiracy in the town?
41. They were attacking the town.
42. He spares the children, but not the soldiers.
43. Neither the men nor the children will the barbarians spare.
44. They drove back the enemy.
45. He praised especially the chiefs of this state.
46. After they had captured the camp they announced the victory.
47. The barbarians will kill the captured envoys.
48. This place is suitable for a fort.
49. They had not yet obtained grain and water.
50. We shall dismiss our cavalry.

LESSON 40

POSSUM, VOLO, NOLO

62;[1] *186*

The English infinitive depending on *I am able (I can), I wish, I do not wish, I prefer,* is to be translated by a Latin infinitive (No. 186).

I am able to come.
I can come.
Venīre possum.

VOCABULARY

and from this *and for this reason*	**quā ex rē**
opposite *different*	**dīversus, a, um**
acceptable *pleasing*	**grātus, a, um; *dat.***
honor	**honor, honōris**
I lead a life	**vītam agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *3, tr.***
power	**potestās, potestātis**
I come into the power of	**in potestātem *(gen.)* perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum, *4, intr.***
light (*i. e.*, not heavy)	**levis, e**
I flee *I escape*	**perfugiō, perfugere, perfūgī, perfugitūrus, *3, intr.***
I march	**iter faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *3, tr.***
moderately	**mediocriter, *adv.***

[1] Omit *mālō.*

moderate *small*	**mediocris, e**
for the sake of	***gen. w.* causā**
I check	**coerceō, *2, tr.***
I toss about *I discuss*	**jactō, *1, tr.***
I draw up	**īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus, *3, tr.***
I set up *I establish* *I determine* *I decide*	**cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus, *3, tr.***

EXERCISE 1

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī voluit.
2. Quā dē causā minus vagārī poterant.
3. Minus facile contrā fīnitimōs pugnāre poterant.
4. Per hōs populōs tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī possunt.
5. Hīc honor prīncipī grātus fuit.
6. Lēgātōs dīmīsit ut cum suīs loquī posset.
7. Haeduī eōs repellere nōn potuērunt.
8. Hōc proeliō factō, pontem in flūmine fēcit ut Helvētiōs sequī posset.
9. In hōc locō esse volumus.
10. Eō frūmentō ūtī nōn poterat.
11. Rēgēs plūs facere possunt quam magistrātūs.
12. Hōs coercēre nōn possum.
13. In partem dīversam iter facere voluit.
14. Explōrātōrēs praemīsit ut numerum hostium vidēre possent.
15. Hostēs diūtius impetum nostrōrum sustinēre nōn poterant.
16. Eōs sequī nōn poterunt.
17. Quā ex rē hōc facere nōluit.
18. Hōc facere voluī.

19. Pontem facere volet.
20. Mīlitēs īnstruere volēbat.
21. Hunc diem cōnstituunt.
22. Hostēs, terrōre adductī, pācem petere volēbant.
23. Cum Germānīs pugnāre Caesaris mīlitēs nōlēbant.
24. Ego hōc facere volam; tū illud.
25. Helvētiī in potestātem Germānōrum pervenīre nolēbant.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. We wish to do that.
2. When the battle had been fought, Caesar wished to come into the forest.
3. They wished to fight with the cohorts.
4. He wished to lead these ten cohorts.
5. This honor was pleasing to Caesar.
6. After this war was finished *(completed)*, the Helvetians wished to come into Caesar's power.
7. They are able to bear light weapons.
8. He wished to check the Gauls.
9. The Romans established acceptable magistrates in this state.
10. I wish to lead a good life.
11. These light ships will easily be tossed about on the sea.
12. Caesar came to Gaul for the sake of glory.
13. Because of the cold he did not wish to march at dawn.
14. They built *(faciō)* the bridge.
15. They were able to drive back the Germans.
16. And for this reason they felt *(were affected by)* great sorrow.
17. Caesar wished to see many tribes.
18. The former speech of the lieutenant was moderately pleasing to the Belgians.
19. They fled in different directions.
20. They wished to set *(determine)* the tenth day.

21. They wished to gain (possession of) supreme control over *(of)* all Gaul.
22. We are unwilling to burn the bridge.
23. With whom do you wish to speak?
24. He wished to kill the man who had betrayed the army.
25. After the merchants had been called together, Caesar wished to fight with the Germans.

EXERCISE 3

Translate:

1. They are unwilling to come.
2. I wish to hear.
3. They will be able to march.
4. They wished to flee.
5. I do not wish to determine.
6. They could not discuss it.
7. You were unable to meet him.
8. We had not been able to support it.
9. They did not wish to import these things.
10. We are unable to get the carts ready.

LESSON 41

REVIEW

51; 55; 95; 111

VOCABULARY

successive	**continuus, a, um**
I see clearly *I ascertain*	**perspiciō, perspicere, perspexī, perspectus, *3, tr.***
low *humble*	**humilis, e**
an enemy (personal)	**inimīcus, ī**
unfriendly *hostile*	**inimīcus, a, um; *dat.***
a setting out *a departure*	**profectiō, profectiōnis**
in front of *on behalf of* *for*	**prō, *prep. w. abl.***
sharp *piercing*	**ācer, ācris, ācre**
farthest, adv.	**longissimē, *adv.***
I fear	**timeō, timēre, timuī, *2, tr.***
I pertain to *I stretch to*	**pertineō, pertinēre, pertinuī, *2, intr.;* ad *w. acc.***

EXERCISE 1

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Ab hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt.
2. Gallī eōs suīs fīnibus prohibent.

3. Is, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus, conjūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit.

4. Hīs rēbus adductī, ea quae ad profectiōnem pertinent parant.

5. In marī altō erant tempestātēs continuae.

6. Rōmānī hiemem ācrem in Galliā timēbant.

7. Eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, cum Helvētiīs veniunt.

8. In eō locō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet.

9. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, profectī sunt.

10. Erat in Galliā Ulteriōre legiō ūna.

11. Helvētiī, dē ējus adventū certiōrēs factī, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt.

12. Helvētiī, eā spē dējectī, castra in humilī locō posuērunt.

13. Caesar, dē hāc rē certior factus, in urbem contendit.

14. Itaque rem suscēpit.

15. Locīs superiōribus occupātīs, exercitum itinere prohibent.

16. Hī prīncipēs quī inimīcī Caesarī erant prō Rōmānīs pugnāre nōlēbant.

17. Quibus rēbus adductus, Caesar nōn exspectāvit sed sub vesperum profectus est.

18. Hōc proeliō factō, pontem in flūmine fēcit ut reliquōs sequerētur.

19. Hōc respōnsō datō, in urbem vēnit.

20. Propter frīgora frūmenta in agrīs bona nōn erant.

21. Hīs rēbus optimē perspectīs, ad ducem celeriter contendit.

22. Itaque concilium celeriter dīmīsit.

23. Helvētiī, cōnsiliō commūtātō, nostrōs secūtī sunt.

24. Ipsī Helvētiī, rējectō nostrō equitātū, impetum in prīmam aciem fēcērunt.

25. Hōc vīsō, Helvētiī proelium redintegrāvērunt.

26. In nostrōs venientēs tēla conjiciēbant.

27. Helvētiī, omnium rērum inopiā adductī, lēgātōs dē dēditiōne mīsērunt.

28. Flentēs pācem petēbant.

29. Timōre perterritī, perfūgērunt in oppida.

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō, tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī ad Caesarem vēnērunt.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. Induced by this speech of Caesar, the Gauls made peace.
2. After peace had been strengthened, Caesar sent grain to the Gauls.
3. Influenced *(indūcō)* by this, the Gauls fought against the Germans.
4. Induced by the desire for power, Orgetorix made a conspiracy.
5. When this battle was over *(completed)*, all the envoys came to Caesar's camp.
6. Since they feared the Romans, they were unwilling to fight for the king.
7. The Romans were desirous of power.
8. Caesar, informed of the arrival of the enemy, sent the cavalry ahead in order to meet *(sustineō)* the attack of the Helvetians.
9. The children, weeping, came to Caesar to seek grain.
10. And so they attacked the oncoming *(veniō)* men with arrows.
11. At dawn, the cavalry having been stationed on the right, they set out for the river.
12. When the signal had been given, Caesar joined battle with the Germans.
13. When the city had been captured, Caesar did not spare the citizens.
14. When the attack was made, the enemy retreated.
15. The soldiers were eager for battle.
16. On the other side they were hemmed in *(contineō)* by a broad river.
17. These weapons will be useful for battle.
18. When the council had been dismissed, Caesar summoned all the envoys.

19. When the cavalry had been defeated, the legions made an attack and killed a large number of the enemy.

20. When the envoys had been summoned, Caesar disclosed his plans.

21. Of all the Romans Caesar was the bravest.

22. We are skilled in these things.

23. As I was disclosing Caesar's plans to the chiefs, a Roman soldier wounded me with an arrow.

24. At dawn there was a sudden attack.

25. When the troops had been drawn up in front of the camp, Caesar awaited the Gauls.

26. He came boldly into the camp to speak with the leader about a surrender.

27. When only *(sōlum, adv.)* a small part of the summer was left *(reliquus, a, um)*, Caesar led his men into winter quarters.

28. Caesar, having been informed about the victory, praised the lieutenant and the cavalry.

29. Having fought many battles, Caesar arrived in Italy.

30. The Helvetians, changing their plans, attacked at dawn.

31. Frightened by his sudden arrival, the Gauls fled into the forest.

32. The new lieutenant was acceptable to Caesar.

33. They delayed in the captured camp a long time.

34. This city is farthest distant *(absum)*.

35. They fought more bravely.

36. When everything had been got ready, he set out.

37. He was always desirous of honor.

38. The soldiers were frightened by the departure of Caesar.

39. Our cavalry having already been thrown back and the hill seized, Caesar sent five cohorts to the front *(first)* line.

40. They are farthest away from the refinement of the province.

41. The cohorts having been driven back, Caesar himself led the tenth legion against the enemy.

42. The Romans were not equal to the Germans in bravery *(ablative without a preposition)*.

43. He was sick in this camp.

44. Alarmed by the arrival of the legions, they summoned all the leading men of Gaul to a common council.

45. The road was hard and difficult, but Caesar did not wait for the new legions which he had enrolled in the province.

46. Aroused by the influence of the magistrates, they killed the Roman merchants.

47. He fought a long time for the sake of honor.

48. They were braver than the Belgians.

49. Induced by this speech of the envoys, they exchanged *(inter sē dedērunt)* pledges *(oaths)*.

50. Caesar stationed the cavalry in a low valley in front of the fortifications.

EXERCISE 3

Translate orally:

1. All the allies are present.
2. They are at the foot of *(are under)* the mountain.
3. The state is divided into ten cantons.
4. They were breaking through the battle line.
5. Ten cohorts survived.
6. The cohort which he had enrolled in the province arrived.
7. He called all the allies together.
8. They praised the refinement of the province.
9. The grain was not ripe *(mātūrus, a, um)*.
10. There was grain in the fields.
11. They will make an attack on the allies.
12. Our men survived.
13. Three tribes survive.
14. They broke through the cavalry.
15. We shall capture the fugitives.
16. Grain will be lacking.
17. The army lacked water *(water was lacking to the army)*.
18. He came to defend Caesar.
19. They praised their ancestors.
20. The fugitives were being captured.

21. The allies were being killed by the Gauls.
22. In the town sentinels were stationed.
23. They defeated the allies with slings.
24. He stationed sentinels on the ridge.
25. The cavalry of the enemy were at the foot of *(were under)* the ridge.
26. Who saw their allies?
27. The Gauls praised the refinement and laws of the province.
28. Caesar alone subjugated *(pācō)* Gaul.
29. They came to seek peace.
30. There was no fodder.
31. The fodder which they had brought into the town was burned.
32. He sent the cavalry to seek fodder.
33. The lieutenant who was in charge of the fourth legion was killed.
34. They are killing the magistrates.
35. They praised our refinement.
36. They will assemble *(come together)* in the camp.
37. The soldiers were present alone.
38. They killed the leader alone.
39. We shall take either the camp or the town.
40. I will not make peace with you.
41. When the envoys had been called together, Caesar discussed the affair.
42. I remember the battles.
43. I remember the wrong done to *(of)* our envoys.
44. He offended the magistrates.
45. The soldiers also survived.
46. They were at Caesar's house.
47. Either we shall take the town or we shall die.
48. The allies also attacked.
49. Almost a thousand men survived.
50. We remember the glory of our ancestors.
51. The sea is large.
52. The ships which had been made in Gaul were on the sea.

53. They will fight bravely.
54. Caesar praised his men on account of their bravery.
55. The tenth legion fought bravely.
56. On account of the cold the grain was not ripe *(mātūrus)*.
57. The Gauls were praised because of their good deeds.
58. He had spared the wicked chiefs.
59. I spare the children of the Gauls.
60. The cold in the mountains was piercing.
61. The lieutenant was praised because of his self-control.
62. The ships arrived at the port.
63. There is an ambush in the mountains.
64. Because of the delay the cavalry were killed.
65. They fought bitterly for a long time.
66. He had come into the assembly.
67. They make ships better.
68. They broke through the first line boldly.
69. They will not delay longer.
70. He delayed in this city longest.
71. They will spare our wives.
72. We did not spare the general of the legions.
73. These troops are fresh.
74. That hill is smaller.
75. They were wandering about in Gaul.
76. He killed the chief because of his evil deeds.
77. The speech of the envoy was shameful.
78. Into what town did he come?
79. The Gauls are braver than the Germans.
80. The Helvetians did the same thing.
81. He captured the towns in which the hostages were held.
82. They praised the praetor on account of his bravery.
83. By what road did he come into Italy?
84. There were daily battles.
85. He stations sentinels on the ridge.
86. Our men will fight bravely.
87. We shall do these things moderately.
88. They awaited the arrival of the consul.

89. Who are those men?
90. They are coming to fortify the camp.

LESSON 42

TIME

192-94

VOCABULARY

just *lawful*	**jūstus, a, um**
space (of time or place)	**spatium, ī**
gentle	**lēnis, e**
former *erstwhile*	**prīstinus, a, um**
a period of three days	**trīduum, ī**
a period of two days	**bīduum, ī**
second *favorable*	**secundus, a, um**
prosperity (lit. 'favorable affairs')	**rēs secundae, rērum secundārum**
I resist	**resistō, resistere, restitī, *3, intr.; dat.***
I provoke *I harass*	**lacessō, lacessere, lacessīvī, lacessītus, *3, tr.***
I put aside *I lay down*	**dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositus, *3, tr.***
I hide	**mē (tē, sē) abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus, *3, tr.***
I am unoccupied	**vacō, *1, intr.***
help *assistance*	**auxilium, ī**
reward	**praemium, ī**
year	**annus, ī**

watch	**vigilia, ae**
mind	**mēns, mentis**

EXERCISE 1

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Propter jūstam causam praemium eī bīduō dabitur.
2. Eō diē omnēs ad rīpam convēnērunt.
3. In fīnēs Helvētiōrum diē septimō pervēnit.
4. Prīstinam calamitātem memoriā tenēmus.
5. Mēns est pars nōbilissima animī.
6. Quīndecim diēs iter fēcērunt.
7. Hōc diē frūmentum mīlitibus dabitur.
8. In proeliīs proximō diē factīs Dumnorīx fūgerat.
9. Nostrī, trīduum morātī, eōs sequī nōn poterant.
10. In rēbus secundīs mercātōrēs nōn vacant.
11. Barbarīs lacessentibus Rōmānī resistēbant.
12. Tertiā ferē vigiliā vēnit.
13. Hōrā circiter *(about)* quārtā ad Britanniam pervēnit.
14. Tribus diēbus obsidēs dabunt.
15. Eādem nocte lūna erat plēna *(full)*.
16. Caesar posterō diē lēgātum cum decimā legiōne mīsit.
17. Omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī pervēnērunt.
18. Superiōre nocte magna fuerat tempestās.
19. Decem continuōs diēs tempestātēs erant.
20. Post septem diēs Caesar in Galliam pervēnit.
21. Vīcēsimō diē profectus est.
22. Multōs annōs Caesar cum Helvētiīs proelia commīsit.
23. Decem diēbus in oppidum pervenient.
24. Quīnque annōs rēgnum obtinuit.
25. Diē cōnstitūtā ad jūdicium omnem familiam dūcit.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. On the tenth day he arrived in the fields of the Helvetians.

2. Within five days Caesar will come.
3. For nine successive days there were great storms.
4. On the next day there was a battle in the forest.
5. On the following day the army set out.
6. The slave was gentle and careful.
7. On the tenth day he saw the broad fields of Gaul.
8. For five years they were always able to defeat the Roman cohorts.
9. On the following day he drew up the soldiers in line in front of the camp.
10. They laid down their arms after many days.
11. For the sake of fame the soldiers will march for many days.
12. On the previous *(superior)* night there was a storm.
13. After two hours they hid (themselves) in the neighboring mountains.
14. At the third hour of the day they saw the enemy coming across the hills.
15. The Helvetians, alarmed by the message, sent envoys on the fourth day to seek help.
16. Within two hours all (of) the leading men will be killed.
17. And for this reason I shall remember the glory of the Roman people.
18. For the space of four days they resisted the enemy.
19. In prosperity men do not remember their former misfortunes.
20. The cause was just.
21. They harassed the army of the lieutenant.
22. The lands *(fields)* of the Helvetians were unoccupied for six years.
23. The soldiers, alarmed by the rapidity of the enemy, fled to the hills.
24. They were in a low place.
25. After (a period of) two days he provoked the Belgians to *(ad)* battle.

LESSON 43

REVIEW

55; 95; 111; 192-94

VOCABULARY

powerful	**potēns, potēns, potentis**
from all sides *on all sides*	**undique,** ***adv.***
to the same place	**eōdem,** ***adv.***
I collect *I bring together* *I hire*	**condūcō, condūcere, condūxī, conductus,** ***3, tr.***
I desire	**cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītus,** ***3, tr.***
altogether *at all* (with negatives)	**omnīnō,** ***adv.***
recently *lately*	**nūper,** ***adv.***
as . . . as possible	**quam** ***w. a superlative***
secretly	**sēcrētō,** ***adv.***
foot	**pēs, pedis,** ***m.***
cruel	**crūdēlis, e**
I move	**moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus,** ***2, tr.***
narrow *difficult*	**angustus, a, um**
doubtful	**dubius, a, um**
own *proper*	**proprius, a, um**

EXERCISE 1

Translate and give the rule for every ablative:

1. Caesar hastened into Gaul with the tenth legion.
2. Caesar, at first praised by his friends, was killed by these same friends.
3. There were altogether two legions in Farther Gaul.
4. He came secretly on the tenth day to seek help.
5. To the same place he brought together from all sides merchants and scouts.
6. Within five days the legions will set out for Gaul.
7. The Gauls attacked the camp on all sides and killed many soldiers with slings and javelins.
8. On the following day this was reported to Caesar.
9. Before the battle a new lieutenant came into the camp.
10. After the war five new legions were enrolled in Italy and sent into Gaul to help Caesar.
11. A *(quīdam)* man was recently killed by the Gauls.
12. In the second month a sudden attack was made in Gaul.
13. He came as quickly as possible with all the troops.
14. They gave a reward to the brave slave.
15. When the third battle had been fought, we sent the leading men of the state to seek peace.
16. They are bravely resisting our men making the attack.
17. The neighbors were hostile to the Romans.
18. This report is not doubtful.
19. He enrolled as many *(plūrimus)* legions as possible.
20. Alarmed by the rapidity of the Roman cavalry, the Gauls all fled.
21. Ariovistus, a cruel king, desired the cities and fields of the Gauls.
22. The fields of the Helvetians were unoccupied for many months.
23. On account of the storms they did not set out.
24. He killed him with a sword.
25. He will kill the captured Gaul with a sword.

EXERCISE 2

Translate orally:

1. On the tenth day he will arrive.
2. Within two days they will move camp.
3. This state is the most powerful of all the states of Gaul.
4. Within six days he will call Caesar.
5. For five days they delayed in this narrow place.
6. They delayed for two days.
7. After ten years he came into Italy.
8. Two days before the battle new legions arrived.
9. During that war many soldiers were killed.
10. For two months Caesar enrolled new troops.
11. They marched five days and nights.
12. Within two years all Gaul will be conquered.
13. On the eighth day they will come.
14. He was killed within three days.
15. There was another battle on the fourth day.
16. On the tenth day they made an attack on the fort.
17. Three days before Caesar's departure the leading men came to him.
18. Within three years he will be consul.
19. At the third hour they saw the river.
20. On the second day they arrived in Gaul.
21. We were in Italy recently.
22. For two days we waited for the new leader.
23. He came on foot *(means)*.
24. He killed the leader for a just cause.
25. At the tenth hour they renewed the battle.
26. They resisted the Romans for three hours.
27. He came with the fresh troops.
28. He killed the enemy with a sword.
29. They will come to the camp within fifteen days.
30. With the tenth legion Caesar hastened into Italy.
31. Alarmed by the rapidity of the cavalry, they fled.
32. On the following day I saw the leader.

33. Within four years there will be a war.
34. For three nights we awaited the scouts.
35. They attacked the legions on all sides.
36. He came to seek peace.
37. The commander-in-chief gave a reward to the tenth legion.
38. They praised their own tribe.
39. On the eleventh day he will be king.
40. This affair will be reported to Caesar within two hours.
41. These men, lately enrolled in Italy, arrived at the third watch.
42. The Gauls inhabit the third part.
43. Within three days I shall collect a thousand men.
44. They fought bitterly far into the night.
45. Within seven days they came to the river.
46. And the bravest are the Belgians.
47. They are farthest away from the province.
48. Merchants do not come to them.
49. The Belgians are next to the Germans.
50. The town was besieged for five days.

EXERCISE 3

Give the principal parts and meaning:

jaciō	parō	perfugiō
adorior	petō	praesum
moror	pellō	alō
morior	sequor	fluō
subsum	conjiciō	fleō
repellō	suscipiō	aggredior
parcō	polliceor	noceō

LESSON 44

PLACE

187-91

VOCABULARY

Rome	**Rōma, ae**
Sicily	**Sicilia, ae** ***(a large island)***
Athens	**Athēnae, Athēnārum**
I put forward *I propose*	**prōpōnō, prōpōnere, prōposuī, prōpositus, 3, tr.**
on land and sea	**terrā marīque**
reason *plan* *method* *manner*	**ratiō, ratiōnis**
Rhodes	**Rhodus, ī** ***(a small island)****,* ***f.***
throughout the whole city	**tōtā urbe**
direction *region*	**regiō, regiōnis**
I approach	**accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum, 3, intr.;** **ad** ***w. acc.***
belief *reputation* *opinion*	**opīniō, opīniōnis**
contrary to the expectation of everyone	**praeter omnium opīniōnem**
power *help*	**ops, opis**
wealth *resources*	**opēs, opum**

voice	**vōx, vōcis**	
I depart *I go away*	**discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum, *3, intr.***	**ab (ā)** **ex (ē)** **dē** — ***w. abl.***
sky *heavens*	**caelum, ī**	
praise	**laus, laudis**	
rumor *fame*	**fāma, ae**	
blockade *siege*	**obsidiō, obsidiōnis**	

EXERCISE 1

Translate:

1. Rōmae decem diēs morātus est.
2. In Siciliā erat.
3. Rhodī quīnque diēs morātus, Athēnās profectus est.
4. Athēnīs multōs annōs erat.
5. In Italiā novās legiōnēs cōnscrībet.
6. Tōtā urbe terror erat.
7. Rōmam quīnque diēbus veniet.
8. Ad Siciliam profectus erat.
9. In Galliam cum duodecim legiōnibus Caesar contendit.
10. Ab urbe mox discēdet.
11. Ē castrīs ēgressus, aciem prō castrīs īnstrūxit.
12. Dē exercitū discessit et in urbem contendit.
13. Fossam decem pedēs perdūxit *(extended)*.
14. Ē silvīs per agrōs in castra cum mīlitibus fūgit.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. Caesar sent the cavalry into the fields to plunder.
2. They approached the mountains on the eighth day.

3. Caesar arrived in Gaul within ten days contrary to the expectation of everyone.

4. In these regions the sky is most pleasing.

5. Caesar went away from the city on the ninth day.

6. The fleet having been destroyed *(fractā)*, Caesar hastened to Rome to enroll fresh troops in Italy.

7. After the higher places had been seized, he led the troops out of the camp into the fields.

8. He heard the voice of the king.

9. On the tenth day he brought all his friends together to the same place.

10. Caesar fought with the enemy on land and sea.

11. At Rome the envoy put forward this plan.

12. In Sicily the glory of the Roman people was greatly increased after this war had been finished *(completed)*.

13. They fought with these wicked men for five days throughout the whole city.

14. The Romans were always desirous of power.

15. He drew up the ranks of the soldiers in front of the camp.

16. The soldiers were victorious *(victors)*.

17. When this fortification had been completed, the soldiers sustained the attack of the cavalry.

18. He went away from Rome on the fifteenth day.

19. When this battle was over *(done)*, they set out.

20. The fleet soon *(brevī)* came to Rome.

21. We delayed at Rhodes five hours.

22. There were different opinions in the city concerning the siege.

23. The daughter of the general came to the camp, but not into the camp.

24. They proposed this method at Rhodes.

25. For the sake of praise and fame, he desired the wealth of those kings.

LESSON 45

REVIEW

187-94

VOCABULARY

sometimes	**nōnnumquam,** *adv.*
I join	**jungō, jungere, jūnxī, jūnctus,** *3, tr.*
I arrange	**dispōnō, dispōnere, disposuī, dispositus,** *3, tr.*
I lead through *I construct* (of ditches and walls)	**perdūcō, perdūcere, perdūxī, perductus,** *3, tr.*
I answer *I reply*	**respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus,** *2, tr.*
I go between *I am between* *I intervene*	**intercēdō, intercēdere, intercessī, intercessum,** *3, intr.*
I turn back *I return*	**revertor, revertī, {revertī, reversus sum,} *3, tr.***
bold *daring*	**audāx, audāx, audācis**
worthy (of)	**dignus, a, um; *abl.***

EXERCISE 1

Translate, and give the rule for the underlined constructions:

1. Belgae <u>in eōrum fīnibus</u> bellum gerunt.

2. <u>Dē fīnibus suīs</u> cum omnibus cōpiīs discēdunt.

3. Flūmen Rhodanus *(Rhone)* prōvinciam nostram <u>ab Helvētiīs</u> dīvidit.

4. Cōpia frūmentī in itinere erat.
5. In triplicī aciē mīlitēs disposuit.
6. Helvētiī per prōvinciam nostram venient.
7. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet.
8. Eō diē omnēs ad rīpam Rhodanī convenient.
9. Rōmā profectus brevī *(soon)* in Galliam pervēnit.
10. Erat omnīnō in Galliā Ulteriōre legiō ūna.
11. Helvētiī ad eum lēgātōs mittunt.
12. Iter per prōvinciam faciēmus.
13. Ā lacū Lemannō *(Lake Geneva)* ad montem Jūram mūrum perdūcit.
14. Lēgātī ad eum revertērunt.
15. Nōn possum iter *(passage)* per prōvinciam tibi dare.
16. Nōnnumquam barbarī laude dignī sunt.
17. Haec cīvitās in prōvinciā est.
18. Quīnque diēbus rēx cōpiās suās cum Germānīs junget.
19. Per hōs agrōs cum quīnque legiōnibus contendit.
20. Vōbīs tribus mēnsibus respondēbō.
21. Helvētiī jam per angustiās exercitum dūxerant.
22. Germānī, hominēs audācissimī atque fortissimī, per prōvinciam iter facient.
23. In eō locō mōns et flūmen intercēdunt.
24. Tertiā vigiliā ē castrīs profectus ad Helvētiōs pervēnit.
25. In proximās silvās fūgērunt.
26. Ūnam mēnsem morātī sunt.
27. Decimō diē castra ex eō locō mōvērunt.
28. Ex omnī prōvinciā mīlitēs convocāvit.

29. Quās in partēs hostēs iter faciunt?

30. Frūmenta in agrīs bona nōn erant.

31. Fossam octō pedēs perdūxit.

32. Explōrātor tribus hōrīs revertētur.

33. Sine morā Rōmam reversus est.

34. Cōpiās suās in proximum collem dūcit.

35. Aciem in colle īnstrūxit.

36. Hās legiōnēs in Galliā Ulteriōre cōnscrīpserat.

37. Sarcinās in ūnum locum comportant.

38. Mīlitēs, ē locīs superiōribus pīlīs missīs, facile hostium aciem perfrēgērunt.

39. Hostēs ad montem fugiēbant.

40. Ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla conjiciēbant.

41. Agger ā mīlitibus tertiā hōrā cōnfectus est.

42. Mīlitēs, in angustō locō cōnfertī, necātī sunt.

43. Helvētiī, hāc ōrātiōne inductī, lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt.

44. Servī ad eōs perfugiēbant.

45. Ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs venient.

46. Tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī ad Caesarem convēnērunt.

47. Subitum autem bellum in Galliā erat.

48. In hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat.

49. Trēs diēs iter fēcērunt.

50. Frūmentum ex agrīs in oppida comportant.

51. Quem in locum vēnimus?

52. Quis Rōmā profectus est?

EXERCISE 2

Translate orally:

1. He was the leading man at Rome.
2. They returned on the fourth day.
3. He hastened into Gaul with five legions.
4. There were soldiers in the city.
5. He set out from Rome.
6. They came to the bank of the river.
7. He summoned all the leading men into the camp.
8. The Helvetians will come through our province.
9. Caesar marched through the fields.
10. He departed from the city.
11. He set out from Gaul.
12. He departed from Rome.
13. For five days he marched through Gaul.
14. On the fourth day he arrived at the city.
15. Within two hours the scouts will come out of the forest.
16. There was a fight in the city on the following day.
17. Caesar is worthy of praise.
18. He set out from the camp.
19. They will come out of their territory.
20. They were coming into the province.
21. They fled into the neighboring fields.
22. He summoned the leading men from all Gaul.
23. In what direction have the enemy set out?
24. In what place did he pitch camp?
25. For ten days they will march through our fields.
26. The chief, a daring man, arranged his men in a low valley.
27. He led the troops out of winter quarters.
28. He led his army out of the province into the fields of the Helvetians.
29. I shall answer within three days.
30. He hastened to the army.
31. He hastened to Rome.
32. He hastened to Sicily.

33. He hastened to Rhodes.
34. He hastened into Gaul.
35. He set out from Rhodes.
36. He set out from Rome.
37. He set out from the camp for Rome.
38. He set out from Rome for the camp.
39. He set out from the camp for Sicily.
40. The ships came to Sicily.
41. The enemy came into Sicily.
42. He constructed a wall and a ditch from the river to the hill.
43. The enemy is one hundred feet from our first line.
44. Within two hours they will attack.
45. For ten hours they fought in the valley.
46. During the whole night they marched as quickly as possible.
47. Towards evening they arrived at the high mountains.
48. At seven *(at the seventh hour)* they will come out of the forest.
49. When this battle was completed, they pursued the enemy to the bank.
50. At the third watch they set out from the camp and marched through the fields of the Helvetians, and arrived at the bank of the river towards evening.

LESSON 46

EO, FERO

61[1]

VOCABULARY

I transport *I collect*	**cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus,** ***tr.***
I bring help	**auxilium ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus,** ***tr.***
I carry out *I bear out* (passive—*I am elated*)	**efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus,** ***tr.***
I bear through *I endure*	**perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus,** ***tr.***
I carry away *I report (to)*	**dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus,** ***tr.;*** **ad** ***w. acc.***
I bear in	**īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus,** ***tr.***
I make war on	**bellum īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus,** ***tr.; dat. of person***
reserve *reinforcement*	**subsidium, ī** ***(often plural)***
I bring to *I report*	**afferō, afferre, attulī, allātus,** ***tr.;*** ***w.*** **nūntius,** ***etc.***
I go across *I cross*	**trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī, trānsitus,** ***tr.***
I go forth *I go out of*	**exeō, exīre, exiī, exitum,** ***intr.;*** **ex (ē)** ***or*** **dē** ***w. abl.***
I go to *I visit*	**adeō, adīre, adiī, aditus,** ***tr. and intr.;*** ***acc. or*** **ad** ***w. acc.***
I enter upon *I undertake*	**ineō, inīre, iniī, initus,** ***tr.***

[1] Omit *fīō*.

I come next *I succeed*	**succēdō, succēdere, successī, successum, *3, intr.***	**ad *w. acc.*** ***dat.***
from all sides *on all sides*	**ex omnibus partibus**	
I retire	**concēdō, concēdere, concessī, concessum, *3, intr.;* ab (ā) *w. abl.***	
I yield *I grant*	**concēdō, concēdere, concessī, concessus, *3, tr.***	

EXERCISE 1

Translate, parse, and diagram:

1. Dē fīnibus cum omnibus cōpiīs exiērunt.
2. Minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre potuērunt.
3. Nōbīs subsidia ferent.
4. Quis hunc nūntium attulit?
5. Trāns flūmen trānsiērunt.
6. Erant duo itinera *(roads)* quibus exīre poterant.
7. Illās regiōnēs adīre voluit.
8. Hanc ratiōnem iniit.
9. Ex omnibus partibus nūntiī afferēbantur.
10. Ab aciē vulnerātus concessit.
11. Ad eās cōpiās pervēnit quae flūmen nōn trānsierant.
12. Hōc proeliō ēlātī in prōvinciam iērunt.
13. Omnēs carrōs in ūnum locum contulit.
14. Quis nōbīs auxilium feret?
15. Tōtam noctem continenter iērunt.
16. Quis hōs dolōrēs perferre potest?
17. Litterās ad Caesarem dētulit.
18. Helvētiī Belgīs successērunt.
19. Mīlitēs vulnerātōs in loca superiōra ferunt.
20. In multam noctem iērunt.
21. Sine morā rem Caesarī dētulit.
22. In ōrā maris sunt gentēs audācissimae.
23. Uxōrēs exiēbant.

24. Ex omnibus partibus barbarī impetum fēcērunt.
25. Quis mēcum īre vult?

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. I will go.
2. We will bring help.
3. They went into the forest.
4. They went out of the city.
5. You will go to Rome.
6. We will go soon.
7. He was going with the envoy.
8. Towards evening they went out of the camp.
9. The children went across the river.
10. The leading men of the state brought help to the consul.
11. They brought the message to the soldier.
12. He summoned the reserves.
13. They undertook a difficult war.
14. On one side they were held in by a deep river.
15. All the barbarians crossed the river.
16. They endured the pain.
17. We will make war on the Romans.
18. We were carrying the grain out of the city.
19. They will collect the baggage into one place.
20. We are bringing a good message.
21. He wished to visit those fields.
22. The tenth legion came next to the eighth legion.
23. They retired from the first line *(aciēs)*.
24. They went out of the camp on the tenth day.
25. We were making war on them for two years.

EXERCISE 3

Translate orally:

1. I will go into the forest.

2. They were going with the envoy.
3. They had visited their allies.
4. We will make war on the Gauls.
5. You were crossing the river.
6. Who was going into the town?
7. They entered the conspiracy.
8. Who will go into the camp of the enemy?
9. They are bringing grain to the soldiers.
10. They went with the allies.
11. We remember the wrongs of our allies.
12. Who does not praise his *(suus)* ancestors?
13. I shall bring the message to Caesar.
14. He sent him to bring the message to Caesar.
15. I will not bear this injustice.
16. They will carry the wounded into the camp.
17. You were going with the cavalry.
18. I will bring water to the soldier.
19. The horsemen will bring the message.
20. They were crossing the river.
21. I will not yield the towns.
22. They brought me the message.
23. Who will bring us help?
24. What did you bring?
25. They carried the dead out.
26. He is going into the mountains.
27. They are going into that place.
28. Grain was lacking.
29. I will go alone.
30. Who brought help to the Romans?
31. He went to seek peace.
32. The camp which he had pitched on the bank was captured.
33. The hostages whom Caesar had given were killed.
34. The consul will go by this road.
35. You brought the swords.
36. With whom did you go into the camp?
37. They reported these things.

38. They transported grain into that town.
39. Who captured this city?
40. They will be crossing the mountains.

REVIEW WORD LIST NO. 6

This list contains words that need special emphasis.

opportune *favorable*	**opportūnus, a, um**
I drive *I defeat*	**pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, *3, tr.***
successive	**continuus, a, um**
weather *storm*	**tempestās, tempestātis**
I disclose *I speak out*	**ēnūntiō, *1, tr.***
speed *rapidity*	**celeritās, celeritātis**
I break through	**perrumpō, perrumpere, perrūpī, perruptus, *3, tr.***
I flow	**fluō, fluere, flūxī, *3, intr.***
low *humble*	**humilis, e**
I am unoccupied	**vacō, *1, intr.***
safety	**salūs, salūtis, *f.***
I lead (to) *I induce*	**addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus, *3, tr.***
vehemently *vigorously*	**vehementer, *adv.***
powerful	**potēns, potēns, potentis**
I drive back	**repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus, *3, tr.***
to the same place	**eōdem, *adv.***
time	**tempus, temporis, *n.***

space	**spatium, ī**
gentle	**lēnis, e**
I hide	**mē (tē, sē) abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus, *3, tr.***
I collect *I bring together* *I hire*	**condūcō, condūcere, condūxī, conductus, *3, tr.***
suitable *fit*	**idōneus, a, um** {ad *w. acc.* *dat.*
hard	**dūrus, a, um**
I prepare	**parō, *1, tr.***
month	**mēnsis, mēnsis, *m.***
I wander about	**vagor, *1, intr.***
threefold	**triplex, triplex, triplicis**
altogether *at all* (with negatives)	**omnīnō, *adv.***
former	**prīstinus, a, um**
a period of three days	**trīduum, ī**
a period of two days	**bīduum, ī**
sudden *unexpected*	**subitus, a, um**
ancestors	**mājōrēs, mājōrum, *m.***
I bring help	**auxilium ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *tr.***
I bear out *I carry out* (passive—*I am elated*)	**efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus, *tr.***
I restrain *I check*	**reprimō, reprimere, repressī, repressus, *3, tr.***
artifice *trickery*	**dolus, ī**
I inform (of)	**certiōrem faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *3, tr.;* dē *w. abl.***

district *canton*	**pāgus, ī**
and so	**itaque,** ***conj.***
desirous of	**cupidus, a, um;** ***gen.***
eagerness *zeal* *devotion*	**studium, ī**
institution	**īnstitūtum, ī**
I answer	**respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus,** ***2, tr.***
I go between *I am between* *I intervene*	**intercēdō, intercēdere, intercessī, intercessum,** ***3, intr.***
even *just*	**aequus, a, um**
bold *daring*	**audāx, audāx, audācis**
worthy (of)	**dignus, a, um;** ***abl.***
soon	**mox,** ***adv.***
I do *I drive*	**agō, agere, ēgī, āctus,** ***3, tr.***
punishment	**supplicium, ī**
in front of *on behalf of* *for*	**prō,** ***prep. w. abl.***
boldly	**audācter,** ***adv.***
acceptable *pleasing*	**grātus, a, um;** ***dat.***
I draw up	**īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus,** ***3, tr.***
cohort	**cohors, cohortis**
equal	**pār, pār, paris;** ***dat.***
children	**līberī, līberōrum**

Athens	**Athēnae, Athēnārum**
I put forward *I propose*	**prōpōnō, prōpōnere, prōposuī, prōpositus, *3, tr.***
on land and sea	**terrā marīque**
I toss about *I discuss*	**jactō, *1, tr.***
I depart *I go away*	**discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum, *3, intr.*** **{ab (ā) / ex (ē) / dē} *w. abl.***
sometimes	**nōnnumquam, *adv.***
reason *plan* *method* *manner*	**ratiō, ratiōnis**
Rhodes	**Rhodus, ī *(a small island)***
deed *crime*	**facinus, facinoris**
I check	**coerceō, *2, tr.***
for the sake of	***gen. w.* causā**
by night	**noctū, *adv.***
throughout the whole city	**tōtā urbe**
direction *region*	**regiō, regiōnis**
prosperity	**rēs secundae, rērum secundārum**
I resist	**resistō, resistere, restitī, *3, intr.; dat.***
I provoke *I harass*	**lacessō, lacessere, lacessīvī, lacessītus, *3, tr.***
I place aside *I lay down*	**dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositus, *3, tr.***
I nourish *I maintain*	**alō, alere, aluī, {altus, / alitus,} *3, tr.***
I fortify	**mūniō, *4, tr.***

recently *lately*	nūper, *adv.*
however	autem, *conj., postp.*
foot	pēs, pedis, *m.*
I lead a life	vītam agō, agere, ēgī, āctūs, *3, tr.*
and from this *and for this reason*	quā ex rē
opposite *different*	dīversus, a, um
narrow *difficult*	angustus, a, um
light	levis, e
as . . . as possible	quam *w. a superlative*
secretly	sēcrētō, *adv.*
Sicily	Sicilia, ae *(a large island)*
I come into the power (of)	in potestātem *(gen.)* perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum, *4, intr.*
sick *ill*	aeger, aegra, aegrum
tribe *race* *nation*	gēns, gentis
I throw forward *I reject*	prōjiciō, projīcere, prōjēcī, prōjectus, *3, tr.*
the rest *the remaining*	reliquus, a, um
I bring to *I report*	afferō, afferre, attulī, allātus, *tr.*
I break through	perfringō, perfringere, perfrēgī, perfrāctus, *3, tr.*
I besiege *I blockade*	obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus, *2, tr.*

I go across *I cross*	trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī, trānsitus, *tr.*
I desire	cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītus, *3, tr.*
I get ready *I dispatch*	expediō, *4, tr.*
I go forth *I go out of*	exeō, exīre, exiī, exitum, *intr.;* ex (ē) *or* dē *w. abl.*
I go to *I visit*	adeō, adīre, adiī, aditus, *tr. and intr.* — *acc.* / ad *w. acc.*
movement *disturbance* *revolution*	mōtus, ūs
skilled in *experienced in*	perītus, a, um; *gen.*
I am lacking to *I desert*	dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
I enter upon *I undertake*	ineō, inīre, iniī, initus, *tr.*
I fill up (with)	compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus, *2, tr.; abl.*
little	exiguus, a, um
work *fortification*	opus, operis, *n.*
active *eager*	alacer, alacris, alacre
broad	lātus, a, um
I spare	parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus, *3, intr.; dat.*
I send away *I dismiss*	dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissus, *3, tr.*
I bear through *I endure*	perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus, *tr.*

summer	**aestās, aestātis**
I carry down *I report (to)*	**dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus, *tr.;* ad *w. acc.***
already	**jam, *adv.***
back *rear*	**tergum, ī**
I retreat	**tergum vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, *3, tr.***
fodder	**pābulum, ī**
I retire	**concēdō, concēdere, concessī, concessum, *3, intr.;* ab (ā) *w. abl.***
from all sides *on all sides*	**ex omnibus partibus**
I come next *I succeed*	**succēdō, succēdere, successī, successum, *3, intr.*** — **ad *w. acc.* *dat.***
refinement *culture* *mercy*	**hūmānitās, hūmānitātis**
I get booty *I plunder*	**praedor, *1, tr.***
rank *order*	**ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.***
I approach	**accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum, *3, intr.;* ad *w. acc.***
fleet	**classis, classis *(abl.* -e, *less often* -ī*)***
voice	**vōx, vōcis**
moderate	**mediocris, e**
panic *dread*	**terror, terrōris**
I go out	**ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, *3, intr.*** — **ex (ē) *w. abl.* *abl.***
worse	**pējor, pējus**
moderately	**mediocriter, *adv.***

farthest *last*	**ultimus, a, um**
belief *reputation* *notion*	**opīniō, opīniōnis**
wealth *resources*	**opēs, opum, *f.***
power *help*	**ops, opis**
contrary to the expectation of everyone	**praeter omnium opīniōnem**
I join	**jungō, jungere, jūnxī, jūnctus, *3, tr.*** — ***dat.*** / **cum *w. abl.***
I arrange	**dispōnō, dispōnere, disposuī, dispositus, *3, tr.***
I am under *I am near*	**subsum, subesse, *intr.; dat.***
I weep	**fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, *2, intr.***
I injure	**noceō, *2, intr.; dat.***
I lead through *I construct*	**perdūcō, perdūcere, perdūxī, perductus, *3, tr.***
I transport *I collect*	**cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus, *tr.***
I join battle	**proelium committō, committere, commīsī, commissus, *3, tr.;* cum *w. abl.***
merchant	**mercātor, mercātōris**
foreign *another's*	**aliēnus, a, um**
at dawn	**prīmā lūce**
hindered *encumbered*	**impedītus, a, um**
I lead into *I induce*	**indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductus, *3, tr.***

I use *I employ*	**ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *3, intr.; abl.***
I gain possession of	**potior, *4, intr.*** { ***abl.*** / ***gen.***
large *ample*	**amplus, a, um**
death	**mors, mortis**
I am among *I take part in* *I am present at*	**intersum, interesse, interfuī, interfutūrus, *intr.; dat.***
I bear in	**īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus, *tr.***
I make war on	**bellum īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus, *tr.; dat. of person***
reserve *reinforcement*	**subsidium, ī *(often plural)***
I attack	**aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum, *3, tr.***
a running together *a concourse*	**concursus, ūs**
delay	**mora, ae**
man	**vir, virī**
ridge *yoke*	**jugum, ī**
I throw together *I hurl*	**conjiciō, conjicere, conjēcī, conjectus, *3, tr.***
on one side *on the one hand*	**ūnā ex parte**
on the other side *on the other hand*	**alterā ex parte**

LESSON 47

REVIEW

95; 111; 187-94

VOCABULARY

I am at hand
I hold out (last) } **suppetō, suppetere, suppetīvī, *3, intr.***

I snatch away
I save } **ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus, *3, tr.*** { ***dat. of person***; **ex (ē)** ***w. abl.***; ***abl.***

I lie — **jaceō, jacēre, jacuī, *2, intr.***

I throw in the way
I put in the way
I expose } **objiciō, objicere, objēcī, objectus, *3, tr.***

I forget — **oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum, *3, tr.*** { ***gen. of persons***; ***gen. or acc. of things***; ***acc. of neuter prons. or adjs.***

I use force — **vim faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *3, tr.***

I set sail — **nāvem solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, *3, tr.***

EXERCISE 1

Translate and explain the underlined constructions:

1. Titum Labiēnum in Galliam mittit.
2. Lēgātum cum tribus legiōnibus in Italiam mīsit.
3. Omnēs enim collēs et loca superiōra ab exercitū tenēbantur.
4. Nautae ad terram pervēnērunt.
5. Omnī senātū necātō, reliquōs in castrīs tenēbat.

6. Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs, Caesar ad portum profectus est.
7. Eōdem equitātus tōtīus Galliae convēnerat.
8. In Galliā nōn est.
9. Rōmam contendit.
10. In Siciliam lēgātum cum legiōnibus mīsit.
11. Ē Siciliā nāvēs profectae sunt.
12. Rōmā in Galliam profectus est.
13. Cōpia aquae quīnque diēs suppetet.
14. Equitātū victō, ēripiēmus amīcum nostrum ex hostium castrīs.
15. Hīs rēbus gestīs, sōlis occāsū nāvem solvit.
16. Neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus.
17. Illī ad flūmen pervēnērunt.
18. Eōs ex silvīs pellēbant.
19. Mīlitēs mīsit ut eōs quī fūgerant sequerentur.
20. Exigua erat cōpia frūmentī.
21. Nostrī eōs in silvās et collēs pepulērunt.
22. Mīlitēs vulnerātī et mortuī in agrīs jacēbant.
23. Praemissō equitātū, impetum hostium quīnque hōrās exspectābat.
24. Lēgātōs ad Caesarem decem diēbus mittent.
25. Carrōs in portīs objēcērunt nē hostēs eās perfringerent.
26. Tribus diēbus perveniet.
27. Hīs audītīs, impetum fēcērunt.
28. In Italiam contendit.
29. Tertiā hōrā ad montēs pervēnit.
30. Omnēs Caesarī grātulābantur.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. Elated by this victory, the Helvetians made an attack on the baggage.
2. I shall make war on the Gauls in order to defend the merchants.
3. We shall send reserves to Caesar.
4. As we were about to come into the camp, we saw the enemy.
5. This answer having been given, they used force.
6. We shall not forget the crimes and wrongs of your soldiers.
7. The Helvetians were going out of their *(suus)* territory.
8. Within five days Caesar will undertake new plans.
9. They came next to our front *(first)* line.
10. The enemy made an attack from all sides.
11. On the fifth day they will collect arms in the camp.
12. We shall cross the river within two hours.
13. There were battles in Sicily.
14. When Cicero was consul *(Cicerōne cōnsule)* there was a war in Gaul.
15. I shall endure all these pains and punishments.
16. He sent the lieutenant with nine legions.
17. He killed the envoy with a sword.
18. Within eight days we shall pacify all Gaul.
19. They went through the fields of the enemy into the camp of the lieutenant.
20. Caesar will bring help within four days.
21. For five days they marched.
22. He exposed himself to the enemy but was saved by his friends.
23. The scouts were in the fort.
24. He departed from the city.
25. The Helvetians will go out of their territory.

LESSON 48

ACCOMPANIMENT; MANNER

161; 163

VOCABULARY

ripe *early* *speedy*	**mātūrus, a, um**
few	**paucī, ae, a**
I leave behind *I abandon*	**relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus, *3, tr.***
old	**vetus, vetus, veteris (vetere, vetera, veterum)**
I deserve (well of) *I merit*	**mereō, *2, intr.;* (bene dē *w. abl.*)**
some	**nōnnūllī, ae, a**
I turn from *I turn away from*	**āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversus, *3, tr.;* ab (ā) *w. abl.***
force *strength* *energy*	**vīs (vim, vī; *pl.* vīrēs, vīrium)**
with force *violently* *by force*	**vī** **per vim**

EXERCISE 1

Translate:

1. On the next day he came into camp with Caesar.

2. He turned his line of march *(iter)* away from the river and went with the cavalry.

3. The envoy carried on the affair with the greatest diligence.
4. They fought with great courage.
5. The enemy abandoned the carts and crossed the river by force.
6. They feared the force of the storm and waited for good weather.
7. He came to Rome on the tenth day with a few (men).
8. They made the journey in company with the leader.
9. He left the baggage behind with the consul and the fourth legion.
10. They marched into Gaul in company with the consul.
11. They captured the fort by force.
12. They will kill him with arrows.
13. The grain in the fields was not ripe.
14. With the greatest *(summus)* boldness he hastened into the enemy's camp, unarmed and alone.
15. They will not be able to restrain the Germans.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. We have deserved well of the Roman people.
2. He killed the envoy with a sword.
3. He went into the city with two cohorts.
4. He went into the camp of the enemy with the greatest *(summus)* boldness.
5. He went boldly into the camp of the enemy.
6. He stationed the old soldiers on the hill; the cavalry however he arranged in a low place.
7. Because of the force of the storm the ships were held in the port.
8. He left two cohorts behind with the baggage.
9. He has deserved well of the Gauls.
10. Some of the Gauls were killed in the war.
11. He turned his line of march *(iter)* away from the river.
12. He left Labienus behind to defend the camp.

13. The ambassadors will return within five days.
14. They fought with the greatest courage.
15. They fought with javelins and slings.
16. They waged war with the Germans.
17. He set out from Rome with five legions.
18. They arrived with the tenth legion.
19. This river divides the fields of the Helvetians from the territory of the Germans.
20. He was killed by a German.
21. They made the dike with great care.
22. There was a sudden war in Gaul.
23. There was a lack of water and grain on the journey.
24. He fortified the camp with the greatest care.
25. They crossed the river by an artifice.

EXERCISE 3

Translate:

1. He set out for the province with ten legions.
2. He carried on the war with the greatest diligence.
3. The children came to Caesar weeping.
4. The arrow injured the man.
5. He saw a place suitable for a camp.
6. He made an attack vigorously.
7. They were driven back.
8. The Gauls were fighting with courage.
9. They will prepare everything *(omnia)* with the greatest speed.
10. He sent the cavalry with the messenger.
11. Labienus was left in the camp with the eighth legion.
12. They came to the Romans with the greatest fear.
13. The lieutenants enrolled new troops with diligence.
14. Some were left behind with the chiefs.
15. He will set out for the camp with the wagons and the beasts of burden.
16. After the battle the soldiers were tired.

17. He turned the barbarians away from the province by trickery.
18. Gaul as a whole *(Gallia omnis)* is divided into many parts.
19. Who inhabit this island?
20. Mountains divide Italy from Gaul.
21. The Rhine is a large river.
22. The soldiers collected with all *(the greatest)* speed.
23. The ten bravest men went with the leader.
24. The cavalry were with the Gauls at the foot of *(were under)* the hill.

EXERCISE 4

Translate orally:

1. We have no other road.
2. He was hiring soldiers.
3. He answered the ambassadors.
4. They crossed on rafts *(means)*.
5. They fought with courage.
6. The sixth legion set out for the mountains.
7. He came with the magistrate.
8. He stationed garrisons on the bank.
9. They were fortifying the bank.
10. The envoys will soon return.
11. Within ten days the ambassadors returned to Caesar.
12. They seized the hill by force.
13. The enemy was breaking through.
14. He will undertake the embassy.
15. He was not able to come to Rome.
16. They wished to set out before dawn.
17. At dawn they arrived in the camp.
18. The camp, however, was in an elevated place.
19. You proposed this method.
20. He was a friend to the Helvetians.
21. He is worthy of praise.
22. Caesar was informed of the affair.

23. They are marching through the land of the Helvetians.
24. This city is in our province.
25. He enrolled new troops in that place.

LESSON 49

REVIEW

VOCABULARY

I am very influential	**plūrimum possum, posse, potuī, *intr.***
this side of	**citrā, *prep. w. acc.***
I cut down *I kill*	**concīdō, concīdere, concīdī, concīsus, *3, tr.***
I make restitution to *I appease*	**satisfaciō, satisfacere, satisfēcī, satisfactum, *3, intr.; dat.***
I fall *I am slain*	**cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *3, intr.***
I hold back *I detain*	**retineō, retinēre, retinuī, retentus, *2, tr.***
power	**potentia, ae**

EXERCISE 1

Translate:

1. And the bravest of these men are the Gauls.
2. The noblest of all the Romans was Caesar.
3. He was very influential in Gaul.
4. A river divides the fields of the Gauls from the territory of the Germans.
5. High mountains divide the land of the enemy from our province.
6. Italy as a whole *(Italia omnis)* is divided into many parts.
7. Many tribes dwell (on) this side of the river.
8. The Roman legion is divided into many cohorts.
9. He appeased the king.
10. The Belgians detained the Roman merchants by force.

11. They are farthest from our province.
12. They were the farthest from the refinement of the province.
13. They were waging war in the territory of the Germans.
14. They were held in on all sides by the enemy.
15. They were bounded on one side by a river, on the other by a mountain.
16. Induced by the authority of their leading men, they went out of their territory.
17. They went out of their fields with all their *(suus)* troops.
18. He was sent ahead with the cavalry.
19. He came as quickly as possible.
20. They fought as bravely as possible.
21. He enrolled as many *(plūrimus)* legions as possible.
22. Of all the soldiers this man is the bravest.
23. He was unable to appease the senate.
24. This affair was reported to Caesar by informers.
25. A few soldiers fell.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. The enemy is across the river.
2. Within five days they will arrive.
3. They marched for five nights.
4. He will come on the tenth day.
5. He set out for Rome at the third watch.
6. He left Rome on the fourth day.
7. Within ten years he will be king.
8. This man will be killed within ten hours.
9. We shall cut down as many as possible of the enemy. *(Do not translate 'of.')*
10. He was slain in the battle.
11. He held back the troops.
12. He desired power.
13. The Romans were always desirous of power.
14. As we were crossing the river, we saw the enemy.

15. They resisted the enemy for six hours.
16. After two hours the enemy fled.
17. They fear slavery.
18. We shall make restitution to the Gauls.
19. I was detained by the scarcity of carts.
20. They repulsed the enemy with javelins.
21. The higher positions *(loca)* having been seized, we awaited the attack of the enemy.
22. When this was completed, the troops went home.
23. As he was about to speak, he saw the messenger.
24. We will attack the enemy while they are crossing the river.
25. They crossed the river by night.

LESSON 50

RESPECT; DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

159; 162

VOCABULARY

unbroken *perpetual*	**perpetuus, a, um**
toil *exertion* *distress*	**labor, labōris**
far and wide	**longē lātēque, *adv.***
forever	**in perpetuum**
unknown	**incognitus, a, um**
by *beyond* *besides*	**praeter, *prep. w. acc.***
meanwhile	**interim, *adv.***
battleship	**nāvis longa, nāvis longae**
hidden	**occultus, a, um**
prayers *entreaties*	**precēs, precum, *f.***
middle	**medius, a, um**

EXERCISE 1

Translate:

1. This stone is much heavier.
2. This toil is much greater.
3. Caesar will not conquer them.
4. The Germans surpass all others in boldness.
5. He is equal to Caesar in courage.

6. Meanwhile there was a battle in the valley.
7. Because of the distress of the ships, Caesar could not return to Gaul before winter.
8. After the winter the river was a foot deeper.
9. On these terms they made peace and sent hostages to Rome.
10. Moved by the prayers of the children, Caesar gave the Gauls grain.
11. You will be in unbroken peace.
12. They were laying waste the fields far and wide.
13. Towards evening the praetor saw the enemy drawn up on the left bank.
14. They surpass the Romans in number *(multitūdō)*.
15. Because of the rainstorm they could not set sail.
16. He will lead the army into a hidden valley.
17. The river flows by these cities.
18. He heard the conversation of the two soldiers.
19. In this he surpassed all others.
20. The mountain was much higher than the hills.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. Eight legions came with the praetor.
2. He will make a perpetual peace with you.
3. The Helvetians surpass all others in this.
4. In bravery you are not equal to the Romans.
5. They made the attack with great speed.
6. He sent five battleships ahead with the fleet.
7. Besides weapons, they had a large number of slaves.
8. He marched through the valley with the tenth legion.
9. There will be peace forever.
10. Induced by the desire of wealth, he seized the town.
11. He saw the lieutenant dying in the valley.
12. Caesar, after exhorting his men, led them against the enemy.

13. Meanwhile there were rainstorms on the island.
14. When the battle was over *(completed)*, the men were tired.
15. He sought conditions of peace.
16. The island was unknown to him.
17. They were laying waste the fields far and wide.
18. Stones were being hurled at *(**in**, prep. w. acc.)* the Romans.
19. They fortified the camp with the greatest exertion.
20. This man is a much better general than the other.

LESSON 51

FIO; ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

61; 160

VOCABULARY

the common people *the masses*	**plēbs, plēbis**
I accuse	**accūsō, *1, tr.***
I lessen	**minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtus, *3, tr.***
I complain of *I lament*	**queror, querī, questus sum, *3, tr.***
I turn about *I change*	**convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus, *3, tr.***
I free *I liberate*	**līberō, *1, tr.***
I drive together *I force* *I compel*	**cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, *3, tr.***
rich	**dīves, dīves, dīvitis (dīvite, dītia, dīvitum)**
all together	**ūniversī, ae, a**
each *each one*	**singulī, ae, a**
necessary *urgent*	**necessārius, a, um**
I am informed (of, about)	**certior fīō, fierī, factus sum, *intr.*** — **dē *w. abl.*** / ***gen.***

EXERCISE 1

Translate:

1. Dēfessus fīō.
2. Tribus annīs rēx fīet.
3. Dīves eō annō factus est.
4. Trēs nāvēs fīunt.
5. Rēx fierī nōn poterit.
6. Nox fīēbat.
7. Pugnat ut victor fīat.
8. Cīvēs Rōmānī factī sunt.
9. Proelium fīet.
10. Dē hāc rē certior fīam.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. We are becoming free.
2. They will become rich.
3. This is being done by Caesar.
4. This cannot be done.
5. He freed the masses from wicked leaders.
6. The slaves are free from care.
7. Rich men are not free from care.
8. This often happens *(is done)*.
9. These men who have assembled *(come together)* in *(into)* the camp will become soldiers.
10. A bridge will be made over *(in, prep. w. abl.)* the river.
11. The road was becoming narrow and difficult.
12. He is informed about the victory.
13. He forced them into the mountains to free the towns from danger.
14. He complained of the fate of the chiefs.
15. The standards having been turned about, they made an attack all together.
16. These men will become the leading men of all Gaul.
17. He came to Rome to become consul.

18. He wished to become leader of the legions of the Romans.
19. I am fighting in order that the state may be free from enemies.
20. This young man will become a consul at Rome.

EXERCISE 3

Translate:

1. When the battle was over *(completed)*, they became friends of the Roman people.
2. After Caesar had been killed, the Gauls did not desire liberty.
3. All these things are being done by the praetor.
4. This is impossible *(cannot be done)*.
5. Help is urgent.
6. He is being made general.
7. He was accused by the magistrate in the presence of ***(apud**, prep. w. acc.)* the common people.
8. The Gauls were freed from fear.
9. In this we are better than the Germans.
10. The Romans surpassed all the Gauls in courage.
11. He is much braver.
12. Each one of the Gauls *(the Gauls each)* returned home.
13. He was unable to lessen the king's power.
14. They set out for Rome at dawn.
15. When the higher places had been seized, he pitched camp.
16. The enemy is beyond *(across)* the river.
17. He was leading the cavalry, which had come from the province, through the narrow passes.
18. We have always deserved well of the Roman people.
19. Those towns are being captured by the Germans.
20. They fought with swords.
21. Caesar was informed of the battle by scouts whom he had sent ahead.
22. The Germans were fighting with the Gauls.

23. The soldiers who had recently been enrolled were frightened.

24. He is leading the army across the river.

25. The river which divides the Gauls from the Germans is called the Rhine *(Rhēnus)*.

REVIEW WORD LIST NO. 7

This list contains all the words seen since the last Review Word List, together with a selection of words from previous review lists.

ripe *early* *speedy*	**mātūrus, a, um**
few	**paucī, ae, a**
I drive *I defeat*	**pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, *3, tr.***
with force *violently* *by force*	**vī** **per vim**
I break through	**perrumpō, perrumpere, perrūpī, perruptus, *3, tr.***
I flow	**fluō, fluere, flūxī, *3, intr.***
I turn back *I return*	**revertor, revertī, revertī, reversus sum, *3, intr.***
I am unoccupied	**vacō, *1, intr.***
I lead to *I induce* *I draw*	**addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus, *3, tr.***
I leave behind *I abandon*	**relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus, *3, tr.***
old	**vetus, vetus, veteris** **(vetere, vetera, veterum)**
I drive back	**repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus, *3, tr.***
I hide	**mē (tē, sē) abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus, *3, tr.***

next *subsequent*	**posterus, a, um**
I deserve (well of) *I merit*	**mereō, *2, intr.*** **mereor, *2, intr.;* (bene dē *w. abl.*)**
some	**nōnnūllī, ae, a**
I collect *I bring together*	**condūcō, condūcere, condūxī, conductus, *3, tr.***
unbroken *perpetual*	**perpetuus, a, um**
I fear	**timeō, timēre, timuī, *2, tr.***
I draw up	**īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus, *3, tr.***
I pertain to *I stretch to*	**pertineō, pertinēre, pertinuī, *2, intr.;* ad *w. acc.***
I put forward *I explain*	**prōpōnō, prōpōnere, prōposuī, prōpositus, *3, tr.***
toil *exertion* *distress*	**labor, labōris**
killing *slaughter*	**caedēs, caedis**
far and wide	**longē lātēque, *adv.***
conversation *talk*	**sermō, sermōnis, *m.***
I toss about *I discuss*	**jactō, *1, tr.***
forever	**in perpetuum**
unknown	**incognitus, a, um**
I depart *I go away*	**discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum, *3, intr.*** **ab (ā) / dē / ex (ē)** ***w. abl.***
valley	**vallēs, vallis**

I resist	**resistō, resistere, restitī, *3, intr.; dat.***
I throw away *I reject*	**prōjiciō, prōjicere, prōjēcī, prōjectus, *3, tr.***
I come into the power of	**in potestātem *(gen.)* perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum, *3, intr.***
by *beyond* *besides*	**praeter, *prep. w. acc.***
meanwhile	**interim, *adv.***
I wander about	**vagor, *1, intr.***
I turn from *I turn away from*	**āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, aversus, *3, tr.*; ab (ā) *w. abl.***
force *strength* *energy*	**vīs (vim, vī; *pl.* vīrēs, vīrium)**
I throw in the way *I put in the way* *I expose*	**objiciō, objicere, objēcī, objectus, *3, tr.***
I drive *I do*	**agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *3, tr.***
I am very influential	**plūrimum possum, posse, potuī, *intr.***
slavery	**servitūs, servitūtis, *f.***
this side of	**citrā, *prep. w. acc.***
I bear out *I carry out* (passive—*I am elated*)	**efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus, *tr.***
I restrain *I check*	**reprimō, reprimere, repressī, repressus, *3, tr.***
power	**potentia, ae**
I hold back *I detain*	**retineō, retinēre, retinuī, retentus, *2, tr.***
I fall *I am slain*	**cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *3, intr.***

I cut down *I kill*	**concīdō, concīdere, concīdī, concīsus, *3, tr.***
I answer	**respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus, *2, tr. or intr.***
I check	**coerceō, *2, tr.***
I make restitution to *I appease*	**satisfaciō, satisfacere, satisfēcī, satisfactum, *3, intr.; dat.***
I keep away (from)	**prohibeō, *2, tr.*** { ***abl.*** **ab (ā) *w. abl.***
I am informed (of, about)	**certior fīō, fierī, factus sum, *intr.*** { **dē *w. abl.*** ***gen.***
necessary *urgent*	**necessārius, a, um**
client *dependent*	**cliēns, clientis, *m.***
each *each one*	**singulī, ae, a**
I go forth *I go out of*	**exeō, exīre, exiī, exitum, *intr.;* ex (ē) *or* dē *w. abl.***
all together	**ūniversī, ae, a**
I go to	**adeō, adīre, adiī, aditus, *tr.; acc. or* ad *w. acc.***
worth *esteem* *honor*	**dignitās, dignitātis**
rich	**dīves, dīves, dīvitis (dīvite, dītia, dīvitum)**
I come next *I succeed*	**succēdō, succēdere, successī, successum, *3, intr.*** { **ad *w. acc.*** ***dat.***
I retire	**concēdō, concēdere, concessī, concessum, *3, intr.;* ab (ā) *w. abl.***
mind	**mēns, mentis**
I spare	**parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus, *3, intr.; dat.***

I send away
I dismiss — **dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissus, *3, tr.***

I affect
I treat with — **afficiō, afficere, affēcī, affectus, *3, tr.; abl.***

I maintain
I nourish — **alō, alere, aluī, {altus, alitus,} *3, tr.***

I place aside
I lay down — **dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositus, *3, tr.***

battleship — **nāvis longa, nāvis longae**

hidden — **occultus, a, um**

I provoke
I harass — **lacessō, lacessere, lacessīvī, lacessītus, *3, tr.***

I bring to
I report — **afferō, afferre, attulī, allātus, *tr.***

I fill up (with) — **compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus, *2, tr.; abl.***

I undertake
I enter upon — **ineō, inīre, iniī, initus, *tr.***

prayers
entreaties — **precēs, precum, *f.***

I am lacking to — **dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, *intr.; dat.***

I break through — **perfringō, perfringere, perfrēgī, perfrāctus, *3, tr.***

middle — **medius, a, um**

rainstorm — **imber, imbris, *m.***

condition
terms
station — **condiciō, condiciōnis**

the common people
the masses — **plēbs, plēbis**

I accuse — **accūsō, *1, tr.***

I lessen — **minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtus, *3, tr. or intr.***

I besiege *I blockade*	**obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus, *2, tr.***
I am at hand *I hold out*	**suppetō, suppetere, suppetīvī, suppetītus, *3, intr.***
I complain of *I lament*	**queror, querī, questus sum, *3, tr.***
I turn about *I change*	**convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus, *3, tr.***
I drive together *I force* *I compel*	**cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, *3, tr.***
I snatch away *I save*	**ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus, *3, tr.*** — *dat. of person*; **ex (ē)** *w. abl.*; *abl.*
I forget	**oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum, *3, tr.*** — *gen. of persons*; *gen. or acc. of things*; *acc. of neuter prons. or adjs.*
I free *I liberate*	**līberō, *1, tr.***
I use force	**vim faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *3, tr.***
I lie	**jaceō, jacēre, jacuī, *2, intr.***
I set sail	**nāvem solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, *3, tr.***

LESSON 52

REVIEW

EXERCISE 1

EXERCISES IN IMITATION

(The word order and structure of the model sentence is to be imitated in the translation.)

Model A: **Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen dīvidit.**

1. This mountain divides the Helvetians from their *(eōrum)* neighbors.
2. This river divides the Germans from the Gauls.
3. Another river divides the Gauls from the Belgians.
4. The Rhone *(Rhodanus)* divides our province from the Helvetians.
5. Mountains divide Farther Gaul from Hither Gaul.

Model B: **Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae.**

1. Of all these soldiers the bravest is Labienus.
2. Of all these the most powerful are the Helvetians.
3. Of all the Helvetians the most powerful is Orgetorix.
4. Of all the Romans the noblest and most powerful was Caesar.
5. Of all these wars this was the greatest.

Model C: **Is, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus, conjūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit.**

1. This man, induced by the desire of power, betrayed the camp.
2. These men, alarmed by the message, made a conspiracy.
3. Caesar, induced by desire of victory, attacked the fortified camp.

4. Orgetorix, alarmed by Caesar's sudden arrival, fled.

5. The lieutenant, moved by a desire for glory, led his legion against the enemy.

Model D: **Quā dē causā minus lātē vagārī poterant.**

1. And for this reason they were not able to sustain the attack.

2. And therefore they were able to fight less bravely.

3. And for this reason they were less far *(longē)* away.

4. And for this reason they were less alarmed by his arrival.

5. And so they attacked less boldly.

Model E: **Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium nūntiāta.**

1. This victory was reported to Caesar through scouts.

2. This journey was reported to the Helvetians through informers.

3. His arrival was reported to the Helvetians through deserters.

4. The number of the soldiers was reported to the enemy through deserters.

5. This message was brought to Caesar through friends.

Model F: **Erant omnīnō itinera duo.**

1. There were altogether five legions in Farther Gaul.

2. There were altogether ten lieutenants in the army of Caesar.

3. There were altogether nine leading men in the state.

4. There are altogether three lakes in this place.

5. There were altogether five thousand men in the enemy's army.

Model G: **Haeduī sē suaque ab eīs dēfendere nōn poterant.**

1. The Romans could not defend their camp from them.

2. The Helvetians could not defend their fields from the Germans.
3. They could not defend the baggage from them.
4. He could not defend the province from the enemy.
5. The lieutenant could not defend the town from them.

Model H: Helvētiī, repentīnō ējus adventū commōtī, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt.

1. The Romans, alarmed by the number of the enemy, sent scouts to Caesar.
2. The Romans, alarmed by the sudden attack, sent the cavalry ahead.
3. The Helvetians, alarmed by the conspiracy, killed him.
4. The Helvetians, alarmed by Caesar's victory, sent envoys concerning surrender.
5. The enemy, alarmed by the bravery of the Romans, fled into the forts.

EXERCISE 2

Translate orally:

1. The grain was not ripe.
2. A few of *(dē)* our men fell.
3. He was killed by the cavalry.
4. They departed with ten legions.
5. The fields of the Helvetians were unoccupied.
6. I shall return on the sixth day.
7. He returned five days afterwards.
8. They surpass the other Gauls in courage.
9. He is the equal of the Romans in courage.
10. This field is much greater.
11. The army of the Helvetians is much smaller.
12. We deserve well of the Romans.
13. On the next day they broke through the fortifications.
14. They are hiding in the valley.
15. He sent the praetor to lead the tenth legion.

16. The lieutenant proposed this plan.
17. We were departing towards evening.
18. We shall be free from fear.
19. The soldiers were resisting the enemy.
20. We shall not injure your men.
21. Caesar spared neither men nor children.
22. This land was unknown to Caesar.
23. They were harassing our men in the valley.
24. I was drawing up the men in front of the camp.
25. You will fortify the left bank of this river.
26. Having been captured by the enemy, he was killed.
27. The allies who had brought help were praised.
28. They accused the magistrate.
29. The towns were all taken.
30. He became a praetor.
31. Two men were made consuls.
32. All these things are being done.
33. We shall go into the fields.
34. There was grain in the fields.
35. They boldly made the attack.
36. They did not fight long, however.
37. He killed the fugitives.
38. Alarmed by the message, they all fled.
39. The camp which was captured was on the right bank.
40. There were mountains on the left.
41. Who will go to Caesar?
42. With whom did you go?
43. We are becoming soldiers.
44. And for this reason they were alarmed.
45. They went into Italy.
46. You were crossing that river.
47. He attacked them crossing the river.
48. While crossing the river he saw the enemy.
49. There were more men in the camp.
50. Caesar surpassed the Gaul in courage.

LESSON 53

SEQUENCE OF TENSES; INDIRECT QUESTIONS

94; 121; 122

VOCABULARY

I ask *I beg* *I request*	**rogō, 1, tr.**
as great *how great*	**quantus, a, um**
near *close* *(near) relative*	**propinquus, a, um; *dat.***
present	**praesēns, praesēns, praesentis**
most *the majority*	**plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque**
for the most part *generally*	**plērumque, *adv.***
public	**pūblicus, a, um**
quiet *peaceful*	**quiētus, a, um**
like *similar*	**similis, e** { *dat.* / *gen. of person*
unlike *dissimilar*	**dissimilis, e; *dat.***
not only . . . but also	**nōn modo . . . sed etiam**
slow	**tardus, a, um**
shortly after midnight	**paulō post mediam noctem**
immediately *at once*	**statim, *adv.***

I betake myself	**mē (tē, sē) cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus, *1, tr.;* ad *w. acc.***
at about midnight	**dē mediā nocte**
during the night	**dē nocte**
during the third watch	**dē tertiā vigiliā**
late at night	**multā dē nocte**
at nightfall	**prīmā nocte**

EXERCISE 1

EXERCISES IN IMITATION

(The word order and structure of the model sentence is to be imitated in the translation.)

Model A: **Rogō quanta sit īnsulae magnitūdō.**

1. I ask how great is the army of the enemy.
2. I ask in what river the island is.
3. I ask to what place Caesar is going.
4. I ask on what hill the enemy is.

Model B: **Rogō quae vīderit.**

1. I ask what he did.
2. I ask who was the leader.
3. I ask in what place they have fought with the barbarians.
4. I ask who saw the scouts of the enemy.

Model C: **Rogāvī quō cōnsiliō ūterentur.**

1. I asked what arms they were using.
2. I asked what cities they were besieging.
3. I asked what they saw (*i. e.*, all the time).
4. I asked how large the island was *(see Model A above).*
5. I asked with what weapons they were killing the Gauls.
6. I asked by what road they were going to Rome.

Model D: Rogāvī quī adfuissent.

1. I asked what soldiers had come.
2. I asked how great the number of the enemy had been.
3. I asked what plan they had used.
4. I asked in what place they had pitched camp.
5. I asked with what legions Caesar had set out.
6. I asked how great the victory had been.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. Most tribes were peaceful.
2. I asked what cities had been pacified.
3. With Caesar present *(abl. absolute)*, the soldiers generally fought with the greatest courage.
4. He asks who my relatives are.
5. He attacked the enemy while they were crossing the river.
6. We shall ask who did this.
7. During the night Caesar led *(ēdūcō)* six legions out of camp.
8. At nightfall they asked who had drawn up troops on the next hill.
9. He is similar to Caesar.
10. Late at night Caesar drew up his troops in (battle) line to sustain the attack of the barbarians.
11. I see in what valley the legions of Caesar are.
12. Shortly after midnight public letters were brought to Caesar from Rome.
13. He was asking on what day Caesar would arrive. *(Use form in '-ūrus.')*
14. They immediately asked who Caesar was.
15. We were asking with whom he set out (*i.e.*, had set out).
16. You asked whom he injured (*i. e.*, had injured).
17. I shall ask him what cities he has pacified.
18. We saw who was with Caesar.
19. He saw what legions Caesar sent ahead.

20. Caesar reported what hills he had captured.

21. During the third watch not only the scouts but also the cavalry arrived in the town.

22. We heard which legions had taken the hills.

23. I heard in what valley they would pitch camp. *(Use form in '-ūrus.')*

24. They asked who were near the Germans.

25. The Romans asked them what terms of peace they wanted *(cupiō)*.

26. The messénger was slow.

27. He is unlike his brother.

28. At about midnight the messenger arrived.

29. He retired *(betook himself)* into the camp.

30. The Germans and Romans are dissimilar.

LESSON 54

SEMI-DEPONENTS; PURPOSE CLAUSES

59; 97

VOCABULARY

open *uncovered*	**apertus, a, um**
I fall back *I retreat*	**pedem referō, referre, retulī, relātus, *tr.***
ready *prepared*	**parātus, a, um**
I hinder *I encumber*	**impediō, *4*, *tr.***
meanwhile	**intereā, *adv.***
secretly	**clam, *adv.***
I build	**aedificō, *1*, *tr.***

EXERCISE 1

Translate:

1. Ausus sum.
2. Audēbat.
3. Solitus sum.
4. Solet.
5. Audēbit.
6. Gaudēbant.
7. Fīdam.
8. Gāvīsus erat.
9. Solēbās.
10. Ausī sunt.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. I rejoiced.
2. You will trust.
3. He was accustomed.
4. They dared.
5. He had rejoiced.
6. They were rejoicing.

7. We dared.
8. He will rejoice.
9. We trust.
10. They will dare.

EXERCISE 3

Translate:

1. When Gaul had been pacified, Caesar rejoiced.
2. Men have dared everything *(omnia)* to defend the state.
3. They made an attack on the open flank of the legions.
4. When Caesar was slain, his *(ējus)* enemies rejoiced.
5. They retreated at about midnight.
6. The enemy was not prepared.
7. They rejoiced on account of the victory.
8. The Gaul went to Caesar secretly.
9. You will rejoice after the victory.
10. The men were encumbered with baggage and arms.

EXERCISE 4

Translate:

1. They fought with the barbarians in order to pacify Gaul.
2. At about midnight the slow messenger arrived at the camp.
3. He will come with the remaining legions lest the barbarians defeat our cavalry.
4. He built a wall in front of the camp so that the soldiers might be able to sustain the attack.
5. When everything *(all things)* had been ascertained, the tenth legion attacked the army on *(from)* the uncovered flank.
6. After all Gaul had been pacified, a sudden war arose in Italy, and Caesar hastened to Rome to defend the city.
7. He sent scouts to ascertain *(who were to ascertain)* how large the army of the enemy was.
8. The troops were greatly hindered by (their) baggage.
9. After the attack had been made, the barbarians fell back and soon fled into the neighboring mountains.

10. Meanwhile he sent ahead the troops who were on guard duty so that the cavalry could more easily lay waste the fields of the Gauls.

EXERCISE 5

Translate:

1. They collected grain so that there would be a supply on the journey.
2. Caesar sent them home so that a space of time might intervene.
3. He built forts and stationed garrisons in order to resist them more easily.
4. They sent envoys to Caesar so that they might obtain the things they sought.
5. He stationed many men in front of the camp lest the enemy should attack it by night.
6. They sent ambassadors to ask for help.
7. They sent the cavalry ahead to await his arrival.
8. He will build a bridge to follow the enemy.
9. He turned his line of march away from the river to get grain from his allies.
10. He will leave Labienus behind to defend the camp.
11. He sent the lieutenant with two legions to pacify the Helvetians.
12. They collected arms into the towns to drive back the attack of the legions.
13. They gave hostages to strengthen the peace.
14. He stationed a cohort in that place to defend the open flank.
15. He stationed sentinels lest the enemy attack suddenly.

LESSON 55

NOUN CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

115

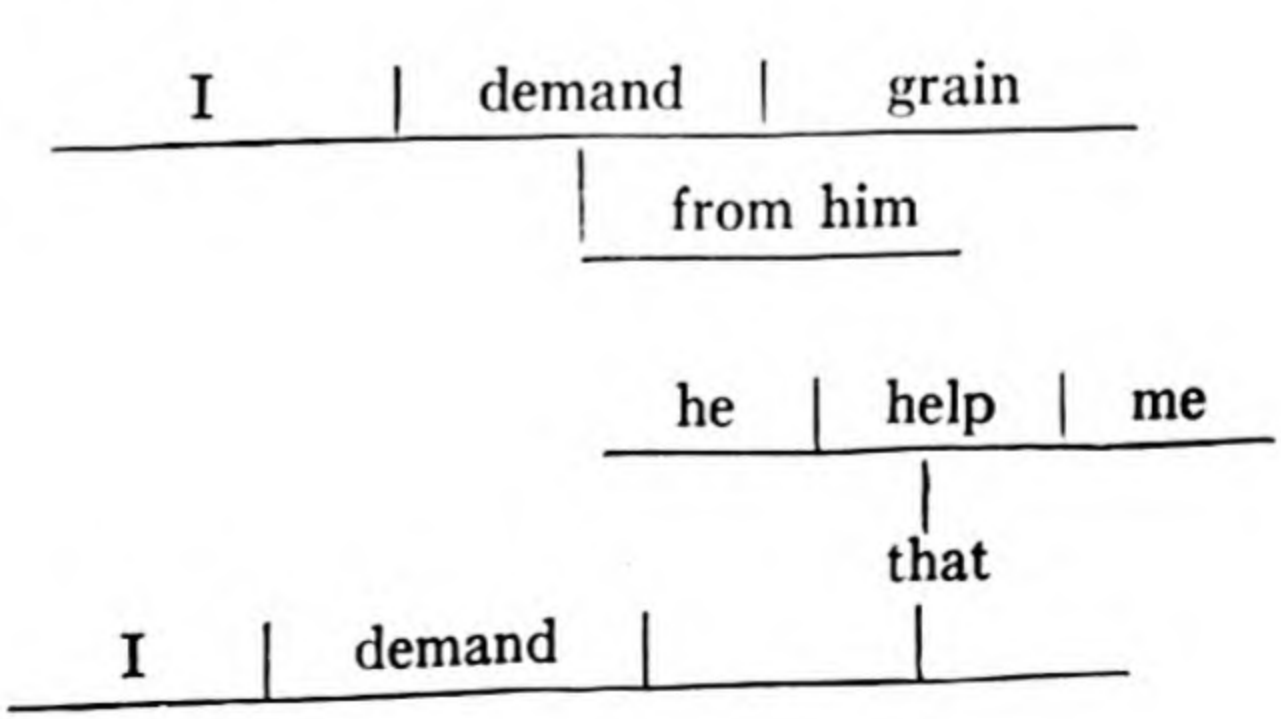
The clauses in Lesson 54 are adverbial clauses. There are, however, in Latin a number of verbs that take similar clauses (that is, clauses in the subjunctive, introduced by **ut** (**nē**) and following sequence) as objects, subjects, or appositives. Such clauses are called, naturally, *noun clauses of purpose.*

Compare:

I demand grain from him.
Ab eō frūmentum pōstulō.

I demand that he help me.
Pōstulō ab eō ut mē adjuvet.

In the first sentence the thing asked, the 'grain,' is the object of 'I demand.' In the second sentence the clause, 'that he help me,' has taken the place of 'grain' and is the thing asked. The *whole clause* is the object.



Such verbs will be indicated in the vocabularies thus:

I demand — pōstulō, *1, tr.* { ab (ā) *w. abl. of person* / *acc. of thing* / ut (nē)

VOCABULARY

I persuade — persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsum, *2, intr.* { *dat. of person* / ut (nē)

I advise — moneō, *2, tr.* { *acc. of person* / ut (nē)

I demand — pōscō, pōscere, popōscī, *3, tr.* { *acc.* / ab (ā) *w. abl.* } *of person* / *acc. of thing* / ut (nē)

I order / *I levy* — imperō, *1, tr.* { *dat. of person* / *acc. of thing* / ut (nē)

I demand — flāgitō, *1, tr.* { *acc.* / ab (ā) *w. abl.* } *of person* / *acc. of thing* / ut (nē)

I hand over / *I commission* — mandō, *1, tr.* { *dat. of person* / *acc. of thing* / ut (nē)

with great trouble — magnō negōtiō

with no trouble — nūllō negōtiō

I pay attention to — operam dō, dare, dedī, datus, *1, tr.* { *dat.* / ut (nē)

EXERCISE 1

EXERCISES IN IMITATION

(The word order and structure of the model sentence is to be imitated in the translation.)

Model A: **Cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent.**

1. He persuaded Caesar to come into Gaul with all his *(suus)* troops.
2. They will persuade us to come to Rome as soon as possible.
3. They persuaded the soldiers to fight with their own leaders.

Model B: **Huic mandat ut ad sē quam prīmum revertātur.**

1. He commissioned the praetor to go to Rome with the sixth legion.
2. They commissioned the soldier to make peace with the barbarians.
3. They commissioned the scouts to persuade the chiefs to attack the camp.

Model C: **Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitat.**

1. We demand ships from the Germans.
2. They demanded swords from the soldiers.
3. They shall demand grain from the Romans.
4. We demand hostages from the Gauls.

Model D: **Ab hīs obsidēs flāgitat.**

1. He demanded water from the Gauls.
2. He demanded the slaves who had fled to them.
3. We demand the envoys whom you have taken.
4. We demanded grain from the Gauls.

Model E: Multōs obsidēs eīs imperāvit.

1. He levied many horsemen on the province.
2. He levied grain on the allies.
3. They levied cavalry on all the states of Gaul.
4. He levied a thousand soldiers on the Gauls.

Model F: Lēgātīs imperāvit ut quam prīmum sē subsequerentur.

1. He ordered the Gauls to assemble *(come together)*.
2. He ordered the soldiers to withstand *(sustineō)* the attack of the cavalry on *(ē)* the flank.
3. He ordered the tenth legion to defend the baggage.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. He persuaded the Helvetians not to fight with the Germans.
2. He advised the Helvetians not to cross the river.
3. He ordered the lieutenant to defend the camp.
4. They advised the Haedui to defend themselves and their possessions *(things)* from the enemy.
5. He demanded that they go out of Gaul.
6. He commissioned the lieutenant to enroll new troops.
7. He demanded that the Haedui send him grain.
8. We demand that you defend us from the barbarians.
9. I shall persuade him not to march through the province.
10. I ordered him to depart at about midnight with two legions.
11. He advised them not to come into the province.
12. He handed over the town to the lieutenant.
13. With great trouble he persuaded the envoys to make peace.
14. He demanded that they surrender almost a hundred men.
15. I advised him to pitch camp close to the river.
16. We demanded that they hand over our slaves.
17. Caesar ordered them not to help the Helvetians.

18. With no trouble they drove back the barbarians.
19. We ordered them to march five days through Gaul.
20. On the fourth day he persuaded the Gauls to depart.
21. Within five days we shall demand that you surrender the town.
22. I advise you not to ask help from Caesar.
23. He was persuading them not to make war on their *(suus)* neighbors.
24. You will order them to depart during the third watch.
25. I persuaded him to spare your brother.

EXERCISE 3

State the constructions which follow these verbs:

parcō	dēsum	noceō
rogō	prohibeō	subsum
pōstulō	discēdō	mandō
persuādeō	trānseō	ēgredior
ūtor	satisfaciō	pōscō
flāgitō	certiōrem faciō	imperō

LESSON 56

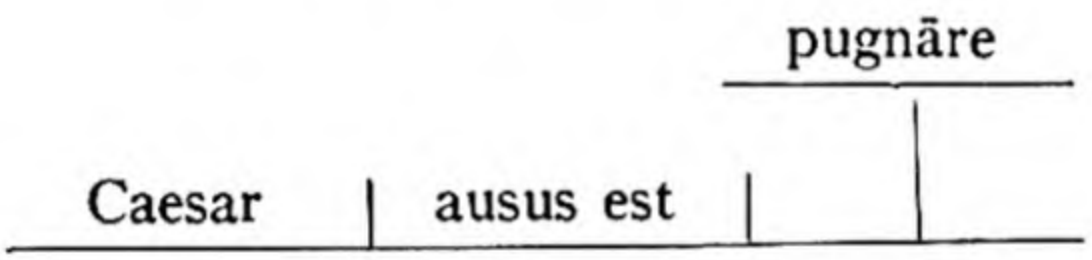
THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT AND SUBJECT

186

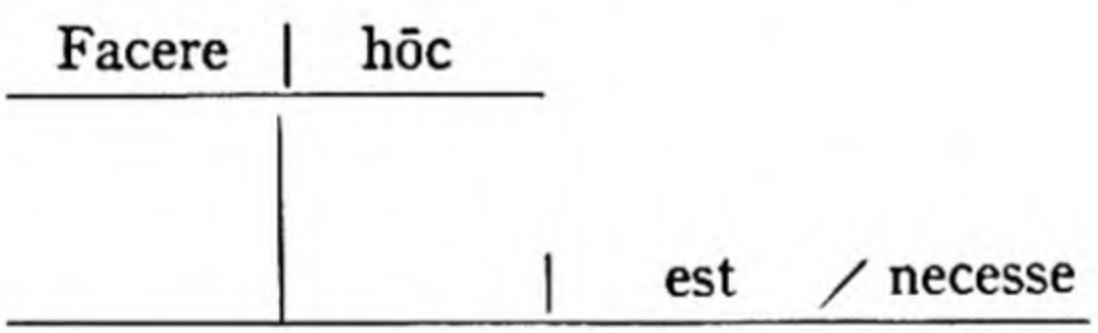
As shown in Lesson 55, there are verbs that take noun clauses of purpose as objects or subjects.

In the same way there are verbs that take an infinitive as object or subject.

Caesar dared to fight.
Caesar pugnāre ausus est (object).



It is necessary to do this.
Hōc facere necesse est (subject).



Such verbs will be found in the vocabulary thus:

I dare **audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *2, tr.; infin.***

VOCABULARY

I hasten — **mātūrō, *1, tr.; infin.***

I desist from, *I stop* — **dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, *3, intr.*** { ***abl.*** / ***infin.***

I owe *I ought*	**dēbeō, *2, tr.; infin.***
I approve *I prove*	**probō, *1, tr.***
I am well *I have power*	**valeō, valēre, valuī, *2, intr.***
I set up *I determine*	**statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus, *3, tr.; infin.***
I desire	**cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītus, *3, tr.; infin.***
I attempt *I try*	**cōnor, *1, tr.; infin.***
I have begun	**coepī, coepisse, coeptus, *3, tr.; infin. (No. 63)***
I seem	**videor, vidērī, vīsus sum, *2, intr.; infin.***
empty (of) *free (from)*	**vacuus, a, um; ab (ā) *w. abl.***
the other *the rest*	**cēterus, a, um**
I lead across	**trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductus, *3, tr.; 2 accs. or acc. and* trāns *w. acc.***

EXERCISE 1

EXERCISES IN IMITATION

(The word order and structure of the model sentence is to be imitated in the translation.)

Model A: **Mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī.**

1. They hastened to go into Gaul.
2. He hastened to lead the army across the river.
3. They hastened the journey.

Model B: **Cum Germānīs contendere statuit.**

1. He determined to go at once to Rome.

2. The Gauls determined to resist Caesar.
3. They will determine to fight against the Gauls.

Model C: **Tibi laudem dēbeō.**
Agrī vāstārī nōn dēbent.
Hōc facere nōn dēbēs.

1. We owe you thanks *(grātiās)*.
2. You ought not make war on us.
3. He ought to help the states of Gaul.
4. I ought not to be killed by a Roman.

Model D: **Eō cōnsiliō dēstitērunt.**
Frūmentum trādere dēstitērunt.

1. They desisted from flight.
2. They stopped fighting.
3. I shall desist from this plan.
4. He stopped building the bridge.

Model E: **Tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī cupiēbant.**

1. He desired to capture the consul.
2. We desired to go to Italy as soon as possible.
3. They desired to seize the nearest hill.

Model F: **Exercitum trāns flūmen trādūcere cōnātī sunt.**

1. We shall attempt to take the camp by storm.
2. They attempted to burn the works of the Romans.
3. They attempted to lead the troops through the province.

Model G: **Jam trānsīre flūmen coepērunt.**

1. The Gauls began to fall back.
2. The Romans began to pursue the fleeing enemy.
3. The barbarians began to attack the soldiers crossing the river.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. Our fields ought not to be laid waste in the sight of our wives and children.
2. And so they were able to wander about less widely.
3. He persuaded him to approve the plan.
4. Their fields did not seem large.
5. Their territory seemed narrow.
6. The soldiers seemed to be sick.
7. They determined to go out of their territory.
8. They determined to lead the rest (of the) soldiers across the river.
9. They determined to persuade other nations to go with them *(sēcum)*.
10. He persuaded the neighbors to go out with them.
11. They determined to demand hostages.
12. He persuaded him to seize the throne *(rēgnum)* in his own state.
13. They tried to cross the river secretly.
14. He persuaded the Helvetians to try the same thing.
15. You ought to defend the cities and fields of Gaul.
16. I am well and free from care.
17. They were not able to defend their fields from the Germans.
18. They were unable *(not able)* to cross the river.
19. They tried to do what they had decided upon.
20. He tried to burn the camp of the enemy.
21. They determined to set out with us.
22. We shall hasten to set out.
23. They ought to lead the soldiers across the river.
24. They tried to break through the fortifications.
25. They were not able to capture the hills.
26. They were unable *(not able)* to persuade the Helvetians to return home.
27. We decided to put him in charge of the sixth legion.

28. They determined to march through the land *(agrōs)* of the Haedui.

29. He hastened to go with these five legions.

30. They were trying to seize the higher positions *(loca)*.

31. They desired to arrive at Rome within eight days.

32. On that day he decided to conquer Gaul.

33. You ought to have fought more bravely.

34. They decided to send envoys to ask for terms of peace.

35. Induced by a desire for glory, he tried to take the hill with one legion.

36. You have deserved well of the Roman people.

37. Of all these men the most powerful was Orgetorix.

38. Our cities ought not to be burned in the sight of Caesar.

39. Setting out *(profectus)* from the camp during the third watch, he tried to take the camp by storm.

40. They were not able to follow the enemy at once.

41. We cannot lay down our arms.

42. Elated by this victory, they tried to drive Caesar's men out of the forest.

43. He was less able to make use of *(ūtor)* this grain.

44. They are very influential with *(apud, prep. w. acc.)* the common people.

45. Of all the cities of Italy the most beautiful is Rome.

46. He quickly dismissed the council.

47. This man tried to kill Caesar with a sword.

48. After ten days he determined not to await Caesar.

49. They had fled in the cavalry battle.

50. Alarmed by the sudden arrival of Caesar with the legions, they tried to flee into the forts, but they were captured by the cavalry and all killed.

EXERCISE 3

Translate:

1. I asked who he was.
2. I ordered them to depart.

3. I commissioned the lieutenant to bring in grain.
4. I persuaded them to fight with us against the Germans.
5. He ordered the lieutenant to enroll new legions.
6. On the fifth day he built a bridge.
7. This was reported to Caesar through informers.
8. Of all these peoples the most powerful are the Haedui.
9. Within two hours they will attack.
10. He collected arms to fight the Helvetians.
11. He fortified the camp so that he might repulse the enemy more easily.
12. They retreated after two hours.
13. At nightfall he stationed new sentinels lest the enemy attack during the night.
14. At about midnight he drew up his troops to await the attack of the enemy.
15. Late at night a messenger arrived from Rome.
16. During the third watch this tribe went out of the camp.
17. We asked how many men were in the city.
18. He did not see which legions were attacking.
19. We took part in that battle.
20. Having obtained a favorable time, he attacked.
21. We shall make war on the enemies of the Roman people.
22. He came to Caesar to obtain his request *(what he wished)* through him.
23. I see clearly how many men are on that hill.
24. When the signal had been given, the men marched into the town.
25. These men were on guard (duty) in front of the camp.
26. The camp was close to the river.
27. Almost fifty men were killed.
28. They followed us to harass the rear rank *(novissimum āgmen)*.
29. We ordered them to build a bridge over the river.
30. They were hurling javelins at our men as they advanced *(veniō)*.
31. The Gauls were in the forest without grain or water.

32. He asked at what hour Caesar would come. *(Use form in '-ūrus.')*
33. He surrendered to Caesar.
34. We shall come at once to help the cavalry.
35. We constructed a rampart on the left bank.
36. Shortly after midnight a messenger came into the camp.
37. He is unlike his brother.
38. They attacked our uncovered flank.
39. We are ready.
40. A sudden war arose in Gaul.
41. They attacked our men while encumbered and crossing the river.
42. After three hours they fell back to defend the baggage.
43. Meanwhile the cavalry were sent against the front line *(prīma aciēs)*.
44. These men will gain possession of the state.
45. I shall undertake the business *(rēs)*.
46. I demand that you surrender yourself and your possessions *(things)*.
47. He persuaded the Gauls not to retreat.
48. They persuaded the Gauls to use the same plan.
49. They handed over their arms to obtain peace.
50. When this war was over *(completed)*, there was peace in all Gaul.

LESSON 57

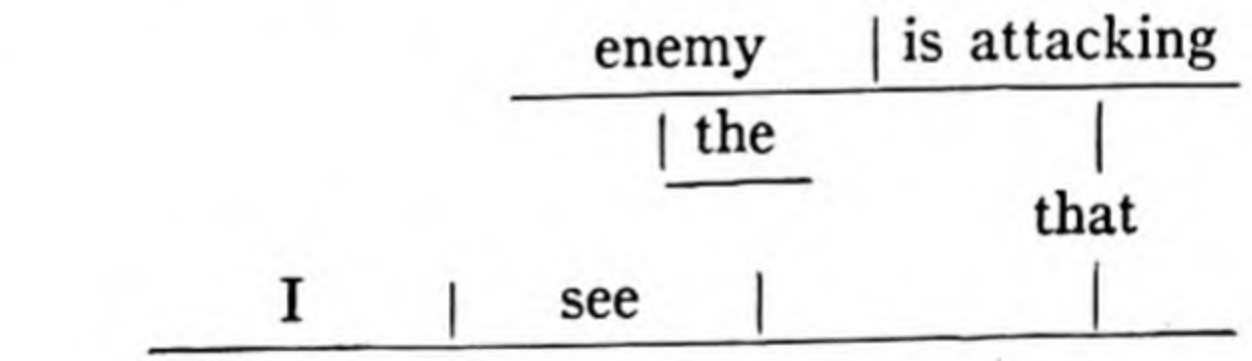
THE ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE

57; 95; 114

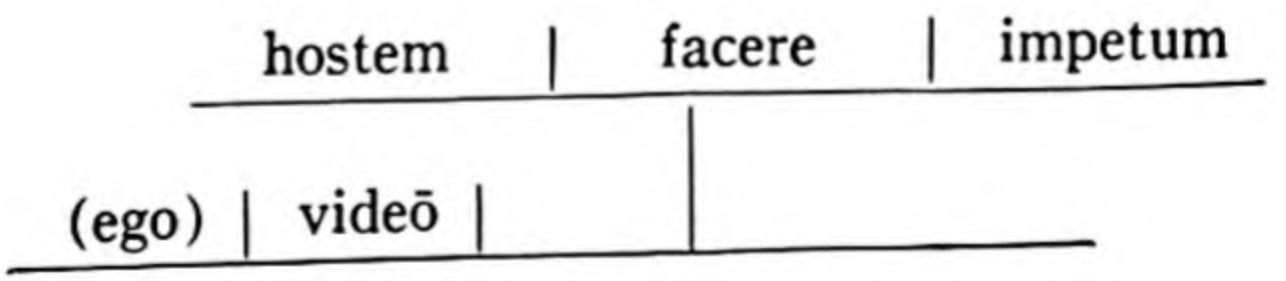
The commonest English noun clause is the one introduced by the conjunction 'that.' It follows verbs of seeing, hearing, saying, thinking, and the like.

A corresponding Latin construction which is used as a noun with a similar set of verbs is called the **accusative with the infinitive.** There is no conjunction; hence the English 'that' is ignored in translation. The subject of the noun clause is put in the accusative and the verb in the infinitive. The tense of the infinitive is determined by relation as in participles.

I see that the enemy is attacking *(used here as object).*



Videō hostem impetum facere.
(I see the enemy to be attacking.)



NOTE

Some verbs may take more than one construction:

I wish **volō, velle, voluī, *tr.*** { ***acc.*** / ***acc. w. infin.*** / **ut (nē)** / ***infin.***

I wish (for) fame.
Glōriam volō.

I wish to go.
Īre volō.

I wish you to go.
Tē īre volō.
Volō (ut) eās.

VOCABULARY

I reply, *I answer* — **respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus, *2, tr.; acc. w. infin.***

I feel, *I think*, *I perceive* — **sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.***

I find out, *I discover* — **reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.**** / **comperiō, comperīre, comperī, compertus, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.***

I think — **exīstimō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.***

I order — **jubeō, jubēre, jussī, jussus, *2, tr.; acc. w. infin.***

I think — **arbitror, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.***

I learn — **discō, discere, didicī, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.***

I think — **putō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.***

I judge, *I decide* — **jūdicō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.***

I know	**sciō, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.***
I entrust *I trust* *I believe*	**crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, *3, tr.*** { ***acc. of thing*** ***dat. of person*** ***acc. w. infin.***
I say	**dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.***
I become acquainted with *I ascertain*	**cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.***
I notice *I attend to*	**animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animadversus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.***
I understand	**intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.***
it behooves (translate: 'I ought to')	**oportet, oportēre, oportuit, *2, intr.; acc. w. infin.***

EXERCISE 1

EXERCISES IN IMITATION

(The word order and structure of the model sentence is to be imitated in the translation.)

Model A: **Respondērunt Galliam nōn esse Caesaris.**

1. They answered that the leader was cruel.
2. They answered that they *(sē)* would wait *(future infinitive)* for him.
3. They answered that the Gauls would give him hostages.
4. I answer that I am free.
5. They answered that they were slaves.

Model B: **Ea esse vēra repperit.**

1. He discovered that he was eager for kingly power.
2. They discovered that the Belgians were ready for *(ad)* war.
3. They discovered that a conspiracy had been formed *(made)* by the soldiers.

Model C: **Perīculum adesse sēnsit.**

1. He felt that the soldiers were unwilling to fight.
2. He perceived that the barbarians were hostile to him *(sibi)*.

Model D: **Omnem Galliam pācātam esse exīstimāvit.**

1. He thought all Italy had been pacified.
2. He thought the Gauls had drawn up the troops.
3. He thought the Gauls would send envoys.
4. He thought the Gauls were sending envoys.

Model E: **Mīlitēs hostēs cōnfestim subsequī jussit.**

1. He ordered the cavalry to go into the province.
2. He ordered the Gauls to give him *(sibi)* hostages.
3. They ordered Caesar to surrender *(surrender himself)*.

Model F: **Eōs esse cīvēs Rōmānōs dīxit.**

1. He said Gaul was a Roman province.
2. He said the fresh troops would soon come.
3. He said they would be defeated by the legions.

Model G: **Gallōs obsidēs dare oportet.**

1. I ought *(it behooves me)* to go to Rome.
2. We ought to surrender.
3. They ought to go with the soldiers.
4. The allies ought to give Caesar grain.
5. We ought to fight bravely.
6. They ought to defend the towns and the fields.
7. The wicked soldiers ought to be killed.
8. The enemy ought to be defeated.

EXERCISE 2

Translate:

1. He found (out) that these things were true.

2. He said that it was easy to do this.
3. He ordered all the arms to be carried out of the camp.
4. They noticed that the enemy was near.
5. He heard that these peoples had been pacified.
6. We hear that the Helvetians have determined to go out of their territory.
7. They said they *(sē)* would march through the province.
8. Caesar asked who was in charge of the troops.
9. They were not able to capture the town which the enemy had fortified.
10. The praetor captured the fugitives.
11. They said they had no other route *(no other route* [*iter*] *was to them)*.
12. You ought to go to Rome.
13. I cannot give them a passage *(iter)* through the province.
14. I understand that I cannot trust him.
15. He answered that he would prevent *(prohibeō)* them.
16. He wished these hills to be seized by the same legions.
17. The Haedui have always deserved well of Caesar.
18. They hid in the neighboring hills.
19. The Helvetians, alarmed by his arrival, sent envoys about peace.
20. He wishes to become acquainted with those islands.
21. He says he will make peace with the Helvetians.
22. The Helvetians said they would go into the province.
23. The grain was not ripe.
24. Of all the roads this is the most difficult.
25. These men are very influential with *(apud, prep. w. acc.)* the soldiers.
26. He did not want *(nōlō)* these things to be discussed.
27. He quickly dismissed the council.
28. He ascertains that all these things are true.
29. He finds out that he has formed *(made)* a conspiracy.
30. He speaks more boldly in secret *(sēcrētō)*.
31. He found out that this man was maintaining a large number of cavalry.

32. He was very influential with *(apud, prep. w. acc.)* the magistrates.

33. He found out that he was very influential with his neighbors.

34. They said he was desirous of the throne *(rēgnum)*.

35. They were informed that Caesar was a friend of the Roman people.

36. The beginning of the flight had been made by Dumnorix.

37. They said that the beginning of the flight had been made by a Gaul.

38. He determined to go with them.

39. He orders this man to be summoned.

40. I know all those things are true.

41. He said he knew all those things were true.

42. Weeping, he sought help from Caesar.

43. When this war was over *(completed)*, they all praised Caesar and the legions.

44. He said that he would help him.

45. This was reported to the enemy through fugitives.

46. The Helvetians, having changed their plan, made a sudden attack.

47. They began to harass our rear rank *(novissimum āgmen)*.

48. He ordered the troops to be drawn up in line *(aciēs)*.

49. He ordered the (soldiers') packs to be carried to one place.

GENERAL REVIEW EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1

EXERCISES IN IMITATION

(The word order and structure of the model sentence is to be imitated in the translation.)

Model A: **Hōrum omnium fortissimī erant Belgae.**

1. Of all these men the bravest was Caesar.
2. Of all these generals the greatest was Caesar.
3. Of all the Romans the noblest was Caesar.
4. Of all these the richest was Orgetorix.
5. Of all the cities of Gaul the strongest was Gergovia.
6. Of all the nations the most powerful were the Belgians.
7. Of all the cities of Italy the most beautiful is Rome.
8. Of all those wars the greatest was not this war.
9. Of all these opinions the most violent was Caesar's.

Model B: **Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs.**

1. Italy is divided into many parts.
2. The United States *(Cīvitātēs Foederātae)* are divided into forty-eight (Nos. 28, 30) parts.
3. The whole state is divided into four clans *(regions)*.
4. A legion is divided into ten cohorts.
5. The Roman Empire *(imperium)* was divided *(pluperfect)* into many provinces.

Model C: **Is, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus, conjūrātiōnem fēcit.**

1. Caesar, induced by a desire for glory, waged war with the Gauls.
2. The lieutenant, induced by a desire for honor, attacked the hill alone.

3. The Gauls, induced by a desire for peace, sent envoys to Caesar.
4. The Germans, moved by a desire for new land, crossed the Rhine.
5. The Gaul, moved by a desire for the throne *(kingly power)*, killed the king.
6. The soldiers, moved by a desire for honor, fought bravely.
7. Generals, moved by a desire for glory, always seek and desire victory.

Model D: **Itaque eum ad sē vocārī jubet.**

1. And so he orders the fugitives to be killed.
2. And so they ordered him to be thrown into chains.
3. And so you ordered the hill to be seized.
4. And so he orders the man to go.
5. And so he orders the grain to be burned.
6. And so they order the fields to be laid waste.
7. And so he orders the cavalry to be sent ahead.
8. And so they order the senate to be praised.
9. And so they order arms to be got ready.
10. And so he ordered a bridge to be built.
11. And so they ordered scouts to be sent.
12. And so he orders fortifications to be made.
13. And so we order the king to be captured.
14. And so you ordered ships to be built.
15. And so we ordered the plan to be changed.

Model E: **Aliud iter habēmus nūllum.**

1. We have no other friend.
2. He has no other plan.
3. They have no other city.
4. They have no other daughter.
5. Caesar has no other camp.
6. The Helvetians have no other fields.
7. We desire no other fields.

8. We desire no other route *(iter)*.
9. We desire no other leader.
10. We praise no other soldier.

Model F: Dē hāc rē Caesar certior factus est.

1. Caesar was informed about this victory.
2. The lieutenant was informed of the flight of the enemy.
3. The leader was informed of the lack of water.
4. The enemy were informed of the number of Caesar's troops.
5. The leader was informed about the plan of the enemy.
6. The troops were informed of the speech of Caesar.
7. Caesar was informed about the attack of the Helvetians.

Model G: Mīlitēs, ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs, facile hostium aciem perfrēgērunt.

1. The soldiers, when the cavalry had been sent out of the camp, easily captured the fort.
2. The ditch having been filled with timber, the soldiers easily took the camp by storm.
3. The soldiers, having thrown their javelins, easily repulsed the cavalry.
4. The soldiers easily sustained the attack after the cavalry had been stationed on the right.
5. When the javelins had been thrown from the camp, the soldiers easily drove back the cavalry of the enemy.

Model H: Prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum contendērunt.

1. Having set out from the camp of Caesar at dawn, the cavalry hastened to the river.
2. Having set out from Rome on the tenth day, Caesar hastened to the legions.
3. Having set out from Sicily on the fourth day, they soon arrived at Rome.

4. Having gone out of their own territory, they were driven back by Caesar.

5. Having set out from Italy, Caesar hastened as quickly as possible into Farther Gaul.

Model I: **Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō,**
tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī
ad Caesarem convēnērunt
ut eī grātulārentur.

1. After this battle had been fought,
the chiefs of almost all Gaul
came to Caesar
to ask peace.

2. After this message had been heard,
the soldiers of the tenth legion
came to Caesar
to demand a battle.

3. After this victory had been reported,
the lieutenants of the whole army
came to Caesar
to praise the bravery of the soldiers.

4. After the number of the troops had been reported,
the leading men of almost the whole state
came to the lieutenant
to give hostages.

5. After all Gaul had been pacified,
the leading men of the senate
came to Caesar
to congratulate him.

6. After all these men had died,
the leaders of the Gauls
came to the lieutenant
to beg water and grain.

EXERCISE 2

Translate orally:

1. He was a brave king.
2. These are the children of the brave king.
3. The children see the king daily.
4. The children often weep.
5. The children of the Gaul are at Rome.
6. I informed the children that the king was away.
7. The king had survived.
8. There was a sudden war in Gaul.
9. The Gauls were desirous of liberty.
10. There were many Gauls in the province.
11. There was a disturbance in the province.
12. We were in the province during those ten days.
13. The lieutenant was in charge of the legions.
14. He killed the chiefs of many tribes.
15. Orgetorix was not ruling the Helvetians.
16. At first he was not able to drive back the Helvetians.
17. The envoy awaited the arrival of Caesar.
18. The Gauls feared Caesar.
19. And so they fled, alarmed by his sudden arrival.
20. The Germans also will soon fear him.
21. He did not fear to hurt *(offend)* the feelings *(animōs)* of the Germans.
22. The Belgians surpass the other Gauls in courage.
23. I remember the disasters of the Romans.
24. He fortified the camp with a wall.
25. This man is not acceptable to the Gauls.
26. He passed *(led)* his life in Gaul.
27. Induced by a desire for honor, he fought bravely.
28. Having hurled the darts, they attacked with swords.
29. He persuaded the others to go out with them.
30. He came into Caesar's power.
31. They went boldly into the camp of the Helvetians.
32. Many men are desirous of wealth.

33. There was a lack of water on the island.
34. This is the opinion of the common people.
35. He heard the voice of Caesar.
36. We hear the cries *(vōcēs)* of the soldiers.
37. He moved towers to the wall of the town.
38. On the tenth day he brought the message.
39. I will depart from Rome soon.
40. Sometimes the Gauls defeat the Romans.
41. They fortified all the towns with ditches.
42. They went out of the camp by night.
43. He arranged the sentinels.
44. There was a supply of grain on the journey.
45. There were barbarians on the road.
46. Induced by a desire for *(of)* power, he formed *(made)* a conspiracy.
47. He knew the nature of the place.
48. They discovered a place suitable for a camp.
49. He led his troops through the field of the enemy.
50. He constructed a wall.
51. They awaited the attack of the barbarians.
52. Induced by the lack of water, the Helvetians surrendered.
53. He did not praise the crime of the envoy.
54. This crime will be the cause of war.
55. The crimes of the lieutenant were the cause of the disturbance in the province.
56. Throughout the whole city the Romans fought with the Gauls.
57. He wished to know the regions of Britain.
58. He sent scouts to learn the site of the city.
59. He captured the booty of the barbarians.
60. They could not sustain the attack of our men.
61. At the setting of the sun they departed.
62. At the third hour they came into the town.
63. They tried to break through the ranks of our men.
64. The enemy were approaching the camp.
65. But Caesar held his soldiers in the camp.

66. He defended his wife.
67. They fought bitterly.
68. The Romans were victorious *(victors)*.
69. Contrary to the expectation of everyone, the Gauls were victorious.
70. He was a very great horseman.
71. Contrary to the expectation of everyone, they arrived during the third watch.
72. The river was five feet from the camp.
73. Contrary to the expectation of everyone, the cavalry fled.
74. They spoke secretly with Caesar.
75. He enrolled as many legions as possible.
76. These legions have recently been enrolled.
77. He came as quickly as possible.
78. He stationed the tenth legion in front of the camp.
79. Contrary to the expectation of everyone, the barbarians did not attack.
80. He led his troops through the province.
81. They set sail from Sicily at dawn.
82. They delayed at Athens for ten days.
83. For five months they waged war with the Germans.
84. They fought almost daily battles with the Germans.
85. They were at Rome a long time.
86. I will propose my plan.
87. They fought with the Romans on land and sea.
88. You have done well.
89. This is the plan of the war.
90. He built many forts on the right bank of the river.
91. Setting out from Rhodes, they soon arrived at Rome.
92. This answer having been given, they went home.
93. You have done best.
94. Contrary to the expectation of everyone, Caesar did not arrive.
95. He sent troops to defend the baggage.
96. We will get the arms ready.
97. The light-armed soldiers were sent to the camp.

98. I surrender myself and the city.
99. They were conspiring.
100. These are the most powerful peoples in Gaul.

EXERCISE 3

Translate:

1. He is a just man.
2. This is a just cause of war.
3. There was a squadron of cavalry between them and the river.
4. He summoned many leading men of Gaul to the same place.
5. Caesar, however, did not come.
6. I will save the state.
7. They brought the letter to Caesar.
8. The senate sent letters to Caesar.
9. They were fortifying their towns.
10. These tribes dwell across the Rhine.
11. The beginning of the flight was made by a Gaul.
12. He will spare neither wives nor children.
13. He will not spare the conquered.
14. Caesar did not spare the captured Gauls.
15. We will resist the barbarians.
16. The Gauls resisted the praetor.
17. But they did not resist Caesar for a long time.
18. He defended the baggage with great care.
19. The cavalry of the enemy came to the gates.
20. He feared plots in the army.
21. There was an ambush in the forest.
22. These fields are unoccupied.
23. He came with the greatest speed.
24. He departed as quickly as possible.
25. Contrary to the expectation of everyone, he did not set sail.
26. He led the troops with great diligence.
27. He persuaded the king and the magistrates.
28. He ordered the (soldiers') packs brought into one place.

29. They were harassing our rear rank *(novissimum āgmen)*.
30. He was unwilling to lay down his arms.
31. We will not lay down our arms.
32. He captured the citadel.
33. At about midnight he took the citadel by storm.
34. He praised the self-control of the lieutenant.
35. They were leading their troops through the narrow passes.
36. They hid in *(into)* the grove.
37. On account of this delay they could not follow the enemy.
38. He praised the good fortune of the soldiers.
39. They pitched camp in a low place.
40. There were many beasts of burden in the towns of the Gauls.
41. He built many ships on the river.
42. The slaves were captured by the cavalry.
43. This man is an enemy of Caesar.
44. Induced by the speech of the ambassador, he made peace.
45. The troops were led out of winter quarters.
46. He praised the benefits of the Haedui.
47. There was one hope of safety.
48. We have no other hope of safety.
49. I remember our former bravery.
50. He praised the former glory of the Roman people.
51. They delayed here two days.
52. Having obtained good weather, they set sail.
53. Overcome *(commōtī)* with panic, they fled.
54. They were held in by high mountains.
55. He fought for the sake of liberty.
56. He did not wish these things discussed.
57. He came quickly.
58. I cannot check these men.
59. On account of the crimes of the lieutenant, the Gauls made war on the Romans.
60. He drew up the troops in front of the camp.
61. There were rainstorms for five successive days.
62. The cavalry were on the right.

63. He was killed by an arrow.
64. I answered that I was unwilling to go with Caesar.
65. They hurled darts at *(in, prep. w. acc.)* our men.
66. He was unarmed.
67. The soldiers were daring.
68. The cavalry were repulsed.
69. He was worthy of honor.
70. They made the attack with the greatest boldness.
71. He had many sorrows.
72. They were stationed in the lowest part of the valley *(īmā valle)*.
73. These regions were unknown to the Romans.
74. He sent many battleships to Britain.
75. This was a greater battle.
76. We are not handing over the arms.
77. This is the best plan.
78. He thought this was the best plan.
79. The speech of the consul was violent.
80. Moved by the prayers of the Gaul, he spared his brother.
81. Caesar was a better general.
82. This was the greatest danger.
83. Meanwhile the Helvetians renewed the battle.
84. They did not wish to hand over the deserters.
85. The fugitives escaped to the mountains.
86. The consul was very careful.
87. His power had been lessened by the arrival of Caesar.
88. He was complaining of the crimes of the consul.
89. The soldier was safe.
90. They forced him to speak.
91. He fought against my will.
92. The soldiers made the attack all together.
93. The leaders were deliberating about the plan of battle.
94. He was silent.
95. They will be silent.
96. This crime was most base.
97. After they had been wounded, they retreated.

98. He held back the cavalry.
99. In what place will the soldiers spend the winter?
100. He fortified the camp with a rampart.

EXERCISE 4

Translate:

1. They were crossing the river by a ford.
2. The enemy will lay waste the fields far and wide.
3. They will take the town by force.
4. He heard frequent reports.
5. He was very influential with *(**apud**, prep. w. acc.)* the common people.
6. The enemy are beyond the river.
7. These tribes were wandering about in Gaul.
8. The last town of the Helvetians is on the river.
9. I will make restitution to the leader.
10. After the battle the soldiers were weary.
11. We had attacked the column in the valley.
12. This disaster is worse.
13. A few were slain.
14. On the following day he saw the Helvetians crossing the river.
15. He turned his course *(iter)* away from the river.
16. We will undertake the business *(rēs)*.
17. Who will take the town?
18. When the battle had been fought, fresh troops arrived.
19. They were forming *(making)* conspiracies.
20. Neither the leader nor the soldiers saw the ambush.
21. They were crossing the river with skiffs.
22. He was the leading man of the embassy.
23. He summoned his dependents.
24. Kings fear revolutions.
25. Italy was peaceful.
26. He is unlike his father.
27. They will gain possession of Gaul.

28. We were helping the Romans.
29. The soldiers fought without fear.
30. We captured the hill without difficulty.
31. He hastened to set out.
32. They had stopped fighting.
33. I ought to go with you.
34. We had led the army across the rivers.
35. I see clearly the number of the enemy.
36. I persuaded the father to come with us.
37. I demand our slaves.
38. I demand grain of you.
39. At nightfall I will follow you.
40. They were falling back.
41. Afterwards he spoke with the leader secretly.
42. Meanwhile the fresh troops set sail for Britain.
43. I understand the plan of the enemy.
44. This is an important message.
45. I know *(cognōscō)* the man.
46. I said that I knew the man.
47. I judge that the enemy will attack at dawn.
48. He ordered them to collect timber.
49. I think Caesar is a great general.
50. The attack was sudden.
51. They burned all our grain.
52. I was a thousand paces away.
53. He was captured with all his household.
54. He drove back the barbarians.
55. The deserter disclosed Caesar's plan.
56. He praised the remarkable courage of the soldiers.
57. He feared the punishment.
58. I avoided the weapons of the enemy.
59. He will come as quickly as possible to help you.
60. When all the merchants had been called together, Caesar demanded grain.
61. He left (behind) a strong garrison to defend the ships.
62. He was arousing the tribes of Gaul.

63. At dawn they fought in an unfavorable place.
64. For five days they burned the neighboring villages.
65. I am a free man.
66. This river flows between the mountains.
67. They arrived at the same port during the third watch.
68. He was the bravest man in Italy.
69. We have no other road.
70. They were driven back by the onset *(concursus)* of the tenth legion.
71. Who dwell in that place?
72. On account of the cold he did not lead his men out of winter quarters.
73. The Belgians were besieged for ten days.
74. Their territory seemed small *(narrow)* to them.
75. They determined to set out from home.
76. He exhorted the soldiers not to surrender.
77. They marched far into the night.
78. He answered that he was a free man.
79. I asked your opinion.
80. He put Labienus in charge of the fortification which he had made.
81. He was skilled in these matters *(rēs)*.
82. I think our territory is small *(narrow)*.
83. Our cities ought not be burned in the sight of Caesar.
84. He sent scouts to learn the number of the enemy.
85. We shall find out who was in that place.
86. I desire to go with you.
87. He will depart neither with you nor with him.
88. We were besieged, not only for a few hours, but for days.
89. Just as they were about to enter the forest Caesar attacked.
90. The soldiers were elated when they had been praised by Caesar.
91. You shall be conquered by the Roman soldiers.
92. He is not equal to you in knowledge.
93. They surpass the other Gauls in courage.

94. He arrived nine days after the battle.

95. They came with great boldness.

96. He hastened into Gaul with as many legions as possible.

97. Of all these the boldest was Orgetorix.

98. He enrolled as many legions as possible.

99. When they had discovered a place suitable for a camp, they pitched camp and delayed in that place five days so that the enemy could not cross the river.

100. When this war was finished *(completed)*, Caesar sent his soldiers to Rome to defend the senate.

THE HELVETIAN WAR

AS REPORTED BY JULIUS CAESAR
GOVERNOR OF THE ROMAN PROVINCE
AND
COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF OF THE ROMAN
ARMIES IN GAUL

—*Courtesy of Metro-Goldwyn-Mayer*

THE SHADOW OF A CONQUEROR FALLS ACROSS EUROPE

On the map of Gaul as Caesar describes it in his opening lines there falls for the first time in recorded history the shadow of a great conqueror. As the years march on the silhouette changes to that of successive Roman emperors, to the broad and burly Charlemagne, to the Hidalgo Philip II of Spain, to Richelieu and the Grand Monarch, to the short figure of Napoleon—and still today the shadows merge and change over Europe.

THE HELVETIAN "DRIVE-TO-THE-WEST"

About two thousand years ago, some half a century before our Lord was born, Rome had conquered a great part of the lands around the Mediterranean. Spain and northern Africa, Greece, and the peoples of Asia Minor recognized her imperial rule. But toward the north, stretching beyond the Alps into what is now France and Belgium, there lay a yet unconquered and, in part at least, unknown country. Its southern portion had been subdued and was now a province of Rome, but outside its borders were numerous semibarbarous Celtic tribes ruled by petty chiefs or local parties, much like the native states that today border upon the British dominion in India. This land of Gaul had for centuries been feared by the Romans, for from it the Celts had descended on Italy in raid after raid. Once, long before, they had burned the city itself, and often, in subsequent years, they had been stopped only by desperate battles on the road to Rome. Through Gaul the Germans had come, when consular armies had fallen victims to them some fifty years earlier. Hence the Roman province that bordered this land of mystery and hostility was an important buffer state, the first bulwark of the Empire against barbarian invasion.

In 59 B. C. Julius Caesar, an exceedingly clever politician, managed to gain the appointment as governor of the Gallic province as well as of the Lombard plain and Illyricum. What he intended when he intrigued for the position can hardly be stated with certainty, but he acted from the first as though his appointment were a mandate to conquer all Gaul and break forever the threat of invasion. From the outset he showed himself a master, manipulating the tribal chiefs and councils in his favor, intriguing against the parties and princes that opposed him, and dictating to the dreaded warriors of the German forests and to their leader in Gaul, Ariovistus.

In a series of brilliant campaigns, with a handful of disciplined men (perhaps 50,000, generally less; the Helvetians alone numbered 350,000 people, the Nervii claimed 60,000 fighting men, Ariovistus had brought 120,000 Germans into Gaul), he crushed the Gauls and put a stop to German invasion for generations.

The story of this masterly achievement Caesar himself has left us in a crisp military report called *Commentaries on the Gallic War*. The account of his first campaign, that against the Helvetians, is printed here in abbreviated form.

The Helvetians were a Gallic tribe living in what is now Switzerland. Pushing at their backs were the ever-bothersome Germans, and they themselves felt confined in all-too-small a territory by the rivers and mountains that formed their natural boundaries. They decided, therefore, to migrate in a body to more promising lands in western Gaul. But their removal would leave an opening for the Germans, and the movement of so great a mass of people would endanger the Province and, indeed, the peace of all Gaul.

So Caesar determined to stop them. Thus he began his term as governor with an expedition into the hinterland beyond his province, a blow that was aimed at Celt and German alike.

CAST OF CHARACTERS IN ORDER OF APPEARANCE

BELGAE, the Belgians, in northwestern Gaul.

AQUITANI, the Aquitanians, inhabitants of southwestern Gaul, just north of the Pyrennes.

GALLI, the Gauls, inhabiting the central part of what is now France.

GERMANI, the Germans, inhabitants of the lands beyond the Rhine, fierce and warlike.

HELVETII, the Helvetians, clans dwelling in what is now Switzerland.

ORGETORIX, a rich and ambitious noble of the Helvetians.

CASTICUS, a noble of the Sequani, with a hankering after political power.

DUMNORIX, a leader of the anti-Roman party among the Haedui. He entertains personal political ambitions and is, above all, determined to stop the Roman expansion into Gaul.

HAEDUI, the Haedui, a tribe living north of the Province and allied to Rome.

RAURACI, TULINGI, LATOBRIGI — Gallic tribes, neighbors of the Helvetians, whom they joined in the trek westward.

BOII, the Boii, a Gallic tribe that had long ago crossed to the east bank of the Rhine and was, when our story opens, dwelling in parts of modern Austria. They joined the Helvetians in the great migration and, after the latters' defeat, were allowed by Caesar to settle on land in central Gaul given them by the Haedui.

SEQUANI, the Sequani, a Gallic tribe north of the Province.

ALLOBROGES, the Allobroges, a tribe within the Province, completely under Roman control.

NAMMEIUS, VERUCLOETIUS — distinguished Helvetians.

SANTONES, the Santones, a tribe near the mouth of the *Garumna* (Garonne).

TOLOSATES, the Tolosates, inhabitants of Tolosa (now Toulouse).

TITUS LABIENUS, Caesar's most trusted lieutenant, a man of courage and sound judgment.

CEUTRONES
GRAIOCELI
CATURIGES
VOCONTII
} Gallic mountain tribes.

SEGUSIAVI, the Segusiavi, a tribe neighboring the lands of the Allobroges and the Haedui.

DIVICO, a distinguished Helvetian and a general of some ability.

LISCUS, the chief magistrate (the *Vergobret*) of the Haedui. A true friend to Caesar and the Romans.

DIVITIACUS, brother of Dumnorix and his political rival; a Roman sympathizer among the Haedui.

GAIUS VALERIUS PROCILLUS, a Romanized Gaul; a distinguished citizen of the Province and a close friend of Caesar.

LINGONES, the Lingones, a people in central Gaul. Their chief city was on the site of the modern Langres.

PRELUDE

" . . . Things look pretty bad up here. A particularly dangerous tribe of Gauls in the mountains north of here are bent on some mischief or other. Why can't these border tribes stay put! (By the way, you should see *those mountains*. Your little Roman hills are quite out of it.) Some think these obstreperous Gauls will be moving through the province. Not so good. The government is evidently making preparations. Troops are being enrolled, and there is activity along the Rhone *(Rhodanus)*—or so the reports say. The new governor, Julius Caesar (you've seen him in Rome no doubt—an attractive fellow, sharp-eyed and, I would say, not a man to be trifled with), came up suddenly. I'd advise

curtailing our operations till this thing blows over . . ."—*An excerpt from an imaginary letter sent by a commercial agent in Transalpine Gaul to his main office in Rome.*

THE SCENE OF OPERATIONS

From his tent somewhere in Gaul Caesar sent on to Rome this crisp, brief description of the scene of his campaigns. Little did he think that this was but a prelude to a long history of military operations in the 'cockpit' of Europe—France. On the Loire (Caesar's *Liger*) in 732 the march of Mohammedan invasion was stopped by the Christian forces under Charles Martel. Through the passes and up the valleys so well known to Caesar the Revolutionary armies of France and of Napoleon marched and countermarched. At the Marne (known to Caesar as the *Matrona*) the Prussian thrust towards Paris was twice (1914 and 1918) stopped by the Allied command. French batteries and German machine guns may often have guarded the very hills whence, centuries ago, Caesar directed the *triplex acies* of his legions. *Bellum continenter gerunt!*

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs.

Ūnam partem Belgae incolunt.

Alteram partem Aquītānī[1] incolunt.

Tertiam partem Gallī incolunt.

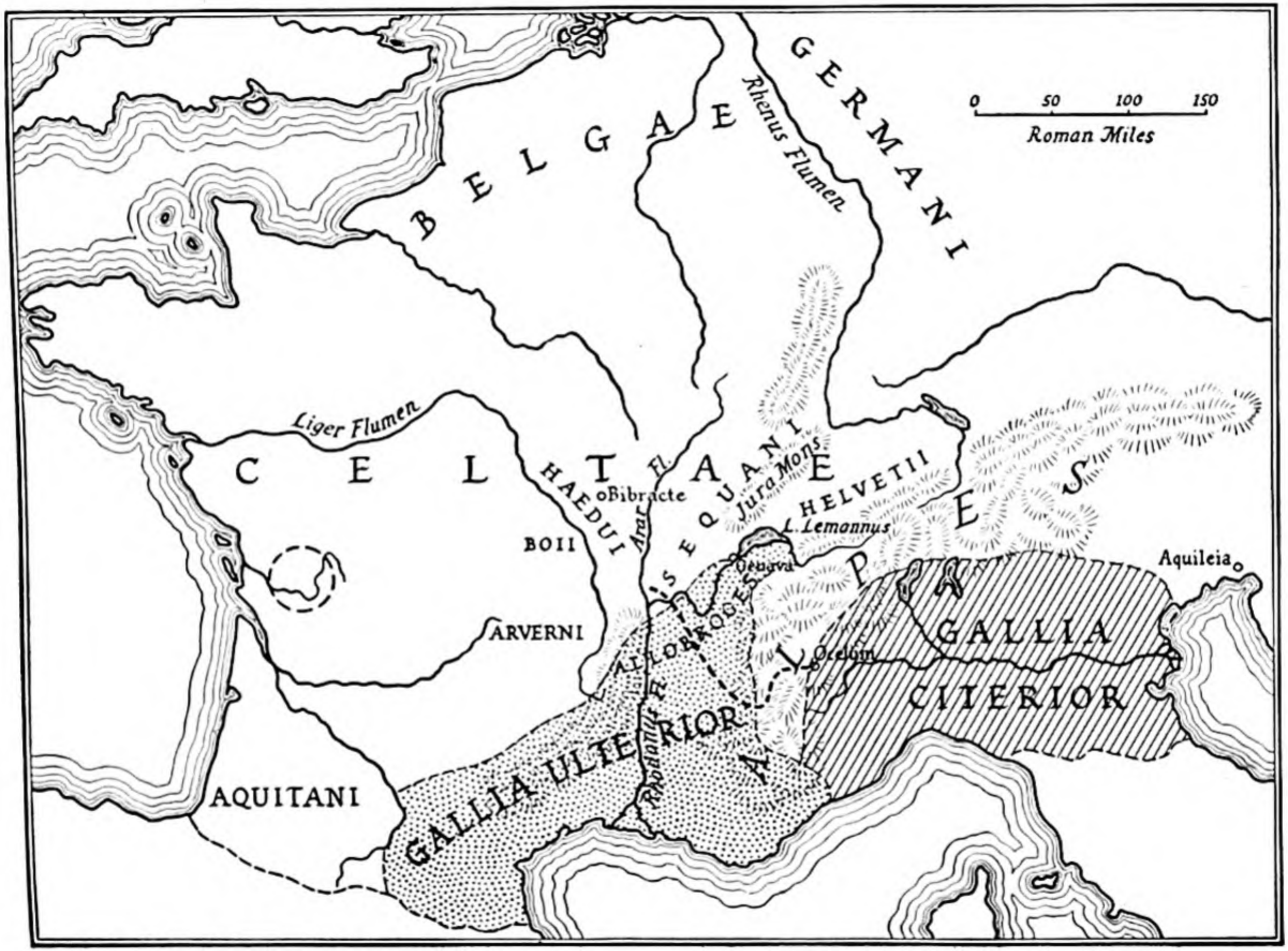
Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt.[2] 5

Gallōs ab[3] Aquītānīs[1] Garumna[4] flūmen,
ā Belgīs Mātrona[5] et Sēquana[6] dīvidit.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae,

---

[1] **Aquītānī, Aquītānōrum,** *the Aquitanians.*
[2] **inter sē differunt:** *differ from one another.*
[3] **ab,** prep. w. abl., *from* (197).
[4] **Garumna:** *Garonne* (a river).
[5] **Mātrona:** *Marne* (a river).
[6] **Sēquana:** *Seine* (a river).



GAUL IN CAESAR'S TIME

◯ The land toward which the Helvetians directed their march—fair and fertile valleys whence raids might easily be made on the Roman Province.

▬ ▬ ▬ Caesar's dash across the Alps.

nam ab hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt,
atque mercātōrēs ad eōs nōn saepe veniunt,
neque important ea quae animōs effēminant.[1]

Proximī sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum[2] incolunt.

Cum eīs continenter bellum gerunt.[3]

THE 'FIGHTING' HELVETIANS

Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt,
nam ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt.
Aut enim suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent,
aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

ORGETORIX CONSPIRES TO BECOME DICTATOR OF ALL GAUL

The Helvetians were restless. They wanted a fairer land than their own narrow Alpine valleys—a land where they might expand and reach their 'rightful' development. One of their nobles —a man of wealth, too—saw in this restlessness a lever to lift himself to power.

Apud Helvētiōs nōbilissimus et dītissimus[4] fuit Orgetorīx.[5]

Is, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus, conjūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit.
Cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē[6] fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent.[7]

---

[1] **effēminō**, 1, tr., *I soften, I weaken.*

[2] **Rhēnus, ī**, *the Rhine.*

[3] The old, old story noted here by Caesar has remained true ever since. The Rhine and the land about it (Alsace, Lorraine, the Saar valley) have been the prize of many a struggle. Today (1939) this frontier is guarded by the two greatest systems of fortifications ever built (the French 'Maginot Line' and the German 'Siegfried Line').

[4] **dītissimus, a, um**, *richest, most wealthy.*

[5] **Orgetorīx, Orgetorīgis**, *Orgetorix.*

[6] **dē**, prep. w. abl., *out of* (208).

[7] **ut . . . exīrent:** noun clause of purpose (115); *to go out of . . .*

Tōtīus Galliae imperium cupīvit.

Helvētiī locī nātūrā undique continentur;
ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō,
alterā ex parte monte Jūrā[1] altissimō,
tertiā[2] lacū Lemannō[3] et flūmine Rhodanō,[4]
quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.

Quā dē causā minus lātē vagārī poterant,
atque minus facile[5] fīnitimīs bellum īnferre poterant.[6]

Quā ex rē hominēs bellī cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur.

Prō[7] multitūdine hominum et prō[7] glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis
angustī fīnēs vidēbantur.

THEY AGREE TO THE PROPOSAL OF ORGETORIX

Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī,
cōnstituērunt ea quae ad profectiōnem pertinērent comparāre.

Jūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum[8] parāvērunt.

Sēmentēs[9] quam maximās fēcērunt
ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī esset.

Cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāvērunt.

THE SECRET DIPLOMACY OF ORGETORIX

Orgetorīx sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit.

---

1 **Jūra, ae,** *Mount Jura.*
2 **tertiā (ex parte):** *on the third side.*
3 **Lemannus, ī,** *Lake Geneva.*
4 **Rhodanus, ī,** *the Rhone.*
5 **facile,** adv., *easily.*
6 **belium īnferre poterant:** *were able to make war on.*
7 **prō,** prep. w. abl., *in proportion to, for* (223).
8 **quam maximum numerum:** *as great a number as possible.*
9 **sēmentēs:** *sowings* (*i. e.,* of grain).

In eō itinere persuādet Casticō,[1] Sēquanō,[2]
ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret,
quod pater ējus habuerat.

Dumnorīgī,[3] Haeduō,[4] ut idem cōnārētur, persuādet.

Eī fīliam suam in mātrimōnium[5] dat.

Illīs probat sē cōnāta perficere nūllō negōtiō posse.

Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et jūsjūrandum dant,
et per trēs potentissimōs et firmissimōs populōs
sē tōtīus Galliae potīrī posse spērant.[6]

BETRAYAL OF ORGETORIX

Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium nūntiāta.

Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere[7] cōgēbant.

Diē cōnstitūtā Orgetorīx ad jūdicium omnem suam familiam ad hominum mīlia decem[8] undique coēgit,
et omnēs clientēs eōdem condūxit.

Per eōs sē ēripuit.

Cīvitās, ob eam rem incitāta,
armīs jūs suum exsequī cōnāta est.[9]

Multitūdinem hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgēbant.

Sed Orgetorīx mortuus est.

---

[1] Casticus, ī, *Casticus.*
[2] Sēquanus, ī, *a Sequanian.*
[3] Dumnorīx, Dumnorīgis, *Dumnorix.*
[4] Haeduus, ī, *a Haeduan.*
[5] in mātrimōnium: *in marriage.*
[6] sē . . . posse spērant: *they hope they may be able.*
[7] causam dīcere: *to plead his case.*
[8] ad . . . mīlia decem: *to the number of ten thousand.*
[9] exsequī cōnāta est: *tried to carry out.*

Fortāsse,[1] ut[2] Helvētiī arbitrābantur,[3]
sē ipse interfēcit.

THE HELVETIANS CONTINUE THEIR PLANS

Post ējus mortem autem
Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur.

Ē fīnibus suīs exīre parant.

Oppida sua omnia numerō ad duodecim[4] incendunt;
vīcōs ad quadringentōs (400),
reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt.

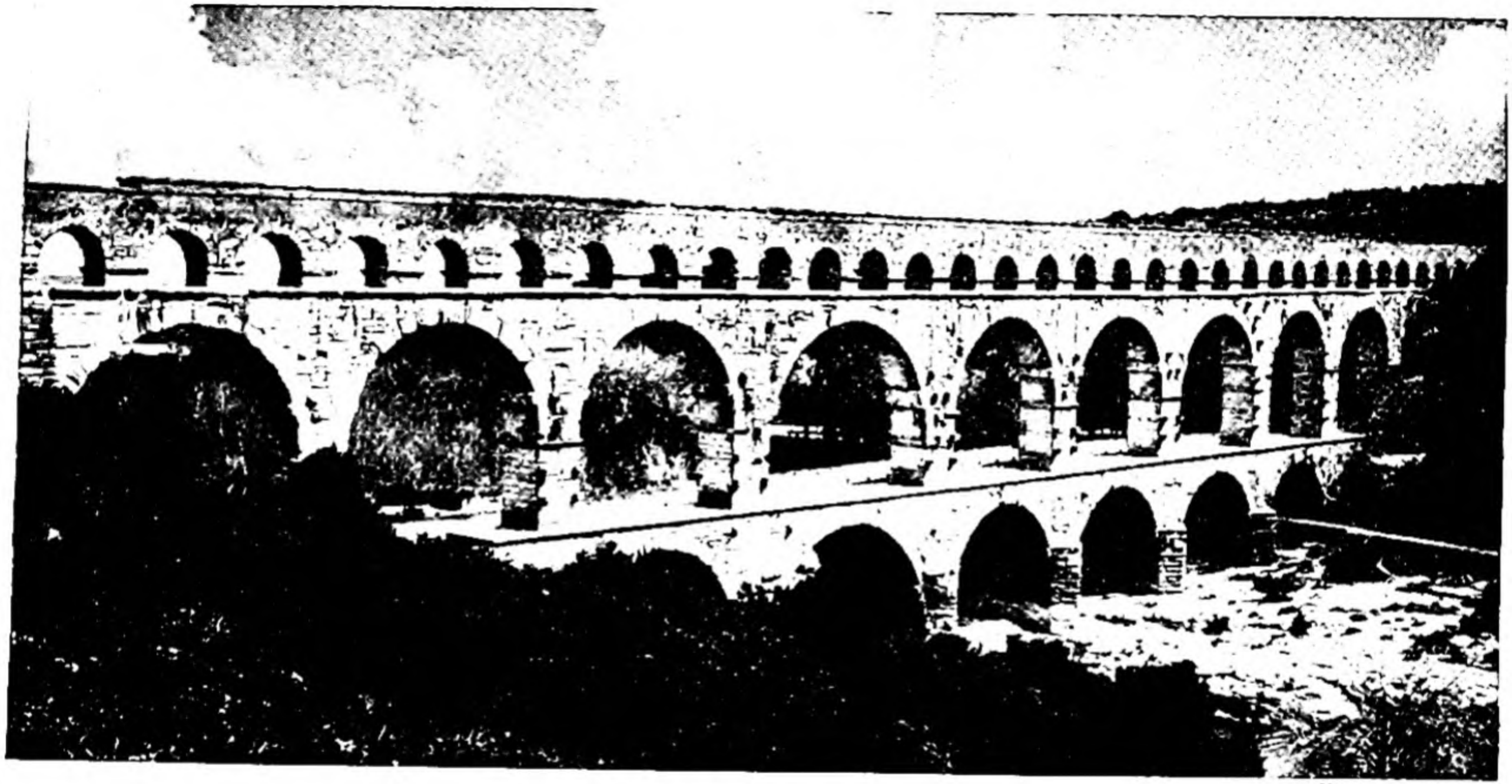
Frūmentum omne praeter quod[5] sēcum ferre cōnstituērunt incendunt.

Trium mēnsium molita cibāria[6]
sibi quemque[7] domō[8] efferre[9] jubent.

Persuādent Rauracīs,[10] et Tulingīs[11] et Latobrīgīs,[12] fīnitimīs,
ut, eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, ūnā[13] cum eīs proficīscantur;
Boiōsque,[14] quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant
et in agrum Nōricum[15] trānsierant,
sociōs sibi jungunt.

---

[1] **fortāsse**, adv., *perhaps*.
[2] **ut**: *as* (109).
[3] **arbitror**, 1, tr., *I think, I believe*.
[4] **numerō ad duodecim**: *in number about twelve*.
[5] **praeter quod**: *except what*.
[6] **molita cibāria**: *ground grain, meal, flour*.
[7] **quemque**: *each one*.
[8] **domō**: *from home*.
[9] **efferre**: *to carry away from*.
[10] **Rauracī, Rauracōrum**, *the Rauraci*.
[11] **Tulingī, Tulingōrum**, *the Tulingi*.
[12] **Latobrīgī, Latobrīgōrum**, *the Latobrigi*.
[13] **ūnā**, adv., *together*.
[14] **Boiī, Boiōrum**, *the Boii*.
[15] **in agrum Nōricum**: *into Noricum*. Noricum was a land to the east of the Rhine, now included within the borders of Austria.



—*Ewing Galloway*

THE PONT DU GARD

Among all the remains of Roman construction, remarkable for its beauty and boldness of design, is this aqueduct bridge still standing near Nimes in France, the Pont du Gard. The lowest course of arches contains six, one of which has a span of 75 feet and the rest spans of 60 feet. All the arches in the second course reach a span of 75 feet. The water conduit ran along the top. The structure rises to a height of 180 feet—a noble and enduring monument to Rome's engineers and architects.

THEY DECIDE TO TREK THROUGH THE ROMAN PROVINCE

Erant omnīnō itinera duo
quibus itineribus domō exīre possent;[1]
ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile,
inter montem Jūram et flūmen Rhodanum;
alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius,[2]
nam inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum,[3]
quī nūper pācātī erant,
Rhodanus fluit isque nōnnūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur.[4]

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum
proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus est Genava.[5]

Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet.

Per fīnēs Allobrogum īre parant.[6]

Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt,[7]
quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant.[8]

THE NEWS REACHES CAESAR. HE ACTS SWIFTLY

A migration of such size (the Helvetians numbered 368,000 persons) could hardly pass through the Roman Province without doing grave damage. There would be, too, the danger of clashes between the inhabitants and these foreigners. But more than this Caesar feared that the vacated valleys south of the Jura mountains would offer the Germans from beyond the Rhine another foothold in Gaul. The migration was clearly against Roman interests.

---

[1] **exīre possent:** *were able to go out* (113).
[2] **expedītius:** *more convenient.*
[3] **Allobrogēs, Allobrogum,** *the Allobroges.*
[4] **trānsītur:** *is crossed.*
[5] **Genava, ae,** *Geneva.*
[6] **īre parant:** *they prepare to go.*
[7] **diem dīcunt:** *they set a day.*
[8] **conveniant:** relative clause of purpose (97).

Ea rēs Caesarī nūntiāta est.

Mātūrat ab urbe[1] proficīscī,
et quam maximīs potest itineribus
in Galliam Ulteriōrem contendit,
et ad Genavam[2] pervēnit.

Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat.[3]

Erat omnīnō in Galliā Ulteriōre legiō ūna.

Pontem quī erat ad Genavam[2] jubet frangī.[4]

THE HELVETIANS ATTEMPT NEGOTIATIONS

Helvētiī dē ējus adventū certiōrēs factī sunt.

Lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis,
cūjus lēgātiōnis Nammēius[5] et Verucloetius[6] prīncipem[7] locum obtinēbant.

"Sine ūllō maleficiō," inquiunt,[8] "iter per prōvinciam faciēmus.

Aliud iter habēmus nūllum.

Rogāmus ut voluntāte tuā[9] id faciāmus."[10]

---

[1] **ab urbe**: *from Rome*, the city where Caesar was at the time. He is said to have covered ninety miles a day on his trip northward—no mean speed for those days.

[2] **ad Genavam**: *to the neighborhood of Geneva. Ad* with names of towns means *near* (198, 2).

[3] **imperat**: *he levies.*

[4] **frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus**, 3, tr., *I break, I destroy.*

[5] **Nammēius, ī**, *Nammeius*, an important Helvetian.

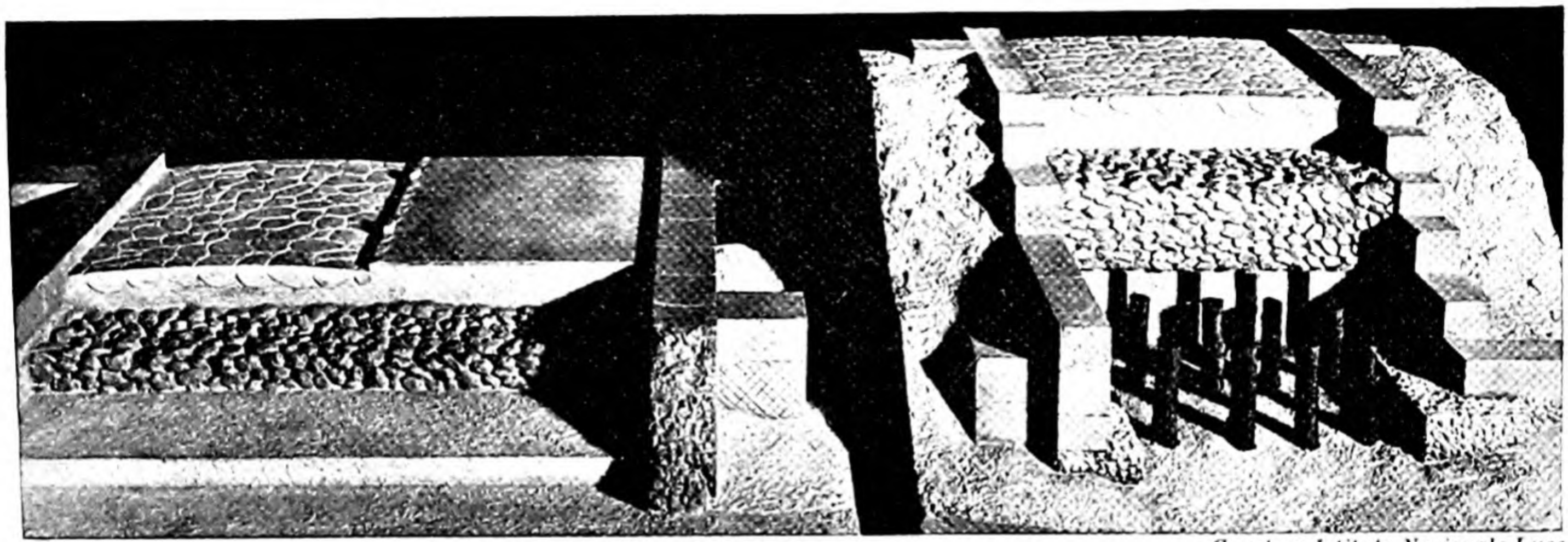
[6] **Verucloetius, ī**, *Verucloetius*, also an important Helvetian.

[7] **prīncipem**: an adjective.

[8] **inquiunt**: *they say.*

[9] **voluntāte tuā**: *by your will, with your permission.*

[10] **ut . . . faciāmus**: a noun clause of purpose (115).



—*Courtesy Istituto Nazionale Luce*

ROMAN ROAD ENGINEERING

Rapidity of movement is a vital factor in all war. The Roman legions were therefore trained to remarkable endurance in long forced marches, and their military engineers bound the Roman territories together in a splendid network of roads to facilitate troop movements. When Caesar came into Gaul the province there already had several fine roads, one important one connecting northern Italy with the provinces in Spain. The style of these excellent roads is shown in this model. Many of them have survived to modern times and in some places in Italy are still used as the base of smooth modern highways.

Today the German army, like the legions of old Rome, have crisscrossed the Third Reich with the finest system of strategic roads in the world. Italy, too, consciously imitating the engineering traditions of Rome, is binding together its African colonies by splendid roads and bridges. In a recent Italian publication *(Roman Roads in East Africa)* an illustration of this road-building project bears the following legend: "The grandeur of Ancient Rome revived in East Africa by the descendants of Appius Claudius and Flaminius." In old Rome Appius Claudius (312 B.C.) inaugurated the program of road building with the famed Appian Way, and Flaminius (220 B.C.) gave his name to another of the great early roads, the *Via Flaminia* running north from Rome.

CAESAR PLAYS FOR TIME

Caesar hōc sē nōn concēdere dēbēre putābat;
tamen,[1] ut spatium intercēdere posset
dum[2] mīlitēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent,
lēgātīs respondit:
"Dēlīberō;
revertite ad Īdūs Aprīlēs."[3]

CAESAR BUILDS A LINE OF DEFENSE[4]

Intereā, eā legiōne[5] quam sēcum habēbat
mīlitibusque[5] quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant,
ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum fluit,
ad montem Jūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit,
mīlia passuum decem novem[6]
mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim (16) fossamque perdūcit.

Praesidia dispōnit;
castella commūnit
quō[7] facilius prohibēre posset.

HIS ANSWER

Ubi[8] diēs cōnstitūta vēnit,
et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt,

---

[1] **tamen**, adv., *yet, still.*

[2] **dum**: *until* (101).

[3] **Īdūs Aprīlēs**: *the Ides of April* (April thirteenth).

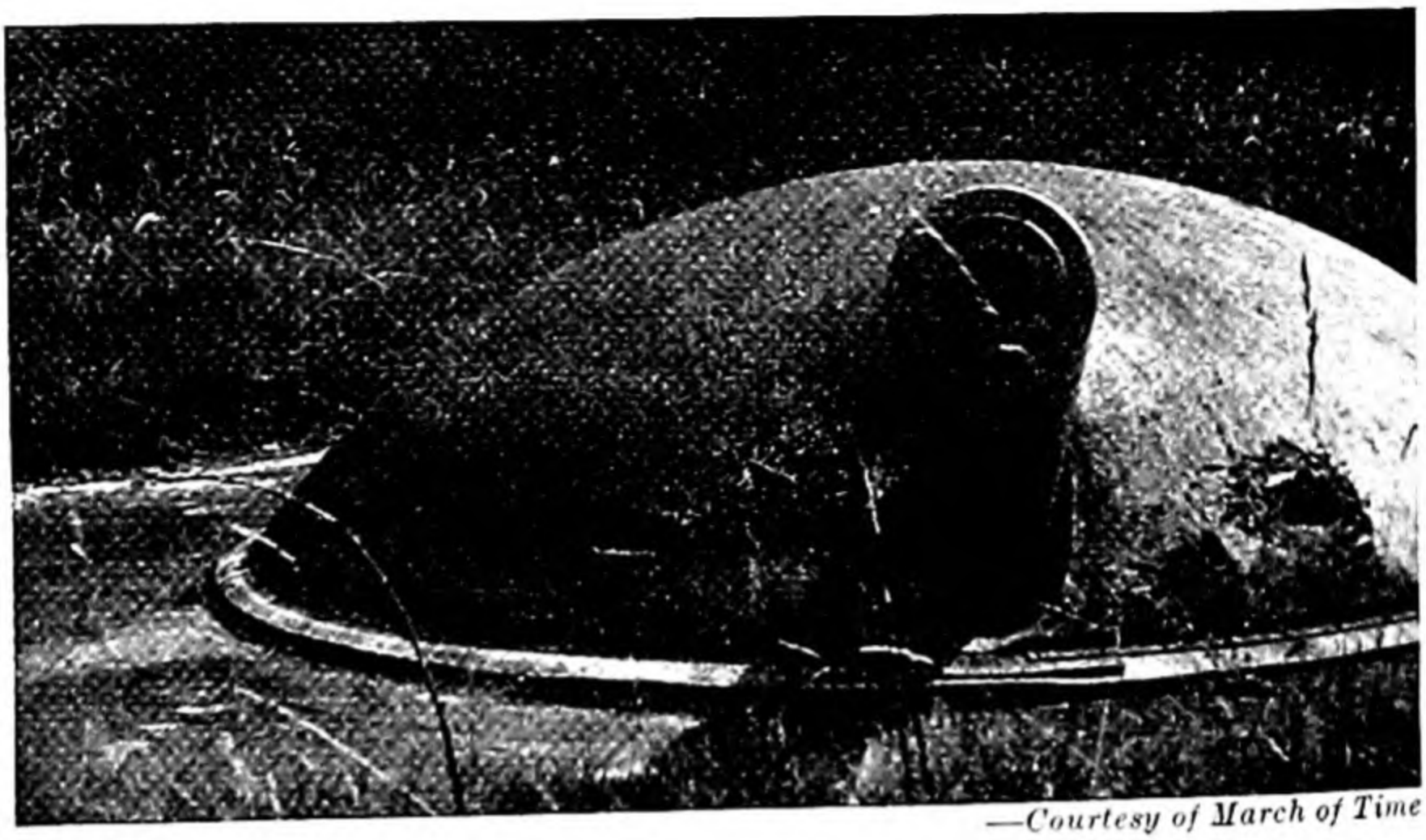
[4] The science of engineering was remarkably advanced among the ancient Romans. Monuments of strong design and construction are scattered throughout all the lands where Rome once ruled. The military advantages which Roman engineering gave the legions is evident in the construction of fortifications and in siege operations throughout the campaign in Gaul.

[5] **eā legiōne; mīlitibusque**: ablative of means (158 and 163, note).

[6] **mīlia passuum decem novem**: *19,000 paces* (nineteen miles).

[7] **quō**: *quō* is used in purpose clauses for *ut* when the clause contains a comparative adverb or adjective *(facilius)* (97).

[8] **ubi**, temporal conj., *when* (99).



—*Courtesy of March of Time*

THE GUNS OF THE MAGINOT LINE POINT TOWARD THE EAST

Just west of the Rhine where once German bands crossed into Gaul to plunder, to conquer, and to fight the Romans, there stands today France's great Maginot line of defense. One hundred and fifty miles long, it lies close on territory where Ariovistus and his fierce Germans met Caesar to their own ruin. The product of the most highly developed military science, it is a modern counterpart of the defenses Caesar built along the Rhone to stop the Helvetian invasion.

respondit:
"Mōre et exemplō[1] Populī Rōmānī
nōn possum ūllī iter per prōvinciam dare.
Sī[2] vim facere[3] cōnābiminī, prohibēbō!"

THE HELVETIANS ARE REPULSED

Helvētiī, eā spē[4] dējectī,
nāvibus jūnctīs ratibusque multīs factīs,
aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā[5] minima altitūdō flūminis erat,

---

[1] **exemplum, ī,** *example, precedent.*
[2] **sī,** conj., *if.*
[3] **vim facere:** *to use force.*
[4] **eā spē:** ablative of separation (160).
[5] **quā,** relative adv., *where.*

nōnnumquam interdiū,[1] saepius[2] noctū,
perrumpere cōnātī sunt.

Operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī,
hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.[3]

THE HELVETIANS TRY THE OTHER ROAD

Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via.

Hīs autem persuādēre nōn poterant ut sibi iter darent.

Lēgātōs igitur[4] ad Dumnorīgem, Haeduum, mittunt
ut per eum ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.

Dumnorīx grātiā apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat,[5]
et Helvētiīs erat amīcus.

Nam ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat,[6]
et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō sibi beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat.

Itaque rem suscipit,
et ā Sēquanīs impetrat.

Persuādet ut obsidēs inter sē dent.

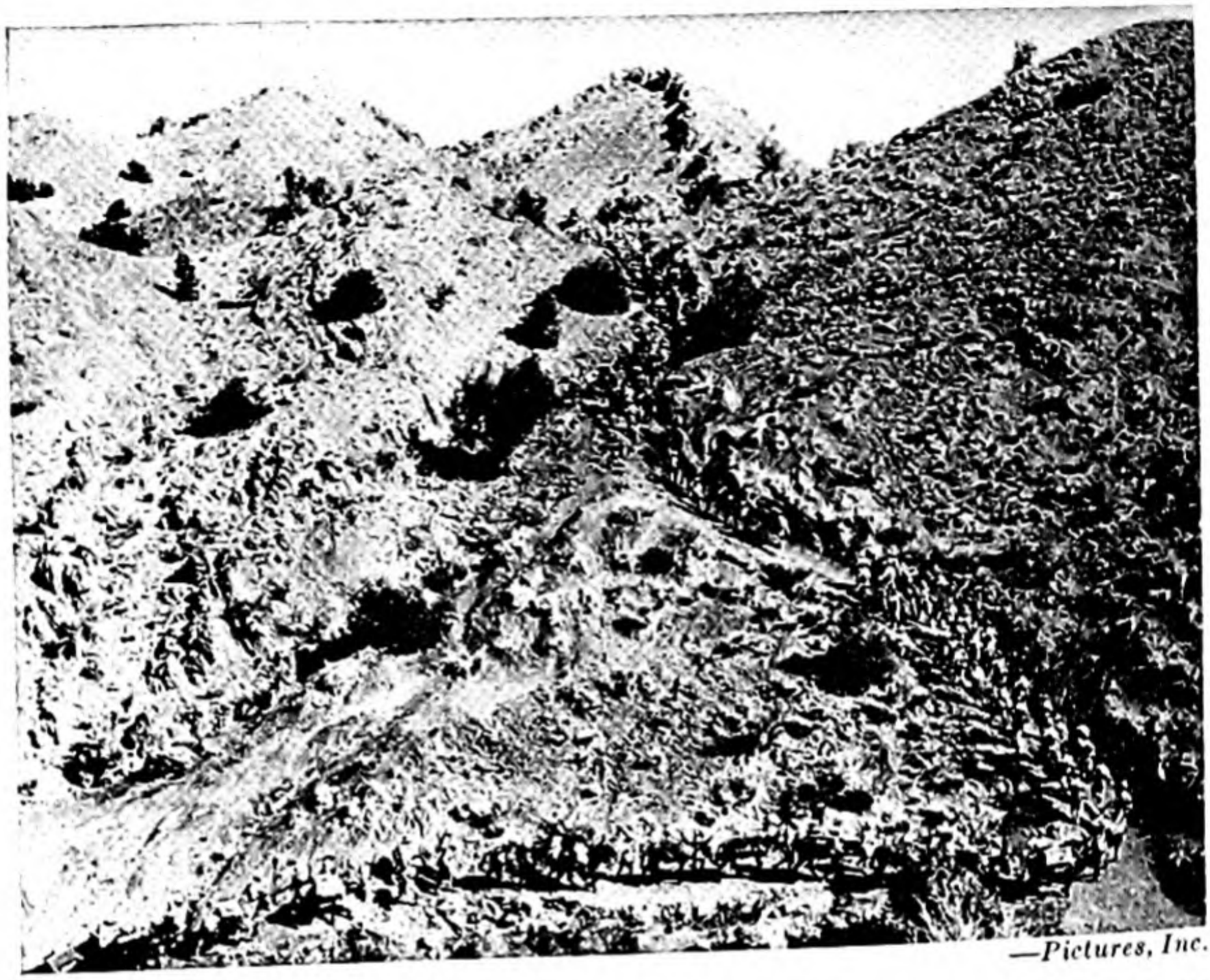
CAESAR LEARNS THE PLANS OF THE ENEMY

Dē hāc rē Caesar certior factus est.

Helvētiīs erat in animō[7]
per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum
iter in Santonum[8] fīnēs facere.

---

[1] **interdiū**, adv., *by day.*
[2] **saepius**, adv., *more often.*
[3] **hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt**: *they gave up this attempt.*
[4] **igitur**, adv., *therefore.*
[5] **plūrimum poterat**: *was very influential.*
[6] **in mātrimōnium dūxerat**: *had married.*
[7] **Helvētiīs erat in animō**: *The Helvetians intended.*
[8] **Santonēs, Santonum**, *the Santones.*



—*Pictures, Inc.*

A British column here winds its way into hostile territory on India's northwest frontier much as Caesar's *āgmen* wound through the hostile Alps to the relief of the Haedui. On the outposts of empire the military task is ever the same.

Quī fīnēs nōn longē ā Tolōsātium[1] fīnibus absunt.

Haec cīvitās est in prōvinciā.

Hōc magnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum erat.

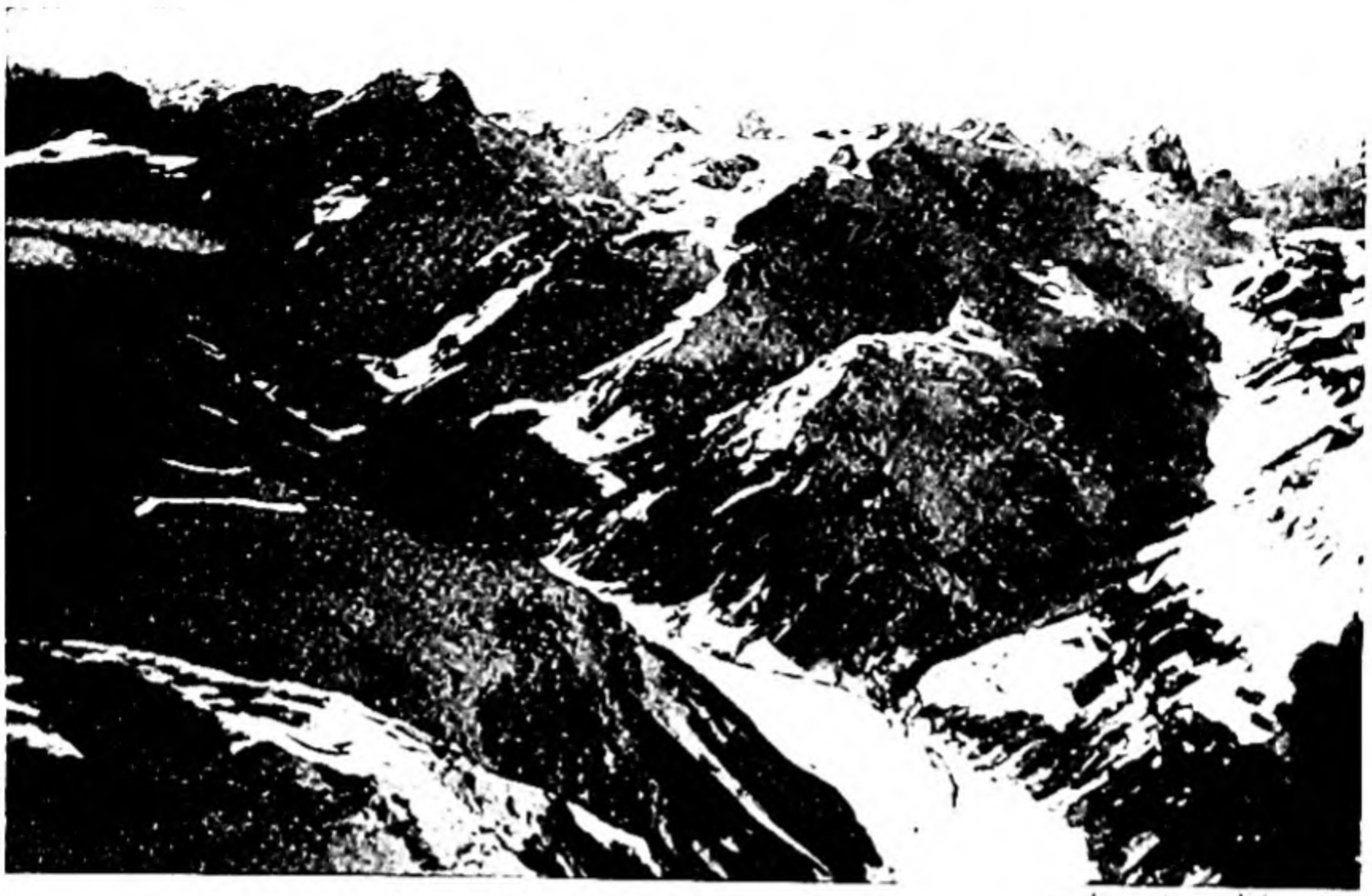
HE RETURNS FOR REINFORCEMENTS

Hāc dē causā
eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat
Titum Labiēnum,[2] lēgātum, praefēcit.

---

[1] **Tolōsātēs, Tolōsātium,** *Tolosates,* the inhabitants of Tolosa (modern Toulouse).

[2] **Titus (ī) Labiēnus (ī),** *Titus Labienus,* Caesar's most trusted lieutenant.



—*Keystone View Co.*

THE ALPS

Italy's natural barrier to invasion, and yet across them Hannibal, Caesar, and Napoleon have led victorious armies in history-making marches.

Ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus[1] contendit.

In Italiā duās legiōnēs cōnscrībit,
et trēs quae circum Aquileiam[2] hiemābant ex hībernīs dūcit
et, quā[3] proximum iter in Ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs[4] erat,
cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit.

HE FIGHTS HIS WAY THROUGH THE ALPS AND PENETRATES INTO NON-ROMAN TERRITORY

Ibi Ceutrōnēs[5] et Grāiocelī[6] et Caturīgēs,[7]

---

[1] **magnīs itineribus:** *by forced marches.*
[2] **circum Aquileiam:** *around Aquileia* (see map, page 310).
[3] **quā,** relative adv., *where.*
[4] **Alpēs, Alpium,** *the Alps.*
[5] **Ceutrōnēs, Ceutrōnum,** *the Ceutrones*
[6] **Grāiocelī, Grāiocelōrum,** *the Graioceli*
[7] **Caturīgēs, Caturīgum,** *the Caturiges*
} wild mountain tribes.

locīs superiōribus occupātīs,
itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur.

Quōs multīs proeliīs pepulit.

Ab Ocelō,[1] quod est Citeriōris Prōvinciae extrēmum,
in fīnēs Vocontiōrum[2] Ulteriōris Prōvinciae
diē septimō pervēnit;
inde[3] in Allobrogum fīnēs,
ab Allobrogibus in Segūsiāvōs[4] exercitum dūcit.
Hī sunt extrā Prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

THE MOVEMENTS OF THE HELVETIANS

Caesar's dash across the Alps for fresh troops occupied only seven days. But even so he was back barely in time. The Helvetians were already plundering the fields and homesteads of the Haedui, who were allies and friends of the Romans. Their messengers came down hastily to meet Caesar and beg immediate relief.

Helvētiī jam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant,
et in Haeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant,
eōrumque agrōs populābantur.

Haeduī sē suaque[5] ab eīs dēfendere nōn poterant.

Itaque lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt ut auxilium rogārent.

"Ita[6] nōs omnī tempore dē Populō Rōmānō meritī sumus[7]
ut[8] paene[9] in cōnspectū exercitūs vestrī

---

[1] **Ocelum, ī,** *Ocelum,* a town of northwestern Italy lying in the last approaches of the Alps. See map, page 310, for Caesar's route across the Alps.

[2] **Vocontiī, Vocontiōrum,** *the Vocontii.*

[3] **inde,** adv., *thence.*

[4] **Segūsiāvī, Segūsiāvōrum,** *the Segusiavi.*

[5] **sē suaque:** *themselves and their possessions.*

[6] **ita,** adv., *thus.*

[7] **dē . . . sumus:** *we have so deserved of the Roman people.*

[8] **ut:** a result clause (98); *that.*

[9] **paene,** adv., *almost.*

agrī vāstārī,
līberī in servitūtem dūcī,
oppida expugnārī
nōn dēbeant."

Allobrogēs, quoque, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs habēbant,
fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt.[1]

Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar eōs vī prohibēre statuit.

CAESAR ATTACKS SUDDENLY

Flūmen est Ārar,[2]
quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum
in Rhodanum fluit
incrēdibilī lēnitāte[3]
ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat jūdicārī nōn possit.[4]

Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus jūnctīs trānsībant.

Dē hāc rē per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est.

Trēs jam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiī id flūmen trādūxerant;
quārta vērō pars citrā flūmen Ararim[2] reliqua erat.

Dē tertiā vigiliā[5] cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus
ad eam partem pervēnit[6]
quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

Eōs impedītōs aggressus,

---

[1] **fugā sē . . . recipiunt:** *betook themselves to Caesar in flight.*

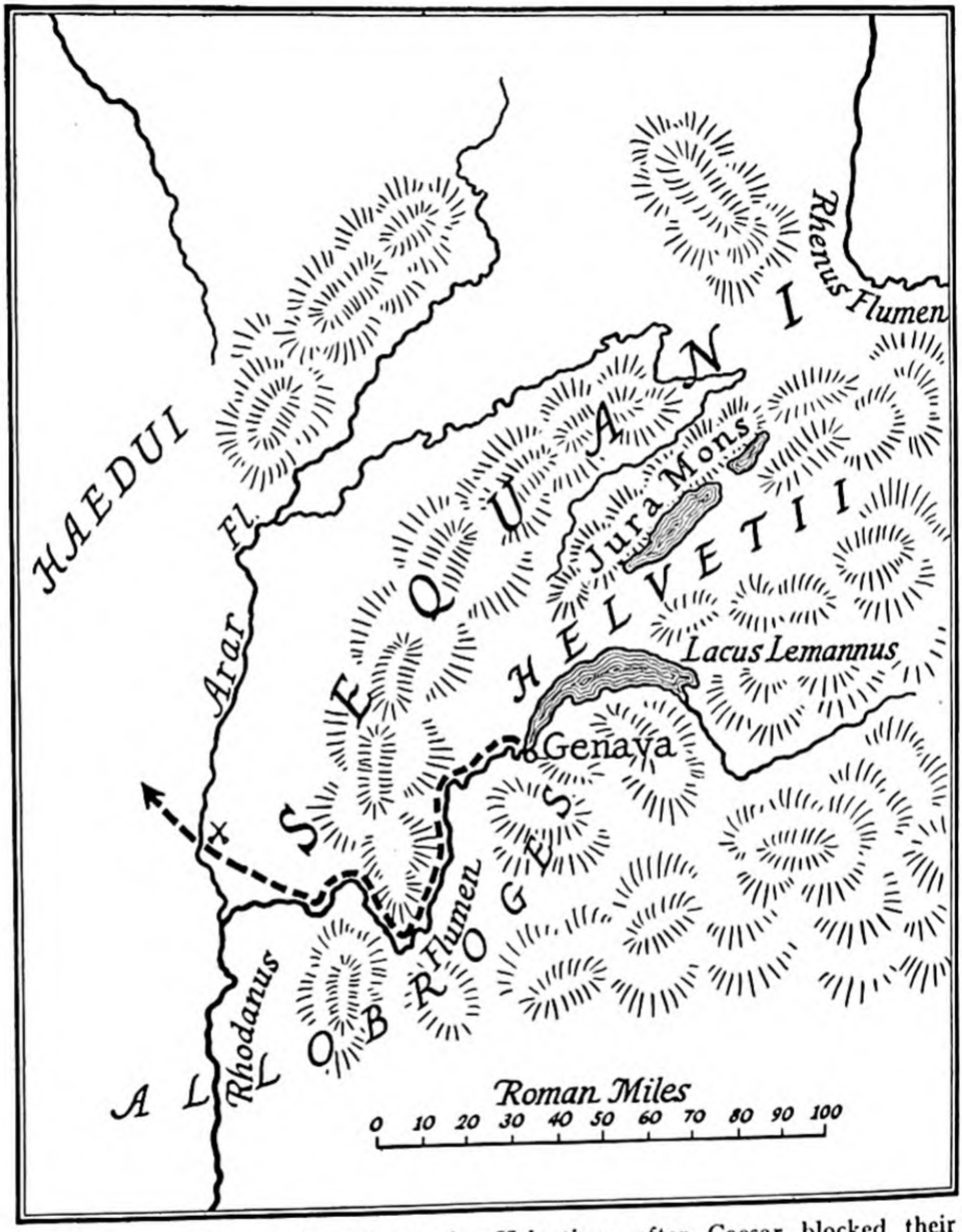
[2] **Arar, Araris** (acc., **Ararim**), m., *the Saône* (a river).

[3] **lēnitās, lēnitātis,** *gentleness.*

[4] **ita ut . . . possit:** *"that it is impossible to tell, merely by looking, in which direction it is flowing"*—T. Rice Holmes.

[5] **dē tertiā vigiliā:** The time between sunset and sunrise was divided into four watches; the second watch ended at midnight. Caesar, therefore, set out after midnight, *in the third watch.*

[6] Caesar was able to advance upon them so unexpectedly because his movements were masked by rising ground. Every great general—Hannibal, Caesar, Napoleon—has owed a great deal of his superiority to rapidity of movement and his intelligent use of natural advantages of position.



Route followed by the Helvetians after Caesar blocked their passage of the Rhone.

X Here Caesar cut down the Tigurine clan.

magnam partem eōrum concīdit.[1]

Reliquī sē fugae mandāvērunt,
atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt.

Is pāgus appellābātur[2] Tigurīnus;[3]
nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia[4] in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est.

THE HELVETIANS PARLEY

Hōc proeliō factō,
ut reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum cōnsequī posset,
pontem[5] in Ararī facit,
atque ita[6] exercitum trādūcit.

Helvētiī, repentīnō ējus adventū commōtī,
lēgātōs ad eum mittunt.

Hūjus lēgātiōnis Dīvicō[7] prīnceps fuit.

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit;[8]
"Sī[9] pācem Populus Rōmānus nōbīscum fēcerit,
in eam partem ībimus,
et in eō locō erimus,
ubi[10] volēs,

---

[1] **concīdit:** *he cut down.*

[2] **appellō, 1,** tr., *I call, I name.*

[3] **Tigurīnus, a, um,** *Tigurine.* Caesar mentions their name particularly because it was the *pāgus Tigurīnus* which had fifty years before defeated a Roman army and compelled its surrender. Caesar foresaw the favorable reaction at Rome when this delayed 'revenge' became known.

[4] **Helvētius, a, um,** *Helvetian.*

[5] Caesar constructed a pontoon bridge and transported his entire force within twenty-four hours. The Helvetians had taken three weeks to cross.

[6] **ita,** adv., *thus, so.*

[7] **Dīvicō:** Divico, now an old man, had in his youth been the general who led the Helvetians to victory over the Romans. He recalls now that *vetus incommodum* as a warning and a threat to Caesar. He evidently did not know this man.

[8] **ita cum Caesare ēgit:** *treated with Caesar as follows.*

[9] **sī,** conj., *if* (106).

[10] **ubi,** relative adv., *where.*

sīn[1] bellum gerere cōnstituēs,
reminīscere[2] et veteris incommodī[3] Populī Rōmānī
et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

Ita[4] ā patribus mājōribusque nostrīs didicimus[5]
ut magis virtūte quam dolō contendāmus."

CAESAR'S ULTIMATUM

Hīs Caesar ita[4] respondit:
"Eās rēs quās dīxistis memoriā teneō.

Recentium injūriārum memoriam nōn possum dēpōnere.[6]

Sī[7] autem obsidēs ā vōbīs mihi dabuntur,
et sī[7] Haeduīs,
sī[7] Allobrogibus dē injūriīs satisfaciētis,
pācem vōbīscum faciam."

THE PATRIOTIC PRIDE OF DIVICO

Ad quae Dīvicō respondit:
"Ita,"[4] inquit,[8] "ā mājōribus nostrīs īnstitūtī sumus[9]
ut[10] obsidēs accipere,[11] nōn dare, cōnsuerīmus."[12]

Hōc respōnsō datō, discessit.

---

[1] **sīn**, conj., *but if.*
[2] **reminīscere**, imperative, *remember!* (takes the genitive).
[3] **incommodum, ī**, *disaster.*
[4] **ita**, adv., *thus, so.*
[5] **discō, discere, didicī**, 3, tr., *I learn.*
[6] **dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositus**, 3, tr., *I put aside.*
[7] **sī**, conj., *if.*
[8] **inquit**: *he said.*
[9] **īnstitūtī sumus**: *we have been taught.*
[10] **ut**: result clause (98); *that.*
[11] **accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus**, 3, tr., *I receive.*
[12] **cōnsuerīmus**: *we have become accustomed; we are accustomed.*

—*Courtesy of Metro-Goldwyn-Mayer*

Marcus Trebonius, *miles*, Tenth Legion, Roman Expeditionary Force.

—*Life Magazine*

Private Davis, First Class, United States Infantry.

CAESAR FOLLOWS THE HELVETIANS

Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent.

Idem facit Caesar
equitātumque omnem,
quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coēgerat
praemittit quī videant[1] quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant.

Hī cupidius novissimum āgmen[2] īnsecūtī
aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt,
et paucī dē[3] nostrīs cadunt.

Hōc proeliō ēlātī,
Helvētiī audācius subsistere[4] nōnnumquam
et novissimō āgmine[5] proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt.

Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat.

Ita[6] diēs circiter[7] quīndecim iter fēcērunt,
ut inter novissimum hostium āgmen[8] et nostrum prīmum
nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum[9] interesset.

SUPPLIES FROM THE HAEDUI FAIL TO ARRIVE

Fighting in a strange and semihostile country Caesar found the problem of supplies pressing and difficult. He was forced to rely on his Gallic allies, but these were none too loyal.

Interim Caesar cotīdiē Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat.

Nam propter frīgora

---

[1] **quī videant:** relative clause of purpose (97); *to see.*

[2] **novissimum āgmen:** *last line* (the rear guard).

[3] **dē,** prep. w. abl., *of* (208).

[4] **subsistō, subsistere, substitī,** 3, intr., *I halt.*

[5] **novissimō āgmine:** ablative of means (158); *with their rear guard.*

[6] **ita,** adv., *thus, so.*

[7] **circiter,** adv., *about.*

[8] It is estimated that the Helvetian column *(āgmen)* with its cattle, its wagons, and its fighting men was about fifteen miles long.

[9] **nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum:** *not more than five or six thousand paces = five or six miles.*

nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant,
sed nē pābulī quidem[1] satis[2] magna cōpia erat.

Frūmentum flūmine Arare nāvibus subvexerat,[3]
sed iter ab Arare Helvētiī āverterant.

Itaque eō frūmentō ūtī minus poterat.

Diem ex diē dūcunt[4] Haeduī.

Frūmentum cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcunt.

Diēs īnstābat[5] quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus darī oportēbat.

Itaque prīncipēs Haeduōrum convocat.

Eōs graviter accūsat
quod[6] tam[7] necessāriō tempore,
tam[7] propinquīs hostibus,
ab eīs nōn adjuvātur.

THE POWER OF THE ANTI-ROMAN PARTY AMONG THE HAEDUI. THE INFLUENCE OF THEIR PROPAGANDA ON THE PEOPLE

Tum dēmum[8] Liscus,[9]
ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus,
id quod ante illum diem tacuerat, prōpōnit.

"Sunt nōnnūllī," inquit,[10]
"quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem[11] plūrimum valet,

---

[1] **nē . . . quidem**, advs., *not even*.
[2] **satis**, adv., *sufficiently*.
[3] **subvexerat**: *he had carried up*.
[4] **Diem ex diē dūcunt**: *They put him off day after day*.
[5] **īnstābat**: *was at hand*.
[6] **quod**, conj., *because* (103).
[7] **tam**, adv., *so*.
[8] **tum dēmum**, advs., *then at last*.
[9] **Liscus, ī**, *Liscus*, the chief magistrate of the Haedui (called the *Vergobret*) and a true friend of the Romans.
[10] **inquit**: *he said*.
[11] **apud plēbem**: *with the (common) people*.

quī plūs possunt quam[1] magistrātūs.

Hī improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrent[2]
nē frūmentum cōnferant.

Ipsī autem jam imperium totīus Galliae obtinēre nōn possunt,
sed Gallōrum quam[1] Rōmānōrum imperia praeferunt.[3]

Hī ā mē coercērī nōn possunt."

DUMNORIX, THE ANTI-ROMAN AND NATIONALIST LEADER

Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīvitiācī[4] frātrem, dēsignārī sentiēbat.[5]

Plūribus praesentibus eās rēs jactārī nōlēbat.

Itaque celeriter concilium dīmittit;
Liscum retinet.

Quaerit[6] ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dīxerat.

Dīcit līberius atque audācius.[7]

Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit.[6]

Reperit esse vēra.

"Dumnorīx," inquiunt,[8] "homō summā audāciā[9] est,
magnā apud plēbem[10] grātiā,
cupidus rērum novārum.[11]

---

[1] **quam**, relative adv., *than*.

[2] **dēterrent nē**: *frightened the people from* (118).

[3] **praeferō, praeferre, praetulī, praelātus**, tr., *I prefer*.

[4] **Dīvitiācus, ī**, *Divitiacus*, a pro-Roman noble of the Haedui, a political rival of his brother Dumnorix.

[5] **Dumnorīgem . . . dēsignārī sentiēbat**: *felt (realized) that Dumnorix was meant*.

[6] **quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītus**, 3, tr., *I inquire*.

[7] **audācius**, comparative adv., *more boldly*.

[8] **inquiunt**: *they say*.

[9] **summā audāciā**: ablative of description (156); *of the greatest daring*.

[10] **apud plēbem**: *with the (common) people*.

[11] **rērum novārum**: *for revolution* (lit. *for a new state of affairs*).

"Et suam rem familiārem[1] auxit
et facultātēs[2] ad largiendum[3] magnās comparāvit.

Magnum numerum equitātūs suō sumptū[4] semper alit
et circum sē habet.

Neque sōlum[5] domī sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs valet.

Praetereā[6] ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habet.

Propter hōc Helvētiīs est amīcus.

Etiam[7] suō nōmine ōdit[8] tē et Rōmānōs;
nam eōrum adventū potentia ējus minūta est
et Dīvitiācus frāter in antīquum[9] locum grātiae atque honōris est restitūtus.[10]

HE HAS ALREADY BETRAYED YOU

"In proeliō equestrī adversō,[11]
paucīs ante diēbus,[12]
initium fugae factum est
ā Dumnorīge atque ējus equitibus.

Nam equitātuī quem auxiliō tibi Haeduī mīserant
Dumnorīx praeerat.

Eōrum fugā reliquus equitātus perterritus est."

---

[1] **suam rem familiārem**: *his own private fortune.*

[2] **facultātēs**: *resources.*

[3] **ad largiendum**: gerund (179); *for bribery.*

[4] **suō sumptū**: *at his own expense.* He thus maintained a sort of private army something like the 'bodyguards' of American gangsters and certain political 'bosses.'

[5] **neque sōlum**: *and not only.*

[6] **praetereā**, adv., *besides.*

[7] **etiam**, adv., *also.*

[8] **ōdī, ōdisse**, tr., *I hate* (perfect forms with present meaning).

[9] **antīquus, a, um**, *former.*

[10] **restituō, restituere, restituī, restitūtus**, 3, tr., *I restore.*

[11] **adversus, a, um**, *unfavorable.*

[12] **paucīs ante diēbus**: *a few days ago* (lit. *before by a few days*).

CAESAR DETERMINES TO ACT AGAINST DUMNORIX

Ad hās suspīciōnēs[1] certissimae[2] rēs accēdēbant.[3]
Nam Dumnorīx per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxerat.
Persuāserat ut obsidēs inter sē Helvētiī et Sēquanī darent.
Ea omnia injussū Caesaris[4] et cīvitātis fēcerat.
Ā magistrātū dēnique[5] Haeduōrum accūsātus erat.
Itaque in eum animadvertere[6] cōnstituit.
Sed Dīvitiācī frātris
summum in[7] Populum Rōmānum studium,
summam in[7] sē voluntātem,
ēgregiam fidem, temperantiam, cognōverat.
Timēbat nē[8] Dumnorīgis suppliciō Dīvitiācī animum offenderet.[9]
Itaque Dīvitiācum ad sē vocārī jubet,
et, cotīdiānīs interpretibus[10] remōtīs,[11]
per Gāium Valerium Procillum,[12] prīncipem Galliae Prōvinciae,
familiārem[13] suum, cuī summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat,
cum eō loquitur.
Omnia ostendit.

---

[1] **suspīciō, suspīciōnis,** *suspicion.*
[2] **certus, a, um,** *certain.*
[3] **accēdēbant:** *were added.*
[4] **injussū Caesaris:** *without authority from Caesar.*
[5] **dēnique,** adv., *finally.*
[6] **in eum animadvertere:** *to punish him.*
[7] **in,** prep. w. acc., *towards* (212, 2, c).
[8] **nē:** after verbs of fearing = *that* or *lest* (119).
[9] **Dīvitiācī animum offenderet:** *he might hurt the feelings of Divitiacus.*
[10] **interpres, interpretis,** m., *an interpreter.* The Gauls could not speak Latin and Caesar did not know their dialects.
[11] **removeō, removēre, remōvī, remōtus,** 2, tr., *I remove, I put aside.*
[12] **Gāius (ī) Valerius (ī) Procillus (ī),** *Gaius Valerius Procillus,* a Romanized Gaul and a leading citizen of the Province.
[13] **familiāris, familiāris,** *a close friend.*

DIVITIACUS PLEADS FOR HIS BROTHER. CAESAR RELENTS

Dīvitiācus multīs cum lacrimīs[1] Caesarem complexus[2]
obsecrāre coepit.[3]

"Sciō illa omnia esse vēra," inquit,[4]
"neque quisquam[5] ex eō plūs dolōris capit quam[6] ego.

Et amōre[7] frāternō[8] et exīstimātiōne[9] vulgī[10] commoveor."

Haec plūribus verbīs[11] flēns ā Caesare petēbat.

Caesar eum cōnsōlātus est.

Et reī pūblicae injūriam et suum dolōrem
ējus voluntātī et precibus condōnat.[12]

Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat.

Omnia ostendit.

Monet ut[13] in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet.

Dumnorīgī custōdēs[14] pōnit,
ut quae agat,
quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

---

[1] **lacrima, ae,** *a tear.*
[2] **complector, complectī, complexus sum,** 3, tr., *I embrace.*
[3] **obsecrāre coepit:** *began to implore.*
[4] **inquit:** *he said.*
[5] **quisquam:** *anyone* (176, 2, b).
[6] **quam,** relative adv., *than.*
[7] **amor, amōris,** *love.*
[8] **frāternus, a, um,** *brotherly.*
[9] **exīstimātiō, exīstimātiōnis,** *opinion.*
[10] **vulgus, ī,** n., *the public.*
[11] **verbum, ī,** *word.*
[12] **condōnō,** 1, tr., *I forgive, I condone.*
[13] **ut:** noun clause of purpose (115).
[14] **custōs, custōdis,** m., *a guard* (to 'shadow' Dumnorix).

CAESAR TURNS ASIDE FOR SUPPLIES. THE ENEMY FOLLOW

Īnstābat[1] jam diēs quō exercituī frūmentum darī oportēbat.

Ā Bibractī,[2] oppidō Haeduōrum longē[3] maximō,
nōn amplius[4] mīlibus passuum[5] duodēvīgintī (18) aberat.

Itaque iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit,
et Bibracte[2] īre contendit.

THE HELVETIANS MISTAKE CAESAR'S MOVE FOR FLIGHT

Ea rēs per fugitīvōs hostibus nūntiātur.

Helvētiī, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō,
nostrōs ā novissimō āgmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

CAESAR PREPARES TO FIGHT

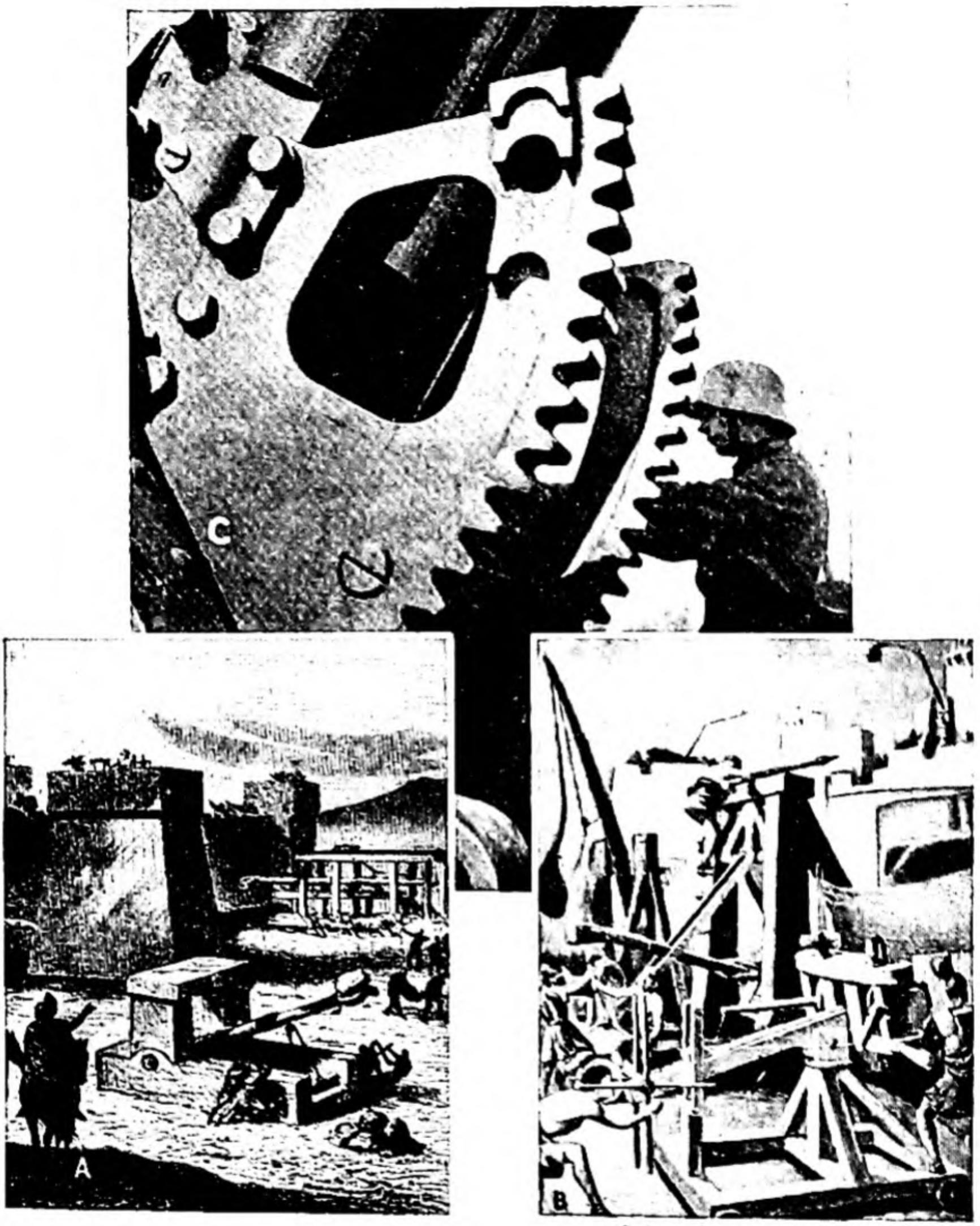
Hōc intellēctō,
Caesar cōpiās suās in proximum collem subdūcit.[6]

Equitātumque mīsit quī sustinēret hostium impetum.

Ipse interim in colle mediō[7] triplicem aciem īnstrūxit
legiōnum quattuor veterānārum,[8]
ita[9] ut[10] suprā[11] sē in summō jugō duās legiōnēs
quōs in Galliā Citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat
et omnia auxilia collocāret

---

1 **Īnstābat:** *was at hand.*
2 **Bibracte, Bibractis** (*abl.*, **Bibractī**), n., *Bibracte*, main town of the Haedui.
3 **longē**, adv., *by far.*
4 **nōn amplius:** *not more than.*
5 **mīlle passūs:** *a (Roman) mile* (lit. *a thousand paces*).
6 **subdūcō, subdūcere, subdūxī, subductus**, 3, tr., *I withdraw.*
7 **in colle mediō:** *halfway up the hill.*
8 **veterānus, a, um**, *veteran.*
9 **ita**, adv., *so.*
10 **ut:** result clause (98).
11 **suprā**, prep. w. acc., *above.*



—*Culver Service and Pictures, Inc.*

EXHIBITS IN WORLD-OLD ARMAMENT RACE

A. Ballista *B. Catapulta* *C. Modern Heavy Gun*

As far back as the records of human history go, man has always applied the science of his age to the construction of armaments. The sling and bow of the savage, the catapulta and ballista of the Romans, the powerful crossbow of the Middle Ages, the siege guns of today mark this progress. History does indeed repeat itself. In ancient times—we read—when Roman armies were pressing in upon Carthage, the women of that city gave their hair to be made into bow-strings for the catapults; today old razor blades and bits of scrap metal are collected from German *hausfrauen* to be melted and molded into cannon.

ac tōtum montem hominibus complēret.[1]

Intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferrī jussit.

Helvētiī, cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī,
impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulerant.

THE 'ZERO' HOUR

What thoughts were in Caesar's mind as, from his elevated position, he watched the long column of the Helvetians coming onto the field? His first pitched battle in Gaul, and that with a foe well accustomed to fighting and now desperately in earnest. All that great military glory that history records of him was yet in the future. He stood at the threshold of his military career, and that career turned on the outcome of this day. To lose would mean destruction not only of his army but of all his ambitions. And now the Helvetians—shouting, shields locked in front and overhead—were advancing. Caesar and his staff dismounted to encourage the men by sharing their struggle on foot.

Ipsī, cōnfertissimā aciē,[2]
rējectō nostrō equitātū,
phalange[3] factā,
sub[4] prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

THE BATTLE BEGINS

(It was now about 1 o'clock in the afternoon)

Caesar, cohortātus suōs, proelium commīsit.

---

[1] The execution of the movement by which Caesar prepared to receive the Helvetian attack occupied something like two hours.

[2] **cōnfertissimā aciē:** *with their massed array.*

[3] **phalanx, phalangis,** *a phalanx,* referring to the closed array formed by locking the shields in front and overhead.

[4] **sub:** *up to, up against.* They were moving (hence the accusative *aciem*) up the side of the hill.

Mīlitēs, ē locō superiōre pīlīs[1] missīs,
facile hostium phalangem[2] perfrēgērunt.

Eā perfrāctā,
gladiīs dēstrictīs,[3]
in eōs impetum fēcērunt.

Gallī tandem[4] vulneribus dēfessī
et pedem referre
et ad montem quī suberat sē recipere coepērunt.

THE ROMAN ATTACKING FORCE IS ENCIRCLED BY THE HELVETIAN REAR GUARD

Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs,
Boiī et Tulingī,[5]
quī hominum mīlibus circiter[6] quīndecim
āgmen hostium claudēbant[7]
et novissimīs praesidiō erant,[8]

---

[1] **pīlum, ī,** *a javelin.* These javelins were seven feet long and had soft metal just behind the tips which would therefore bend on striking and be useless to the enemy. Sometimes too they penetrated the overlapping shields of the phalanx, bent back on the other side and so locked the shields together, thus doing great damage to the ranks of the enemy. This discharge of the heavy *pila* parallels the barrage of modern warfare which precedes the advance line of a charge. The enemy has no time to recover and reform before the attack is upon them. Each legionary soldier had two *pila* as part of his regular equipment for battle.

[2] **phalanx, phalangis,** *a phalanx.*

[3] **gladiīs dēstrictīs:** *with drawn swords.*

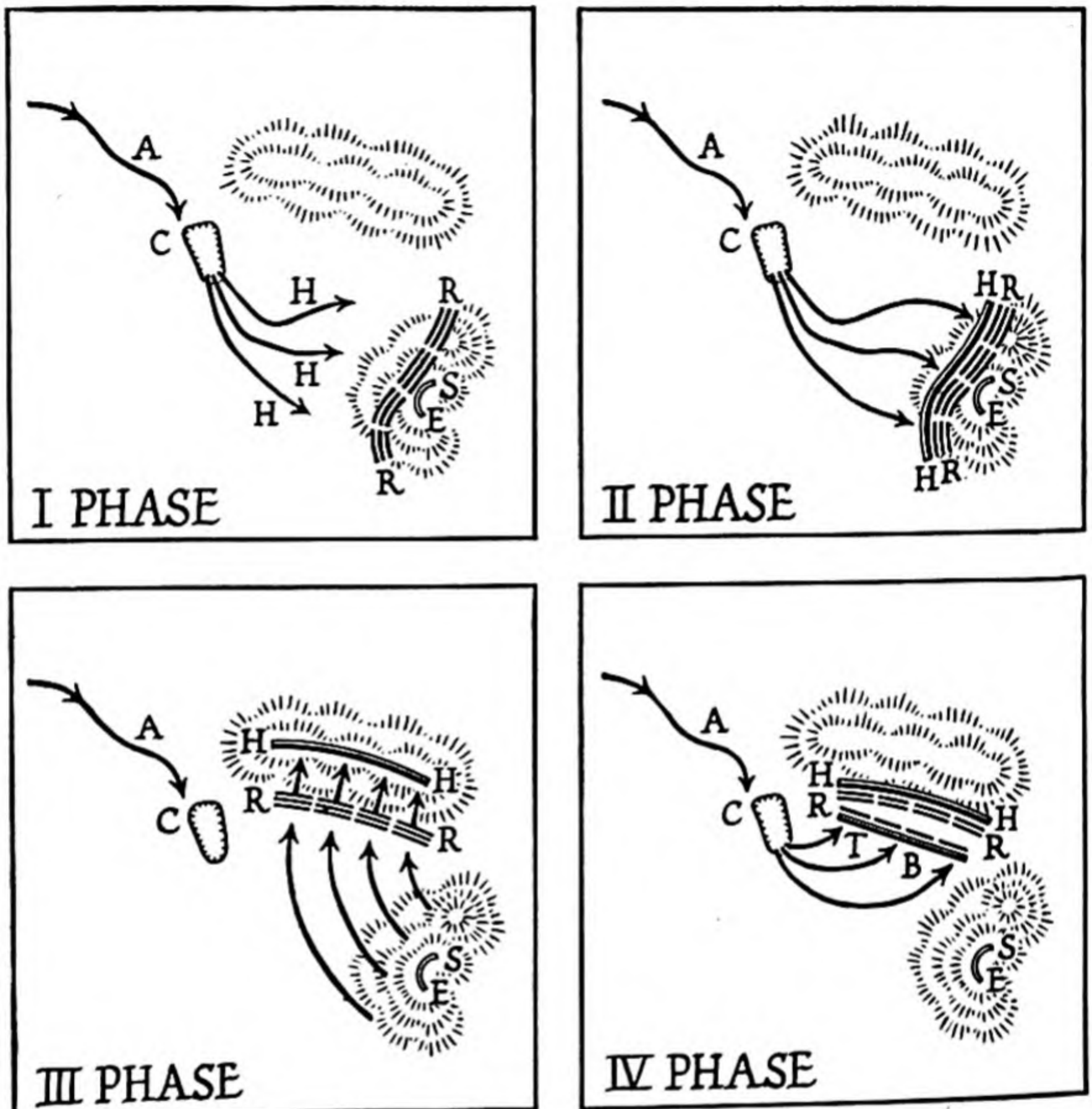
[4] **tandem,** adv., *finally.*

[5] The Helvetians had attacked before the whole column (fifteen miles long) had come up. The Boii and Tulingi who formed the rear guard came onto the field only after the first repulse of the Helvetians. They were thus enabled to take the Romans on the flank and rear.

[6] **circiter,** adv., *about.*

[7] **claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus,** 3, tr., *I close.*

[8] **novissimīs praesidiō erant:** double dative (143, 144); *were for a guard to the rear; were a rear guard.*



CAESAR'S FIRST BATTLE IN GAUL

S. Summit of the hill on which Caesar drew up his men. E. The entrenchment to protect the baggage. Here were the new recruits. R-R. The *triplex aciēs*. A. The Helvetian column coming up. H. The Helvetians advancing towards Caesar. C. The familiar carts and cattle of the Helvetians. In the second phase, about one o'clock in the afternoon, the Helvetians are pushing up the hill. The column (A) is still winding up. In the third phase the Helvetians retreat to a neighboring hill, pursued by the *triplex aciēs*. Column A is still coming up. Finally, in the fourth phase, the Boii (B) and Tulingi (T) arrive and attack the Romans in the rear. The *tertia aciēs* meets them. The Helvetians on the hill return to the attack.

ex itinere nostrōs latere apertō[1] aggressī circumvēnērunt.[2]

Hōc vīsō, Helvētiī quī in montem sē recēperant,
proelium redintegrāre coepērunt.

Rōmānī conversa signa bipartītō[3] intulērunt,
prīma et secunda aciēs ut victīs et submōtīs resisteret
tertia ut venientēs sustinēret.[4]

THE TIDE TURNS

Ita ancipitī proeliō diū et ācriter pugnātum est.

Hostēs diūtius sustinēre nostrōrum impetum nōn poterant.[5]

Itaque alterī[6] sē in montem recēpērunt,
alterī[7] ad[8] impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt.

("Before the sun went down, evil tidings must have reached the non-combatants who were still wending their way towards the field. It is certain that many of the wagons never came into the laager. What despair fell upon the baffled emigrants; how the jaded cattle were headed round again towards the north, and goaded through that night; how those who escaped the slaughter

---

[1] **latere apertō**: *on the open flank.*

[2] **circumveniō, circumvenīre, circumvēnī, circumventus**, 4, tr., *I surround.*

[3] **bipartītō**: *in two divisions.*

[4] The *triplex aciēs* proves its worth. Easily and without confusion the third and last line about faces to meet the new danger from the Boii and Tulingi. An *aciēs* was not a single file of men but a line eight ranks deep. When the men in front grew tired, they stepped back to rest while a fresh rank came forward to take their place. This rotation of ranks enabled the Romans to maintain a vigorous front in the center of the fight.

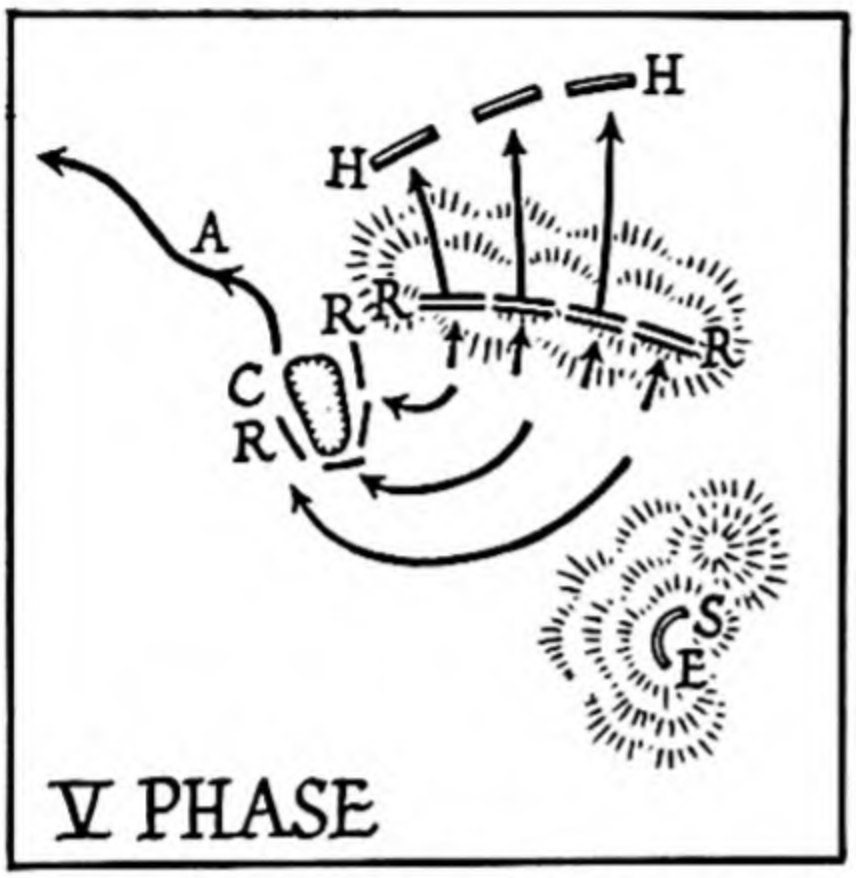
[5] The semibarbarous warriors of the Helvetians, though terrible in their opening mass attack, were no match for Caesar's trained men in steady and sustained fighting.

[6] **alterī**: *the one group* (the Helvetians who had at first retired to the hill).

[7] **alterī**: *the other group* (the Boii and the Tulingi who had come between the Romans and the baggage and were now giving ground to Caesar's *tertia aciēs*).

[8] **ad**: *near, at.*

tramped after, and told the tale of the calamity; the din, the confusion, the long weariness of the retreat,—these things it is easy to imagine, but those only who have shared the rout and ruin of a beaten army can adequately realise"—T. Rice Holmes, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, p. 35).



H. The Helvetians retreating. A. The Helvetian column now in flight. R-R. The *triplex aciēs*. C. The carts and cattle of the Helvetians. During the late afternoon and night the Helvetians are in flight while a desperate struggle takes place at the baggage cache.

THE FIGHT CONTINUES AROUND THE BAGGAGE TRAIN

The *carrī* were used here much as the early settlers in the West used a circle of prairie schooners as a defense against Indians. The heavy carts and wagons formed a very serviceable rampart but could easily be set on fire.

In multam noctem ad impedīmenta pugnātum est.

Nam prō[1] vāllō carrōs objēcerant,
et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla conjiciēbant.

Diū in eō locō est pugnātum.

Tandem[2] impedīmentīs nostrī potītī sunt.

Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est.

THE ENEMY FLEES

Ex eō proeliō
circiter[3] hominum mīlia centum quadrāgintā (140) superfuerant eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt.

---

[1] **prō**: *in place of, for, as* (223).

[2] **tandem**, adv., *finally*.

[3] **circiter**, adv., *about*.

—*Black Star*

ACIES ROMANA

A Roman army is here seen advancing into battle. The scene of this picture is laid in northern Africa where elephants were used much as a modern army uses tanks.

Nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō,[1]
in fīnēs Lingonum[2] diē quārtō pervēnērunt.

HEAVY LOSSES DELAY PURSUIT

Et propter vulnera mīlitum
et propter sepultūram occīsōrum,[3]
nostrī trīduum morātī
eōs sequī nōn poterant.

Caesar ad Lingones nūntiōs mīsit.

Eōs frūmentō aut aliā rē hostēs adjuvāre vetuit.[4]

---

[1] **intermittō, intermittere, intermīsī, intermissus,** 3, tr., *I interrupt.*

[2] **Lingonēs, Lingonum,** *the Lingones,* a Gallic tribe through whose lands the fleeing Helvetians had to pass.

[3] **sepultūram occīsōrum:** *the burial of the dead.*

[4] **vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus,** 1, tr.; acc. w. infin., *I forbid.*

Post trīduum ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

THE HELVETIANS SURRENDER

Helvētiī, omnium rērum inopiā adductī,
lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt.

Ad eum in itinere convēnērunt,
sēque ad pedēs prōjēcērunt,
atque flentēs pācem petēbant.

Eōs Caesar suum adventum exspectāre jussit.

Eō[1] Caesar pervēnit
et obsidēs, arma, servōs popōscit.

AN ATTEMPTED ESCAPE

Intereā circiter[2] hominum mīlia sex ējus pāgī
quī Verbigenus[3] appellātur,[4]
sīve[5] timōre perterritī,
sīve[5] spē salūtis inductī,
prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī,
ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

Caesar dē hāc rē certior factus est,
atque imperāvit eīs quōrum per fīnēs ierant ut eōs redūcerent.[6]

Eōs reductōs[6] in numerō hostium habuit.[7]

Reliquōs omnēs,
obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs,
in dēditiōnem accēpit.[8]

---

[1] **eō**, adv., *there, to that place* (motion).
[2] **circiter**, adv., *about*.
[3] **Verbigenus, a, um**, *Verbigine*.
[4] **appellō**, 1, tr., *I call, I name*.
[5] **sīve . . . sīve**, conjs., *either . . . or*.
[6] **redūcō, redūcere, redūxī, reductus**, 3, tr., *I lead back, I bring back*.
[7] **in numerō hostium habuit**: *he treated as enemies* (that is, he killed them).
[8] **accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus**, 3, tr., *I receive*.

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in fīnēs suōs revertī jussit.

Oppida vīcōsque quōs incenderant restituere[1] jussit.

THE GERMAN 'PERIL'

Nam agrum Helvētiōrum vacāre nōluit
nē propter bonitātem[2] agrōrum
Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt,
ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent
et fīnitimī Galliae Prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent.
Petentibus Haeduīs concessit
ut Boiōs in fīnibus suīs collocārent.

Quibus Haeduī agrōs dedērunt
eōsque in parem jūris lībertātisque condiciōnem recēpērunt.

PEACE

Caesar's victory greatly strengthened the prestige of the pro-Roman parties throughout Gaul. Most of the Gallic nations thought it expedient and diplomatic to cultivate the victorious foreigner. Many of them were genuinely glad that the powerful Helvetians had not obtained a footing in western Gaul.

Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō,
tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum,
ad Caesarem convēnērunt
ut eī grātulārentur.

---

[1] **restituō, restituere, restituī, restitūtus,** 3, tr., *I restore.*

[2] **bonitās, bonitātis,** *excellence.*

★ UBIQUE S·T·R
SOCIETAS TELEGRAPHICA ROMANA
"Ubicumque arma Romana..."
★ SEMPER S·T·R
ROMAM AD SENATUM POPULUMQUE ROMANUM
VENI, VIDI, VICI
CAESAR
ROMAE - ATHENIS - IN OMNIBUS FERE PROVINCIIS - RHODI - ROMAE

As a Modern Caesar Might Have Reported It

Reports of Caesar's victory over the Helvetians were carried down to Rome by fast courier. Had he lived in the era of the telegraph (or radio) his report might have taken some form like the one shown here. It would have been sent in from the field by wire or courier *(per nuntium)* to Geneva *(Genava)*, wired to Mesalla, the main city of Farther Gaul just at the mouth of the Rhone *(Rhodanus)*, and then relayed by direct wire to Rome. As a matter of fact the words of this 'telegraphic' report are attributed to Caesar on the occasion of a later victory.

SELECTIONS FROM CHRISTIAN WRITINGS

THE SIGN OF THE CROSS

In nōmine Patris
et Fīliī
et Spīritūs Sanctī.
Āmēn.

THE OUR FATHER

Pater noster
Quī es in caelīs
sanctificētur nōmen Tuum,
adveniat rēgnum Tuum,
fīat voluntās Tua,
sīcut in caelō
et in terrā.

Pānem nostrum cotīdiānum dā nōbīs hodiē,
et dīmitte nōbīs dēbita nostra
sīcut et nōs dīmittimus dēbitōribus nostrīs,
et nē nōs indūcās in tentātiōnem
sed līberā nōs ā malō.
Āmēn.

THE HAIL MARY

Avē Marīa,
grātiā plēna,
Dominus tēcum,
benedicta tū in mulieribus,
et benedictus frūctus ventris tuī,
Jēsus.

Sancta Marīa,
Māter Deī,
Ōrā prō nōbīs
peccātōribus,
nunc et in hōrā mortis nostrae.
Āmēn.

THE DOXOLOGY

Glōria Patrī et Fīliō
et Spīrituī Sanctō,
sīcut erat in prīncipiō
et nunc et semper
et in saecula saeculōrum.
Āmēn.

THE NATIVITY OF OUR LORD

In diēbus illīs
exiit ēdictum ā Caesare Augustō
ut dēscrīberētur[1] ūniversus orbis.
Haec dēscrīptiō prīma facta est
ā praeside[2] Syriae Cyrīnō.
Et ībant omnēs
ut profitērentur[3] singulī in suam cīvitātem.

Ascendit autem et Jōsēph ā Galilaeā
dē cīvitāte Nāzareth in Jūdaeam
in cīvitātem Dāvīd quae vocātur Bethlehem;
eō quod esset dē domō et familiā Dāvīd.

Et Marīa peperit[4] Fīlium suum prīmōgenitum
et pannīs eum involvit

---

[1] **dēscrīberētur**: *should be enrolled.*
[2] **praeside**: *governor.*
[3] **profitērentur**: *be enrolled.*
[4] **peperit**: *brought forth.*

et reclīnāvit eum in praesēpiō[1]
quia nōn erat eīs locus in dīversōriō.[2]

Et pāstōrēs erant in regiōne eādem
vigilantēs et custōdientēs vigiliās noctis
super gregem[3] suum.

Et ecce[4] angelus Dominī stetit jūxtā[5] illōs,
et clāritās Deī circumfulsit[6] illōs
et timuērunt timōre magnō.

Et dīxit illīs angelus:
"Nōlīte timēre;
ecce[4] enim ēvangelīzō[7] vōbīs gaudium magnum
quod erit omnī populō.
Quia nātus est vōbīs hodiē[8] Salvātor
quī est Chrīstus Dominus
in cīvitāte Dāvīd.
Et hōc vōbīs signum;
inveniētis īnfantem pannīs involūtum
et positum in praesēpiō."[1]

Et subitō facta est cum angelō multitūdō mīlitiae[9] caelestis
laudantium Deum et dīcentium:
"Glōria in altissimīs Deō
et in terrā pāx hominibus bonae voluntātis."

Discessērunt ab eīs angelī in caelum
et pastōrēs vēnērunt festīnantēs[10]

---

[1] **praesēpiō**: *manger.*
[2] **dīversōriō**: *inn.*
[3] **gregem**: *flock.*
[4] **ecce**: *behold.*
[5] **jūxtā**: *near.*
[6] **circumfulsit**: *shone round.*
[7] **ēvangelīzō**: *I announce.*
[8] **hodiē**, adv., *today.*
[9] **mīlitiae**: *army.*
[10] **festīnantēs**: *hastening.*

et invēnērunt Marīam et Jōsēph
et īnfantem positum in praesēpiō.[1]
Et reversī sunt pastōrēs glōrificantēs et laudantes Deum.

THE GLORIA

The early Christians developed the Gloria of the angels into this hymn of praise which has been sung at Mass, ever since, in catacomb and cathedral, in the wastes of mission lands and in the heart of crowded cities.

Glōria in excelsīs[2] Deō;
et in terrā pāx hominibus bonae voluntātis.
Laudāmus Tē.
Benedīcimus Tē.
Adōrāmus Tē.
Glōrificāmus Tē.
Grātiās agimus Tibi propter magnam glōriam Tuam,
Domine Deus,
Rēx caelestis,
Deus pater omnipotēns,
Domine Fīlī ūnigenite,
Jēsū Chrīste,
Domine Deus,
Agnus Deī,[3]
Fīlius Patris.
Quī tollis[4] peccāta mundī,
miserēre[5] nōbīs.
Quī tollis[4] peccāta mundī,
suscipe[6] dēprecātiōnem[7] nostram.

---

[1] **praesēpiō**: *manger.*
[2] **in excelsīs**: *in the highest.*
[3] **Agnus Deī**: *Lamb of God.*
[4] **tollis**: *takest away.*
[5] **miserēre**: *have mercy* (w. dat.).
[6] **suscipe**: *accept.*
[7] **dēprecātiōnem**: *prayer.*

Quī sedēs[1] ad dexteram Patris,
miserēre[2] nōbīs.
Quoniam Tū sōlus sanctus
Tū sōlus Dominus,
Tū sōlus altissimus,
Jēsū Chrīste!
Cum Sanctō Spīritū
in glōriā Deī Patris.
Āmēn.

THE DEATH OF OUR LORD

Pīlātus autem, cum audīvisset hōs sermōnēs,
addūxit Jēsum forās[3]
et sēdit[4] prō tribūnālī.[5]
Erat autem Parascēvē Paschae,[6] hōra quasi[7] sexta,
et dīxit Jūdaeīs:
"Ecce Rēx vester."

Illī autem clāmābant:[8]
"Tolle![9] Tolle! Crucifīge eum!"

Dīcit eīs Pīlātus:
"Rēgem vestrum crucifīgam?"

Respondērunt pontificēs:[10]
"Nōn habēmus rēgem nisi[11] Caesarem."

---

[1] **sedēs**: *sittest.*
[2] **miserēre**: *have mercy* (w. dat.)
[3] **forās**: *forth* (outside).
[4] **sēdit**: *he sat.*
[5] **tribūnālī**: *judgment seat.*
[6] **Parascēvē Paschae**: *the Parasceve of the Pasch.*
[7] **quasi**: *about.*
[8] **clāmō** 1, tr., *I cry out.*
[9] **tolle**: *take away.*
[10] **pontificēs**: *priests.*
[11] **nisi**: *except.*

Tunc ergō trādidit eīs illum
ut crucifīgerētur.
Suscēpērunt[1] autem Jēsum
et ēdūxērunt.[2]
Et bājulāns[3] sibi crucem
exīvit in eum locum quī dīcitur Calvāriae,
ubi crucifīxērunt eum
et cum eō aliōs duōs,
hinc et hinc,[4]
medium autem Jēsum.

Stābat autem jūxtā[5] crucem Jēsū, māter ējus.
Cum vīdīsset ergō Jēsus mātrem
et discipulum stantem quem dīligēbat,[6]
dīcit mātrī suae:
"Mulier, ecce fīlius tuus."

Deinde[7] dīcit discipulō:
"Ecce māter tua."

Posteā Jesus dīxit;
"Sitiō."[8]
Vās[9] ergō erat positum acētō[10] plēnum.
Illī autem spongiam plēnam acētō,[10]
hyssōpō[11] circumpōnentēs
obtulērunt[12] ōrī[13] ējus.

---

1 **suscēpērunt:** *they took.*
2 **ēdūxērunt:** *they led him out.*
3 **bājulāns:** *carrying.*
4 **hinc et hinc:** *on this side and on that.*
5 **jūxtā:** *near.*
6 **dīligēbat:** *loved.*
7 **deinde:** *then.*
8 **Sitiō:** *I thirst.*
9 **vās:** *jar.*
10 **acētum, ī,** *vinegar.*
11 **hyssōpō:** *hyssop.*
12 **obtulērunt:** *they offered.*
13 **ōrī:** *to his mouth.*

Cum ergō accēpisset Jēsus acētum,[1] dīxit:
"Cōnsūmmātum est."[2]
Et, inclīnātō capite,[3]
trādidit spīritum.

FROM THE MASS OF EASTER

Dīc[4] nōbīs, Marīa,
Quid vīdistī in viā?

Sepulcrum[5] Chrīstī vīventis
Et glōriam vīdī resurgentis,[6]
Angelicōs[7] tēstēs,[8]
Sūdārium[9] et vestēs.[10]

Surrēxit Chrīstus, spēs mea;
Praecēdet vōs in Galilaeam.

Scīmus Chrīstum surrēxisse
Ā mortuīs vērē.[11]
Tū nōbīs, Victor
Rēx, miserēre.[12] Āmēn.
Allelūja![13]

---

[1] **acētum, ī,** *vinegar.*
[2] **Cōnsūmmātum est:** *It is consummated.*
[3] **inclīnātō capite:** *(His) head being bowed.*
[4] **dīc:** *tell* (imperative).
[5] **sepulcrum:** *the sepulchre.*
[6] **resurgentis:** *rising.*
[7] **angelicus, a, um,** *angelic.*
[8] **tēstēs:** *witnesses.*
[9] **sūdārium:** *napkin.*
[10] **vestis, vestis,** *garment.*
[11] **vērē,** adv., *truly.*
[12] **miserēre:** *have mercy* (w. dat.).
[13] **allelūja:** *alleluia,* a Hebrew shout of joy.

COMPLETE WORD LIST FOR FIRST YEAR CLASSIFIED ACCORDING TO MODELS[1]

NOUNS LIKE *VIA, AE*

***amīcitia, ae**	*friendship*
***aqua, ae**	*water*
***audācia, ae**	*boldness* *daring*
***causa, ae**	*cause*
***cōpia, ae**	*abundance* *supply*
***dīligentia, ae**	*care* *diligence*
fāma, ae	*rumor* *fame*
***familia, ae**	*household* *family*
***fīlia, ae**	*daughter*
***fortūna, ae**	*fortune* *fate*
***fossa, ae**	*ditch*
***fuga, ae**	*flight*
***funda, ae**	*sling*
***Gallia, ae**	*Gaul*
***glōria, ae**	*fame* *glory*
***grātia, ae**	*favor*

[1] Under each model the words are arranged alphabetically except when important compounds are grouped together. The words indicated by an asterisk have been seen before Lesson 33.

hōra, ae	*hour*
***injūria, ae**	*wrong*; *injustice*
***inopia, ae**	*scarcity*; *lack*
***īnscientia, ae**	*ignorance*
***īnsula, ae**	*island*
***Italia, ae**	*Italy*
***lingua, ae**	*tongue*; *language*
***littera, ae**	*letter* (of the alphabet)
***lūna, ae**	*moon*
***māteria, ae**	*timber*
***mora, ae**	*delay*
***nātūra, ae**	*nature*
nauta, ae, *m.	*sailor*
***opera, ae**	*services*; *pains*; *effort*
***ōra, ae**	*seacoast*
***perfuga, ae**	*a deserter*
***porta, ae**	*gate*
potentia, ae	*power*
***praeda, ae**	*plunder*; *booty*
***prōvincia, ae**	*province*
pugna, ae	*fight*
***rīpa, ae**	*bank* (of a river)
Rōma, ae	*Rome*
***sagitta, ae**	*arrow*

***scientia, ae**	*knowledge*
***sententia, ae**	*opinion*; *vote*
Sicilia, ae (a large island)	*Sicily*
***silva, ae**	*forest*; *grove*
***temperantia, ae**	*self-control*
***terra, ae**	*land*
***turma, ae**	*a troop*; *squadron (of cavalry)*
***via, ae**	*road*; *way*
***victōria, ae**	*victory*
vigilia, ae	*watch*
vīta, ae	*life*

PLURAL NOUNS LIKE *VIAE, VIARUM*

***angustiae, angustiārum**	*narrow pass* *difficulty*
Athēnae, Athēnārum	*Athens*
Belgae, Belgārum,** ***m.	*Belgians*
***cōpiae, cōpiārum**	*troops*
***īnsidiae, īnsidiārum**	*ambush* *plot* *snare*
***litterae, litterārum**	*letter* (an epistle) *literature*
***sarcinae, sarcinārum**	*soldier's pack* *baggage*
***vigiliae, vigiliārum**	*sentinels*

NOUNS LIKE *SERVUS, I*

***amīcus, ī**	*friend*
***animus, ī**	*soul*; *mind*; *character*
annus, ī	*year*
***barbarus, ī**	*a barbarian*
dolus, ī	*artifice*; *trickery*
***fugitīvus, ī**	*fugitive*
***Gallus, ī**	*a Gaul*
***Germānus, ī**	*a German*
***gladius, ī**	*sword*
***Helvētius, ī**	*an Helvetian*
inimīcus, ī	*an enemy* (personal)
***lēgātus, ī**	*lieutenant*; *envoy*; *ambassador*
***locus, ī**	*place*
***mūrus, ī**	*wall*
***numerus, ī**	*number*
***nūntius, ī**	*messenger*; *message*; *report*
***pāgus, ī**	*district*; *canton*; *clan*
***populus, ī**	*nation*; *people*

Rhodus, ī (a small island), *f.*	*Rhodes*
***Rōmānus, ī**	*a Roman*
***servus, ī**	*a slave*
***socius, ī**	*ally* *companion*
***vīcus, ī**	*village* *street*
***ager, agrī**	*field*
***puer, puerī**	*boy*
vir, virī	*man* (*i. e.*, male)

PLURAL NOUNS LIKE *SERVI, SERVORUM*

***fīnitimī, fīnitimōrum**	*neighbors*
***līberī, līberōrum**	*children*

NOUNS LIKE *BELLUM, I*

***aedificium, ī**	*building*
auxilium, ī	*help*; *assistance*
***bellum, ī**	*war*
***beneficium, ī**	*benefit*; *good deed*
bīduum, ī	*a period of two days*
caelum, ī	*sky*; *heavens*
***castellum, ī**	*fort*
***concilium, ī**	*council*
***cōnsilium, ī**	*plan*
***frūmentum, ī**	*grain*
***imperium, ī**	*supreme power*; *(highest) command*
***initium, ī**	*beginning*
īnstitūtum, ī	*institution*
***jūdicium, ī**	*judgment*; *trial*
***jugum, ī**	*ridge*; *yoke*
***jūmentum, ī**	*beast of burden*
***maleficium, ī**	*evil deed*; *crime*
***oppidum, ī**	*town*
***pābulum, ī**	*fodder*
***perīculum, ī**	*danger*

***pīlum, ī**	*javelin*
praemium, ī	*reward*
***praesidium, ī**	*garrison*; *fort*
***proelium, ī**	*battle*
***rēgnum, ī**	*kingdom*; *kingly power*
***respōnsum, ī**	*answer*
***signum, ī**	*standard* (military); *sign*; *signal*
spatium, ī	*space*
studium, ī	*eagerness*; *zeal*; *devotion*
subsidium, ī	*reserve*; *reinforcement*
supplicium, ī	*punishment*
***tēlum, ī**	*weapon*; *dart*
tergum, ī	*back*; *rear*
trīduum, ī	*a period of three days*
***vadum, ī**	*ford* (of a river); *shallow*
***vāllum, ī**	*rampart*
***vinculum, ī**	*chain*; *bond*

PLURAL NOUNS LIKE *BELLA, BELLORUM*

***arma, armōrum**	*arms, weapons*
***castra, castrōrum**	*camp*
***hīberna, hībernōrum**	*winter quarters*
***impedīmenta, impedīmentōrum**	*baggage*

NOUNS LIKE *LEX, LEGIS*

***aestās, aestātis**	*summer*
***agger, aggeris**	*mound* *dike* *rampart*
***altitūdō, altitūdinis**	*height* *depth*
***auctōritās, auctōritātis**	*authority* *influence*
***Caesar, Caesaris**	*Caesar*
***calamitās, calamitātis**	*disaster* *misfortune*
***celeritās, celeritātis**	*speed* *rapidity*
***cīvitās, cīvitātis**	*state* *citizenship*
condiciō, condiciōnis	*condition* *terms* *state*
***conjūrātiō, conjūrātiōnis**	*conspiracy*
***cōnsul, cōnsulis,** *m.*	*consul*
***cupiditās, cupiditātis**	*desire* *greed* *passion*
***dēditiō, dēditiōnis**	*surrender*
***dignitās, dignitātis**	*worth* *esteem* *honor*
***dolor, dolōris**	*sorrow* *grief* *pain*

***dux, ducis, *m*.**	*leader* *guide* *general*
***eques, equitis, *m*.**	*knight* *horseman* *cavalryman*
***explōrātor, explōrātōris**	*scout*
***fortitūdō, fortitūdinis**	*courage* *bravery*
***frāter, frātris (frātrum)**	*brother*
***hiems, hiemis**	*winter* *storm*
***homō, hominis, *m*.**	*man* (*i. e.*, a human being)
honor, honōris	*honor*
***hūmānitās, hūmānitātis**	*refinement* *culture* *mercy*
***imperātor, imperātōris**	*general* *commander-in-chief*
labor, labōris	*toil* *exertion* *distress*
***lapis, lapidis, *m*.**	*stone*
laus, laudis	*praise*
***lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis**	*embassy*
***legiō, legiōnis**	*legion*
***lēx, lēgis**	*law*
***lībertās, lībertātis**	*liberty*
lūx, lūcis	*light*
***magnitūdō, magnitūdinis**	*size* *greatness*
***mercātor, mercātōris**	*merchant*

***mīles, mīlitis,** *m.*	*soldier*
***mōs, mōris,** *m.*	*custom*; *habit*
***multitūdō, multitūdinis**	*crowd*; *multitude*
***mūnītiō, mūnītiōnis**	*fortification*
***nōbilitās, nōbilitātis**	*nobility*
***obses, obsidis,** *c.*	*hostage*
obsidiō, obsidiōnis	*blockade*; *siege*
opīniō, opīniōnis	*belief*; *reputation*; *opinion*
ops, opis	*power*; *help*
***ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis**	*speech*
***ōrdō, ōrdinis,** *m.*	*order*; *rank*
***pater, patris (patrum)**	*father*
***pāx, pācis**	*peace*
pēs, pedis, *m.*	*foot*
plēbs, plēbis	*the common people*; *the masses*
potestās, potestātis	*power*
***praetor, praetōris**	*praetor*
***prīnceps, prīncipis,** *m.*	*chief*; *leading man*
profectiō, profectiōnis	*a setting out*; *a departure*
ratiō, ratiōnis	*reason*; *plan*; *method*; *manner*

regiō, regiōnis	*direction, region*
rēx, rēgis, *m.	*king*
salūs, salūtis, *f.	*safety*
sermō, sermōnis, *m.	*conversation, talk*
servitūs, servitūtis, *f.	*slavery*
sōl, sōlis, *m.	*sun*
***tempestās, tempestātis**	*weather, storm*
***terror, terrōris**	*panic, dread*
***timor, timōris**	*fear*
uxor, uxōris, *f.	*wife*
***victor, victōris**	*a victor, conqueror*
virtūs, virtūtis, *f.	*courage, manliness, virtue*
***voluntās, voluntātis**	*will*
vōx, vōcis	*voice*

PLURAL NOUNS LIKE *LEGES, LEGUM*

***mājōrēs, mājōrum,** *m.*	*ancestors*
***mōrēs, mōrum,** *m.*	*character* *customs*
opēs, opum, *f.*	*wealth* *resources*
precēs, precum, *f.*	*prayers* *entreaties*

NOUNS LIKE *PARS, PARTIS*

adulēscēns, adulēscentis, *m.	*young man*
***arx, arcis**	*citadel*
***caedēs, caedis**	*killing*; *slaughter*
cīvis, cīvis, *m.	*citizen*; *fellow citizen*
***classis, classis** *(abl.* **-e,** *less often* **-ī)**	*fleet*
cliēns, clientis, *m.	*client*; *dependent*
***cohors, cohortis**	*cohort*
collis, collis, *m.	*hill*
***gēns, gentis**	*tribe*; *race*; *nation*
hostis, hostis, *m.	*enemy* (public)
***imber, imbris**	*rainstorm*
linter, lintris, *f.	*skiff*
mēns, mentis	*mind*
mēnsis, mēnsis, *m.	*month*
mōns, montis, *m.	*mountain*
***mors, mortis**	*death*
***nāvis, nāvis**	*ship*
***nox, noctis**	*night*
***pars, partis**	*part*; *direction*
pōns, pontis, *m.	*bridge*
***ratis, ratis**	*raft*

***turris, turris**	*tower*
***urbs, urbis**	*city*
***vallēs, vallis**	*valley*
vīs (vim, vī; *pl.* vīrēs, vīrium)	*force*, *strength*, *energy*

PLURAL NOUNS LIKE *PARTES, PARTIUM*

***fīnēs, fīnium,** *m.* { *boundary* / *territory*

NOUNS LIKE *FLUMEN, FLUMINIS*

***āgmen, āgminis**	*line (of march)* *column*
***facinus, facinoris**	*deed* *crime*
***flūmen, flūminis**	*river*
***frīgus, frīgoris**	*cold*
iter, itineris, *n.	*journey* *way*
***jūs, jūris**	*right* *justice*
***latus, lateris**	*side* *flank*
***nōmen, nōminis**	*name*
***opus, operis**	*work* *fortification*
***tempus, temporis**	*time*
***vulnus, vulneris**	*wound*

NOUNS LIKE *PASSUS, US*

***adventus, ūs**	*arrival*
***coetus, ūs**	*gathering* *meeting*
***concursus, ūs**	*a running together* *concourse*
***cōnspectus, ūs**	*sight*
***conventus, ūs**	*meeting* *assembly* *assizes*
***currus, ūs**	*chariot* *cart*
***equitātus, ūs**	*cavalry*
***exercitus, ūs**	*army*
***frūctus, ūs**	*fruit* *produce* *profit*
***impetus, ūs**	*attack*
***lacus, ūs**	*lake*
***magistrātus, ūs**	*magistrate* *magistracy*
***mōtus, ūs**	*movement* *disturbance* *revolution*
***occāsus, ūs**	*setting*
***passus, ūs**	*a pace*
***peditātus, ūs**	*infantry*
***portus, ūs**	*port*
***senātus, ūs**	*senate*
***situs, ūs**	*location* *site*

NOUNS LIKE *RES, REI*

***aciēs, aciēī**	*battle line*
***diēs, diēī,** *m. (f.)*	*day*
***fidēs, fideī**	*trust* *confidence* *loyalty*
***rēs, reī**	*thing* *affair*
***spēs, speī**	*hope*

ADJECTIVES LIKE *MAGNUS, A, UM*

***aequus, a, um**	*even, just*
aliēnus, a, um	*another's, foreign*
***altus, a, um**	*high, deep*
amīcus, a, um; *dat.	*friendly*
***amplus, a, um**	*large, ample*
angustus, a, um	*narrow, difficult*
apertus, a, um	*open, uncovered*
barbarus, a, um	*barbarous, uncivilized*
***bonus, a, um**	*good*
cēterus, a, um	*the other, the rest*
cōnfertus, a, um; *abl.	*crowded*
continuus, a, um	*successive*
***cotīdiānus, a, um**	*daily*
cupidus, a, um; *gen.*	*desirous of, eager for*
***decimus, a, um**	*tenth*
***dēfessus, a, um**	*weary, tired*
dignus, a, um; *abl.*	*worthy (of)*
dīversus, a, um	*opposite, different*

dubius, a, um	*doubtful*
***dūrus, a, um**	*hard*
***ēditus, a, um**	*elevated*; *high*
***ēgregius, a, um**	*outstanding*; *remarkable*
exiguus, a, um	*little*
***expedītus, a, um**	*ready*; *light-armed*
***exterus, a, um**	*foreign*
***extrēmus, a, um**	*outermost*; *last*
fīnitimus, a, um; *dat.	*neighboring*
***firmus, a, um**	*strong*; *steady*
grātus, a, um; *dat.*	*acceptable*; *pleasing*
idōneus, a, um ad *w. acc.* / *dat.*	*suitable*; *fit*
impedītus, a, um	*hindered*; *encumbered*
***improbus, a, um**	*wicked*; *bad*
***īmus, a, um**	*lowest*; *lowermost*
incognitus, a, um	*unknown*
***īnferus, a, um**	*low*; *humble*
***īnfimus, a, um**	*lowest*; *lowermost*
inimīcus, a, um; *dat.*	*hostile*; *unfriendly*

***inīquus, a, um**	*uneven* *unjust* *unfavorable*
***invītus, a, um**	*unwilling(ly)*
jūstus, a, um	*just* *lawful*
lātus, a, um	*broad* *wide*
***magnus, a, um**	*great* *large*
***malus, a, um**	*bad* *evil*
mātūrus, a, um	*ripe* *early* *speedy*
***maximus, a, um**	*greatest*
medius, a, um	*middle*
***meus, a, um**	*my, mine*
***minimus, a, um**	*least* *smallest*
***mīrus, a, um**	*wonderful* *marvelous*
***multus, a, um**	*much* *many* (pl.)
necessārius, a, um	*necessary* *urgent*
***novus, a, um**	*new*
occultus, a, um	*hidden*
opportūnus, a, um	*opportune* *favorable*
***optimus, a, um**	*best*
parātus, a, um	*ready* *prepared*

***parvus, a, um**	*small*
perītus, a, um; *gen.*	*skilled in* *experienced in*
perpetuus, a, um	*unbroken* *perpetual*
***pessimus, a, um**	*worst*
***plūrimus, a, um**	*most*
***posterus, a, um**	*following* (of time) *next*
***postrēmus, a, um**	*last*
***prīmus, a, um**	*first*
prīstinus, a, um	*former* *erstwhile*
***prīvātus, a, um**	*private*
propinquus, a, um; *dat.*	*near* *close* *near relative*
proprius, a, um	*own* *proper*
proximus, a, um; *dat.	*next to* *nearest to*
pūblicus, a, um	*public*
quantus, a, um	*as great* *how great*
***quārtus, a, um**	*fourth*
quiētus, a, um	*quiet* *peaceful*
***reliquus, a, um**	*the rest* *the remaining*
***repentīnus, a, um**	*sudden*
***Rōmānus, a, um**	*Roman*

secundus, a, um	*second, favorable*
***septimus, a, um**	*seventh*
***subitus, a, um**	*sudden, unexpected*
***summus, a, um**	*highest*
***suprēmus, a, um**	*highest, last*
***suus, a, um**	*his own, her own, etc.*
tardus, a, um	*slow*
tūtus, a, um	*safe*
***tuus, a, um**	*your, yours*
***ultimus, a, um**	*farthest, last*
vacuus, a, um; ab (ā) *w. abl.*	*empty of, free from*
***vērus, a, um**	*true*

PLURAL ADJECTIVES LIKE *MAGNI, AE, A*

nōnnūllī, ae, a	*some*
paucī, ae, a	*few*
plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque	*most* *the majority*
singulī, ae, a	*each* *each one*
ūniversī, ae, a	*all together*

ADJECTIVES LIKE *SINISTER, SINISTRA, SINISTRUM*

***aeger, aegra, aegrum**	*sick* *ill*
***crēber, crēbra, crēbrum**	*frequent* *numerous*
***dexter, dextera, dexterum** ***dexter, dextra, dextrum**	*right* (of direction)
***integer, integra, integrum**	*fresh* *whole* *entire*
***noster, nostra, nostrum**	*our, ours*
***pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum**	*beautiful*
***sinister, sinistra, sinistrum**	*left*
***vester, vestra, vestrum**	*your, yours* (pl.)

ADJECTIVES LIKE *MISER, MISERA, MISERUM*

***dexter, dextera, dexterum** ***dexter, dextra, dextrum**	*right* (of direction)
***līber, lībera, līberum**	*free*
***miser, misera, miserum**	*wretched* *miserable*

ADJECTIVES LIKE *GRAVIS, E*

***brevis, e**	*short*
commūnis, e	*common*
crūdēlis, e	*cruel*
***difficilis, e**	*hard* / *difficult*
dissimilis, e; *dat.*	*unlike* / *dissimilar*
***facilis, e**	*easy*
***fortis, e**	*brave*
***gravis, e**	*heavy* / *important*
humilis, e	*low* / *humble*
***incolumis, e**	*safe*
***incrēdibilis, e**	*unbelievable*
***inermis, e**	*unarmed*
lēnis, e	*gentle*
levis, e	*light*
mediocris, e	*moderate* / *small*
***nōbilis, e**	*noble*
***omnis, e**	*all* / *every*
similis, e *dat.* / *gen. of person*	*like (to)* / *similar (to)*
***turpis, e**	*shameful* / *base*
ūtilis, e; ad *w. acc.*	*useful*

ADJECTIVES LIKE *EQUESTER, EQUESTRIS, EQUESTRE*

ācer, ācris, ācre	*sharp* *piercing*
alacer, alacris, alacre	*active* *eager*
***celer, celeris, celere**	*swift*
***equester, equestris, equestre**	*of cavalry* *cavalry* (adj.)

ADJECTIVES LIKE *FELIX, FELIX, FELICIS*

audāx, audāx, audācis	*bold* *daring*
***fēlīx, fēlīx, fēlīcis**	*fortunate* *happy*
triplex, triplex, triplicis	*threefold*

ADJECTIVES LIKE *RECENS, RECENS, RECENTIS*

***anceps, anceps, ancipitis**	*doubtful* (lit. 'double-headed')
***dīligēns, dīligēns, dīligentis**	*careful*
pār, pār, paris; *dat.	*equal*
potēns, potēns, potentis	*powerful*
praesēns, praesēns, praesentis	*present*
***recēns, recēns, recentis**	*fresh* *recent*
***vehemēns, vehemēns, vehementis**	*violent* *strong*

COMPARATIVES LIKE *GRAVIOR, GRAVIUS*

***citerior, citerius**	*on this side*; *hither*
***mājor, mājus**	*greater*
***melior, melius**	*better*
***minor, minus**	*lesser*; *smaller*
***pējor, pējus**	*worse*
***propior, propius**	*dat.* / *acc.* — *nearer*
***superior, superius**	*upper*; *higher*; *former*; *superior*
***ulterior, ulterius**	*farther*

ADJECTIVES LIKE *UNUS, A, UM* IN THE GENITIVE AND DATIVE SINGULAR

***alius, alia, aliud, alterīus, alterī**	*other* *another*
***alter, altera, alterum, alterīus**	*the other* (of two)
***neuter, neutra, neutrum, neutrīus**	*neither* (of two)
***nūllus, a, um, nūllīus**	*no* *none*
***sōlus, a, um, sōlīus**	*alone*
***tōtus, a, um, tōtīus**	*whole*
***ūllus, a, um, ūllīus**	*any* *anyone*
***ūnus, a, um, ūnīus**	*one*
***uter, utra, utrum, utrīus**	*which* (of two)

IRREGULAR AND MIXED NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

dīves, dīves, dīvitis (dīvite, dītia, dīvitum)	*rich*
jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandī, *n.	*oath*
***mare, maris (mare *or* marī, maria, marium)**	*sea*
nāvis longa, nāvis longae	*battleship*
plūs, plūris, *n.	*more*
***rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae**	*the state* *government* *common good*
rēs secundae, rērum secundārum	*prosperity*
vetus, vetus, veteris (vetere, vetera, veterum)	*old*

ADVERBS

ācriter, *adv.	*sharply* *bitterly*
audācter, *adv.	*boldly*
bene, *adv.*	*well*
celeriter, *adv.	*quickly*
clam, *adv.*	*secretly*
cōnfestim, *adv.	*immediately*
continenter, *adv.	*continually*
cotīdiē, *adv.	*daily*
dextrā, *adv.	*on (from) the right*
diū, *adv.	*a long time*
diūtissimē, *adv.	*longest* *a very long time*
diūtius, *adv.	*longer* *a longer time*
eōdem, *adv.*	*to the same place*
ferē, *adv. (follows the word it modifies)	*almost*
fortiter, *adv.	*bravely*
intereā, *adv.*	*meanwhile*
interim, *adv.*	*meanwhile*
jam, *adv.*	*already* *now* *by this (that) time*
longē lātēque, *adv.*	*far and wide*
longissimē, *adv.*	*farthest*

magis,** ***adv.	*more*
magnopere,** ***adv.	*greatly*
male,** ***adv.	*badly*
maximē,** ***adv.	*very much* *very greatly*
mediocriter, ***adv.***	*moderately*
melius, ***adv.***	*better*
minus, ***adv.***	*less*
mox, ***adv.***	*soon*
multum,** ***adv.	*much*
necessāriō, ***adv.***	*necessarily*
noctū,** ***adv.	*by night*
nōn,** ***adv.	*not*
nōndum, ***adv.***	*not yet*
nōnnumquam, ***adv.***	*sometimes*
nūper, ***adv.***	*recently* *lately*
omnīnō, ***adv.***	*altogether* *at all* (with negatives)
optimē, ***adv.***	*best*
pējus,** ***adv.	*worse*
pessimē,** ***adv.	*worst*
plērumque, ***adv.***	*for the most part* *generally*
plūrimum,** ***adv.	*most*
plūs,** ***adv.	*more*
posteā,** ***adv.	*afterwards*
prīmō, ***adv.***	*at first* *in the beginning*
prope,** ***adv.	*almost*

quam,** ***adv.	*than*
quoque,** ***adv. (follows the word it modifies)	*also*
rūrsus (rūrsum), ***adv.***	*back* *again*
saepe,** ***adv.	*often*
sēcrētō, ***adv.***	*secretly*
semper, ***adv.***	*always*
sinistrā,** ***adv.	*on (from) the left*
statim, ***adv.***	*immediately* *at once*
undique, ***adv.***	*from all sides* *on all sides*
vehementer, ***adv.***	*vehemently* *vigorously*

PRONOUNS

***ego, meī**	*I*
***hīc, haec, hōc**	*this*
***īdem, eadem, idem**	*the same*
***ille, illa, illud**	*that*
***ipse, ipsa, ipsum**	*self* *very*
***is, ea, id**	*that* *he, she, it*
***iste, ista, istud**	*that*
***quī, quae, quod**	*who* *which* *that*
***quis, quid**	*who* *which* *what*
***suī, sibi, sē (sēsē), sē (sēsē)**	*of himself, etc.*
***tū, tuī**	*you*

NUMERALS

*centum	*one hundred*
*decem	*ten*
*duo, ae, o	*two*
*mīlle *(indecl. adj. in sing.; neut. noun in plural used w. gen.;* mīlia, mīlium, *etc.)*	*thousand*
*novem	*nine*
*octō	*eight*
*quattuor	*four*
*quīnque	*five*
*quīndecim	*fifteen*
*septem	*seven*
*sex	*six*
*trēs, tria	*three*
*vīgintī	*twenty*

PREPOSITIONS

*ab (ā), *prep. w. abl.*	*by*; *from*
*ad, *prep. w. acc.*	*to*; *towards*; *near*
*ante, *prep. w. acc.*	*before*
*apud, *prep. w. acc.*	*among*; *at the house of*; *near*; *in the presence of*; *in the works of*
citrā, *prep. w. acc.*	*this side of*
*contrā, *prep. w. acc.*	*against*
*cum, *prep. w. abl.*	*with*
*dē, *prep. w. abl.*	*concerning*; *about*
*ex (ē), *prep. w. abl.*	*out of*; *from*
*in, *prep. w. abl.*	*in*; *on*
*in, *prep. w. acc.*	*into*; *against*
*inter, *prep. w. acc.*	*between*; *among*
*ob, *prep. w. acc.*	*on account of*; *because of*
per, *prep. w. acc.*	*through*
*post, *prep. w. acc.*	*after*

praeter, *prep. w. acc.*	*by, beyond, besides*
prō, *prep. w. abl.*	*in front of, on behalf of, for*
*prope, *prep. w. acc.*	*near, close to*
*propter, *prep. w. acc.*	*on account of, because of*
*sine, *prep. w. abl.*	*without*
*trāns, *prep. w. acc.*	*across*

SPECIAL EXPRESSIONS, PHRASES, ETC.

alterā ex parte	*on the other side* / *on the other hand*
***gen. w.* causā**	*for the sake of*
dē mediā nocte	*at about midnight*
dē nocte	*during the night*
dē tertiā vigiliā	*during the third watch*
***dextrā**	*on the right*
ex omnibus partibus	*from all sides* / *on all sides*
***in multam noctem**	*far into the night*
in perpetuum	*forever*
in prīmīs	*especially*
***initiō hiemis**	*at the beginning of winter*
magnō negōtiō	*with great trouble*
multā dē nocte	*late at night*
nōn modo . . . sed etiam	*not only . . . but also*
nūllō negōtiō	*with no trouble*
occāsū sōlis	*at sunset*
paulō post mediam noctem	*shortly after midnight*
***per indicium**	*through informers*
per vim	*with force* / *violently* / *by force*
praeter omnium opīniōnem	*contrary to the expectation of everyone*
prīmā lūce	*at dawn*
prīmā nocte	*at nightfall*

***quā dē causā**	*and for this reason*
quā ex rē	*and from this* / *and for this reason*
quam celerrimē,** ***adv. phrase	*as quickly as possible*
***quam prīmum**	*as soon as possible*
quam ***w. a superlative***	*as . . . as possible*
***sinistrā**	*on (from) the left*
sub oculīs omnium	*in the sight of all*
***sub vesperum**	*towards evening*
terrā marīque	*on land and sea*
tōtā urbe	*throughout the whole city*
ūnā ex parte	*on one side* / *on the other hand*
vī	*with force* / *violently* / *by force*

VERBS LIKE *LAUDO*

accūsō, *1, tr.; gen. of the charge*	*I accuse*
*adjuvō, adjuvāre, adjūvī, adjūtus, *1, tr.*	*I help*
aedificō, *1, tr.*	*I build*
*bellō, *1, intr.* cum *w. abl.* / contrā *w. acc.*	*I fight with* / *I fight against*
*collocō, *1, tr.;* in *w. abl.*	*I place* / *I station*
*commūtō, *1, tr.*	*I change*
*comparō, *1, tr.*	*I get ready* / *I provide*
*comportō, *1, tr.*	*I bring together* / *I collect*
*cōnfirmō, *1, tr.*	*I strengthen* / *I encourage*
*conjūrō, *1, tr.*	*I conspire*
*convocō, *1, tr.*	*I call together*
*dēlīberō, *1, tr. or intr.;* dē *w. abl.*	*I deliberate (about)*
*dō, dare, dedī, datus, *1, tr.*	*I give*
ēnūntiō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.*	*I disclose* / *I speak out*
exīstimō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.*	*I think*
*expugnō, *1, tr.*	*I take by storm*
*exspectō, *1, tr.*	*I await* / *I wait for*
flāgitō, *1, tr.* *acc.* / ab (ā) *w. abl. of person* / *acc. of thing* / ut (nē)	*I demand*
*hiemō, *1, intr.*	*I spend the winter*

imperō, *1, tr.* { *dat. of person*; *acc. of thing*; ut (nē) }	{ *I order*; *I levy* }
impetrō, *1, tr.* { ab (ā) *w. abl. of person*; *acc. of thing*; ut (nē) }	{ *I obtain*; *I gain* (by asking) }
*importō, *1, tr.*	{ *I bring in*; *I import* }
*incitō, *1, tr.*	{ *I excite*; *I arouse* }
jactō, *1, tr.*	{ *I toss about*; *I discuss* }
jūdicō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.*	{ *I judge*; *I decide* }
*laudō, *1, tr.*	*I praise*
līberō, *1, tr.*	{ *I free*; *I liberate* }
mandō, *1, tr.* { *dat. of person*; *acc. of thing*; ut (nē) }	{ *I hand over*; *I commission* }
mātūrō, *1, tr.; infin.*	*I hasten*
*necō, *1, tr.*	{ *I kill*; *I murder* }
*nūntiō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.*	*I report*
*occupō, *1, tr.*	*I seize*
*pācō, *1, tr.*	*I pacify*
*parō, *1, tr.*	*I prepare*
pōstulō, *1, tr.* { ab (ā) *w. abl. of person*; *acc. of thing*; ut (nē); *acc. w. infin.* }	*I demand*
probō, *1, tr.* { *acc. w. infin.*; *infin.* }	{ *I approve*; *I prove* }

pugnō, *1, intr. **cum *w. abl.*** / **contrā *w. acc.***	*I fight*
putō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.*	*I think*
redintegrō, *1, tr.	*I renew*
rogō, *1, tr.* ***acc. of person and* ut (nē)** / **ab (ā) *w. abl. of person and acc. of thing***	*I ask* / *I beg* / *I request*
servō, *1, tr.	*I preserve* / *I save*
superō, *1, tr.	*I overcome* / *I surpass* / *I conquer* / *I surmount*
vacō, *1, intr.*	*I am unoccupied*
vāstō, *1, tr.	*I lay waste*
vītō, *1, tr.	*I avoid*
vocō, *1, tr.	*I summon* / *I call*
vulnerō, *1, tr.	*I wound*

VERBS LIKE *MONEO*

*augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, *2, tr.*	*I increase*
coerceō, *2, tr.*	*I check*
*commoveō, commovēre, commōvī, commōtus, *2, tr.*	*I excite*; *I alarm*
compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus, *2, tr.; abl.*	*I fill up (with)*
*contineō, continēre, continuī, contentus, *2, tr.*	*I hold in*; *I contain*; *I bound*
dēbeō, *2, tr.; infin.*	*I owe*; *I ought*
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, *2, tr.*	*I weep*
*habeō, *2, tr.*	*I have*
jaceō, jacēre, jacuī, *2, intr.*	*I lie*
jubeō, jubēre, jussī, jussus, *2, tr.; acc. w. infin.*	*I order*
merēo, *2, tr.* mereor, *2, tr.* — bene dē *w. abl.*	*I deserve (well of)*; *I merit*
moneō, *2, tr.* — *acc. of person*; ut (nē)	*I advise*
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, *2, tr.*	*I move*
noceō, *2, intr.; dat.*	*I injure*
obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus, *2, tr.*	*I besiege*; *I blockade*
*obtineō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus, *2, tr.*	*I hold*
oportet, oportēre, oportuit, *2, intr.; acc. w. infin.*	*it behooves (I ought to)*

permoveō, permovēre, permōvī, permōtus, *2, tr.	*I excite* *I alarm*
persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsum, *2, intr.* **dat. of person** **acc. w. infin.** **ut (nē)**	*I persuade*
perterreō, *2, tr.	*I frighten*
pertineō, pertinēre, pertinuī, *2, intr.*; ad *w. acc.*	*I pertain to* *I stretch to*
prohibeō, *2, tr.* **abl.** **ab (ā) *w. abl.***	*I keep away from*
respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus, *2, tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*	*I reply* *I answer*
retineō, retinēre, retinuī, retentus, *2, tr.*	*I hold back* *I detain*
submoveō, submovēre, submōvī, submōtus, *2, tr.	*I dislodge* *I remove*
sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentus, *2, tr.	*I support* *I hold up* *I sustain*
taceō, *2, tr. and intr.	*I am silent* *I pass over in silence*
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, *2, tr.	*I hold*
timeō, timēre, timuī, *2, tr.* **nē (nē nōn, ut)** ***infin.***	*I fear*
valeō, valēre, valuī, *2, intr.*	*I am well* *I have power*
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, *2, tr.*; *acc. w. infin.	*I see*

VERBS LIKE *MITTO*

accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum, *3*, *intr.*; ad *w. acc.*	*I approach*
agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *3*, *tr.*	*I do* *I drive*
alō, alere, aluī, altus (alitus), *3*, *tr.*	*I nourish* *I maintain*
animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animadversus, *3*, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*	*I notice* *I attend to*
āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversus, *3*, *tr.*; ab (ā) *w. abl.*	*I turn from* *I turn away from*
cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *3*, *intr.*	*I fall* *I am slain*
cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, *3*, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*	*I become acquainted with* *I ascertain*
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, *3*, *tr.* { ***acc. w. infin.*** / **ut (nē)**	*I drive together* *I force* *I compel*
concēdō, concēdere, concessī, concessum, *3*, *intr.*; ab (ā) *w. abl.*	*I retire*
concēdō, concēdere, concessī, concessus, *3*, *tr.*	*I yield* *I grant*
concīdō, concīdere, concīdī, concīsus, *3*, *tr.*	*I cut down* *I kill*
cōnscrībō, cōnscrībere, cōnscrīpsī, cōnscrīptus, *3*, *tr.	*I enroll*
cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus, *3*, *tr.*; *infin.*	*I set up* *I establish* *I determine* *I decide*

contendō, contendere, contendī, *3, intr.; infin.	*I hasten* *I struggle*
convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus, *3, tr.*	*I turn about* *I change*
crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, *3, tr.* **{ *acc. of thing*; *dat. of person*; *acc. w. infin.***	*I entrust* *I trust* *I believe*
dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus, *3, tr.	*I surrender*
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, *3, tr.	*I defend*
dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositus, *3, tr.*	*I put aside* *I lay down*
dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, *3, intr.* **{ *abl.*; *infin.***	*I desist from* *I stop*
dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*	*I say*
discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum, *3, intr.* **{ ab (ā), dē, ex (ē) } *w. abl.***	*I depart* *I go away*
discō, discere, didicī, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*	*I learn*
dispōnō, dispōnere, disposuī, dispositus, *3, tr.*	*I arrange*
dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus, *3, tr.;* in *w. acc.	*I divide (into)*
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, *3, tr.	*I lead* *I think* *I consider*
addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus, *3, tr.;* ut (nē)	*I lead to* *I induce*
condūcō, condūcere, condūxī, conductus, *3, tr.*	*I collect* *I bring together* *I hire*
indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductus, *3, tr.;* ut (nē)	*I lead into* *I induce*

perdūcō, perdūcere, perdūxī, perductus, *3, tr.*	*I lead through* *I construct*
trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductus, *3, tr.* *2 accs.* ***acc. and* trāns *w. acc.***	*I lead across*
fluō, fluere, flūxī, *3, intr.*	*I flow*
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *3, tr.	*I bear* *I carry on*
incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus, *3, tr.	*I set on fire* *I burn*
incolō, incolere, incoluī, incultus, *3, tr.	*I inhabit* *I dwell in*
īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus, *3, tr.*	*I draw up*
intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*	*I understand*
intercēdō, intercēdere, intercessī, intercessum, *3, intr.*	*I go between* *I am between* *I intervene*
jungō, jungere, jūnxī, jūnctus, *3, tr.* *dat.* **cum *w. abl.***	*I join*
lacessō, lacessere, lacessīvī, lacessītus, *3, tr.*	*I provoke* *I harass*
minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtus, *3, tr. or intr.*	*I lessen*
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, *3, tr.	*I send*
dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissus, *3, tr.*	*I send away* *I dismiss*
praemittō, praemittere, praemīsī, praemissus, *3, tr.	*I send ahead*
offendō, offendere, offendī, offēnsus, *3, tr.	*I offend*
ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus (ostēnsus), *3, tr.	*I show*
parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus, *3, intr.; dat.*	*I spare*

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, *3, tr.*	*I drive* *I defeat*
perfringō, perfringere, perfrēgī, perfrāctus, *3, tr.	*I break through*
perrumpō, perrumpere, perrūpī, perruptus, *3, tr.	*I break through*
***petō, petere, petīvī, petītus, *3, tr.* ab (ā) *w. abl. of person*; *acc. of thing*; ut (nē)**	*I seek*
pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *3, tr.*; in *w. abl.	*I place* *I put*
prōpōnō, prōpōnere, prōposuī, prōpositus, *3, tr.*	*I put forward* *I propose*
pōscō, pōscere, popōscī, *3, tr.* *acc.*; ab (ā) *w. abl.* *of person*; *acc. of thing*; ut (nē)	*I demand*
praecēdō, praecēdere, praecessī, praecessum, *3, tr.	*I precede* *I surpass*
prōdō, prōdere, prōdidī, prōditus, *3, tr.	*I betray*
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus, *3, tr.	*I rule*
relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus, *3, tr.	*I leave behind* *I abandon*
repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus, *3, tr.*	*I drive back*
reprimō, reprimere, repressī, repressus, *3, tr.*	*I restrain* *I check*
resistō, resistere, restitī, *3, intr.; dat.*	*I resist*
statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus, *3, tr.; infin.*	*I set up* *I determine*

succēdō, succēdere, successī, successum, *3, intr.* {ad *w. acc.* / *dat.*	*I come next* / *I succeed*
suppetō, suppetere, suppetīvī, *3, intr.*	*I am at hand* / *I hold out (last)*
trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus, *3, tr.	*I hand over*
vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, *3, tr.	*I conquer*

VERBS LIKE *AUDIO*

audiō, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.	*I hear* *I listen to*
commūniō, *4, tr.	*I fortify*
comperiō, comperīre, comperī, compertus, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.*	*I find out* *I discover*
expediō, *4, tr.	*I get ready* *I dispatch*
impediō, *4, tr.*	*I hinder* *I encumber*
mūniō, *4, tr.	*I fortify*
reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.*	*I find out* *I discover*
sciō, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.*	*I know*
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.*	*I feel* *I think* *I perceive*
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *4, intr.	*I come*
conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventum, *4, intr.	*(I) come together*
conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventus, *4, tr.	*I meet* *I interview*
perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum, *4, intr.;* ad *or* in *w. acc.	*I arrive at*

VERBS LIKE *CAPIO*

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, *3, tr.*	*I take* *I capture*
recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus, *3, tr.*	*I take back* *I recapture*
suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus, *3, tr.*	*I undertake*
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītus, *3, tr.* (*acc.*; *infin.*; *acc. w. infin.*; ut (nē))	*I desire*
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus, *3, tr.* (*dat. of person*; ex (ē) *w. abl.*; *abl.*)	*I snatch away* *I save*
faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *3, tr.*	*I do* *I make*
afficiō, afficere, affēcī, affectus, *3, tr.; abl.*	*I affect* *I treat with*
cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus, *3, tr.*	*I complete* *I exhaust*
interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus, *3, tr.*	*I kill*
perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus, *3, tr.*	*I perform* *I complete*
praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus, *3, tr.* (*acc. of person*; *dat. of thing of which*)	*I put in charge of*
satisfaciō, satisfacere, satisfēcī, satisfactus, *3, intr.; dat.*	*I make restitution to* *I appease*

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *3, tr. and intr.*	*I flee*
perfugiō, perfugere, perfūgī, perfugitūrus, *3, intr.*	*I flee* *I escape*
jaciō, jacere, jēcī, jactus, *3, tr.*	*I hurl* *I throw*
conjiciō, conjicere, conjēcī, conjectus, *3, tr.*	*I throw together* *I hurl*
dējiciō, dējicere, dējēcī, dējectus, *3, tr.* (*abl.*; **dē** *w. abl.*; **ex (ē)** *w. abl.*)	*I cast down* *I disappoint*
objiciō, objicere, objēcī, objectus, *3, tr.*	*I throw in the way* *I put in the way* *I expose*
prōjiciō, prōjicere, prōjēcī, prōjectus, *3, tr.*	*I throw forward* *I reject*
rējiciō, rējicere, rējēcī, rējectus, *3, tr.*	*I throw back* *I repulse*
perspiciō, perspicere, perspexī, perspectus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*	*I see clearly* *I ascertain*

DEPONENT VERBS CONJUGATED LIKE *LAUDOR*

arbitror, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.*	*I think*
cohortor, *1, tr.;* **ut (nē)**	*I exhort* *I encourage*
cōnor, *1, tr.; infin.*	*I try* *I attempt*
cōnsōlor, *1, tr.*	*I comfort*
grātulor, *1, intr.; dat.*	*I congratulate*
hortor, *1, tr.;* **ut (nē)**	*I exhort* *I encourage*
moror, *1, tr. and intr.*	*I delay*
populor, *1, tr.*	*I plunder* *I lay waste*
praedor, *1, intr.*	*I get booty* *I plunder*
vagor, *1, intr.*	*I wander about*

DEPONENT VERBS CONJUGATED LIKE *MONEOR*

mereor, *2, tr.*	*I merit*
polliceor, *2, tr.; acc. w. future infin.*	*I promise*

DEPONENT VERBS CONJUGATED LIKE *MITTOR*

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *3, tr. and intr.;* dē *w. abl.*	*I speak* *I talk (of, about)*
nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum, *3, tr.*	*I get* *I obtain*
oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum, *3, tr.* { *gen. of persons*; *gen. or acc. of things*; *acc. of neut. prons. or adjs.*	*I forget*
proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *3, intr.*	*I set out*
queror, querī, questus sum, *3, tr.*	*I complain of* *I lament*
revertor, revertī, { revertī, / reversus sum, } *3, intr.*	*I turn back* *I return*
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *3, tr.*	*I follow*
cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum, *3, tr.*	*I overtake* *I attain* *I get*
exsequor, exsequī, exsecūtus sum, *3, tr.*	*I follow out* (a plan, *etc.*)
īnsequor, īnsequī, īnsecūtus sum, *3, tr.*	*I pursue*
subsequor, subsequī, subsecūtus sum, *3, tr.*	*I follow after* *I follow closely*
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *3, intr.; abl.*	*I use* *I employ*

DEPONENT VERBS CONJUGATED LIKE *AUDIOR*

adorior, adorīrī, adortus sum, ***4, tr.*** — *I attack* / *I assault*

coorior, coorīrī, coortus sum, ***4, intr.*** — *I rise up* / *I arise*

potior, ***4, intr.*** (*abl.* / *gen.*) — *I gain possession of*

DEPONENT VERBS CONJUGATED LIKE *CAPIOR*

aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum, *3, tr.*	*I attack*
ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, *3, intr.* **ex (ē)** *w. abl.* / ***abl.***	*I go out*
morior, morī, mortuus sum, *3, intr.*	*I die*

IRREGULAR VERBS

coepī, coepisse, coeptus, *3, tr.; infin.*		*I have begun*
fīō, fierī, factus sum, *intr.*		*I become* *I happen* *I am done* *I am made*
volō, velle, voluī, *tr.*	*acc.* *infin.* *acc. w. infin.* ut (nē)	*I am willing* *I wish*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *tr.*	*acc.* *infin.* *acc. w. infin.* ut (nē)	*I do not wish* *I am unwilling*
possum, posse, potuī, *intr.; infin.*		*I am able* *I can*

EO AND ITS COMPOUNDS

eō, īre, i(v)ī, itum, *intr.*		*I go*
adeō, adīre, adiī, aditus, *tr. and intr.*	*acc.*	*I go to*
	ad *w. acc.*	*I visit*
exeō, exīre, exiī, exitum, *intr.*	ex (ē) *w. abl.*	*I go forth*
	dē *w. abl.*	*I go out*
ineō, inīre, iniī, initus, *tr.*		*I enter upon*
		I undertake
trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī, trānsitus, *tr.*		*I go across*
		I cross over

FERO AND ITS COMPOUNDS

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *tr.*	*I bear* *I bring* *I carry* *I endure*
afferō, afferre, attulī, allātus, *tr.*	*I bring to* *I report*
cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus, *tr.*	*I transport* *I collect*
dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus, *tr.;* **ad** *w. acc.*	*I carry away* *I report (to)*
efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus, *tr.*	*I carry out* *I bear out* (passive—*I am elated*)
īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus, *tr.*	*I bear in*
perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus, *tr.*	*I bear through* *I endure*

SUM AND ITS COMPOUNDS

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus,** ***intr.	*I am*
absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, ***intr.;*** **ab (ā)** ***w. abl.***	*I am away* *I am distant*
adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus, ***intr.; dat.***	*I am present* (to help or support)
dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, ***intr.; dat.***	*I am lacking to* *I desert*
intersum, interesse, interfuī, interfutūrus, ***intr.; dat.***	*I am among* *I take part in* *I am present at*
praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus, ***intr.***	*I am in charge of* *I am at the head of*
prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, ***intr.; dat.***	*I profit* *I benefit*
subsum, subesse, ***intr.; dat.***	*I am under* *I am near*
supersum, superesse, superfuī, superfutūrus, ***intr.; dat.***	*I survive* *I am left*

SPECIAL VERBAL *IDIOMS*

mē (tē, sē) abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus, *3, tr.*	*I hide*
vītam agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *3, tr.*	*I lead a life*
proelium committō, committere, commīsī, commissus, *3, tr.;* cum *w. abl.*	*I join battle*
mē (tē, sē) cōnferō, cōnferre, cōntulī, collātus, *tr.*	*I betake myself*
operam dō, dare, dedī, datus, *1, tr.* { ***dat.*** / **ut (nē)** }	*I pay attention to*
certiōrem faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *3, tr.* { **dē *w. abl.*** / ***acc. w. infin.*** }	*I inform of*
iter faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *3, tr.*	*I march*
vim faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *3, tr.*	*I use force*
auxilium ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *intr.*	*I bring help*
certior fīō, fierī, factus sum, *intr.* { **dē *w. abl.*** / ***gen.*** / ***acc. w. infin.*** }	*I am informed of*
bellum gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *3, tr. { **cum *w. abl.*** / **contrā *or* in *w. acc.*** }	*I wage war with* / *I wage war against*
bellum īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus, *tr.;* *dat. of person*	*I make war on*
in potestātem *(gen.)* perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum, *4, intr.*	*I come into the power of*
castra pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *3, tr.	*I pitch camp*
plūrimum possum, posse, potuī, *intr.*	*I am very influential*
pedem referō, referre, retulī, relātus, *tr.*	*I retreat* / *I fall back*

nāvem solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, *3, tr.*	*I set sail*
in statiōne sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *intr.	*I am on guard duty*
memoriā teneō, tenēre, tenuī, *2, tr.*	*I remember*
tergum vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, *3, tr.*	*I retreat*

CONJUNCTIONS

atque (ac),** ***conj.	*and*
aut,** ***conj.	*or*
aut . . . aut,** ***conjs.	*either . . . or*
autem,** ***conj., postp.	*however*
enim,** ***conj., postp.	*for*
et,** ***conj.	*and*
itaque, ***conj.***	*and so*
nam,** ***conj.	*for*
neque (nec), ***conj.***	*and not* / *nor*
neque . . . neque (nec . . . nec), ***conjs.***	*neither . . . nor*
sed,** ***conj.	*but*

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

ab (ā), *prep. w. abl.*, from, by.
abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus, *3, tr.*, I hide.
abeō, abīre, abiī, abitum, *intr.; ab (ā), dē, ex (ē) w. abl.*, I depart, I go away.
absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *intr.; ab (ā) w. abl.*, I am away, I am distant.
ac (atque), *conj.*, and.
accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum, *3, intr.; ad w. acc.*, I approach.
accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus, *3, tr.*, I receive.
accūsō, *1, tr.; gen. of the charge*, I accuse.
ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, piercing.
aciēs, aciēī, battle line.
ācriter, *adv.*, sharply, bitterly.
acūtus, a, um, sharp, pointed.
ad, *prep. w. acc.*, to, towards, near.
addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus, *3, tr.; ut (nē)*, I lead to, I induce.
adeō, adīre, adiī, aditus, *tr. or ad w. acc.*, I go to, I visit.
adjuvō, adjuvāre, adjūvī, adjūtus, *1, tr.*, I help.
adorior, adorīrī, adortus sum, *4, tr.*, I attack, I assault.
adōrō, *1, tr.*, I adore.
adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*, I am present (to help or support).
adulēscēns, adulēscentis, *m.*, young man.
adventus, ūs, arrival.
aedificium, ī, building.
aedificō, *1, tr.*, I build.
aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick, ill.
aequus, a, um, even, just.
aestās, aestātis, summer.
aetās, aetātis, age (time of life).
afferō, afferre, attulī, allātus, *tr.*, I bring to, I report.
afficiō, afficere, affēcī, affectus, *3, tr.; abl.*, I affect, I treat with.
ager, agrī, field.
agger, aggeris, mound, dike, rampart.
aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum, *3, tr.*, I attack.
agitō, *1, tr.*, I drive.
āgmen, āgminis, army (on the march), line (of march), column.
agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *3, tr.*, I do, I drive; **vītam agō**, I lead a life.
alacer, alacris, alacre, active, eager.
aliēnus, a, um, another's, foreign.
alius, alia, aliud, alterīus, alterī, other, another.
alō, alere, aluī, altus (alitus), *3, tr.*, I nourish, I maintain.
alter, altera, alterum, alterīus, the other (of two); **alterā ex parte**, on the other side, on the other hand.
altitūdō, altitūdinis, height, depth.
altus, a, um, high, deep.
amīcitia, ae, friendship.
amīcus, a, um, friendly.
amīcus, ī, friend.
amplus, a, um, large, ample.
anceps, anceps, ancipitis, doubtful.
angelus, ī, angel.
angustiae, angustiārum, narrow pass, difficulty.
angustus, a, um, narrow, difficult.
animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animadversus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*, I notice, I attend to.
animus, ī, soul, mind, character.
annus, ī, year.
ante, *prep. w. acc. (200)*, before.
apertus, a, um, open, uncovered.
apud, *prep. w. acc.*, among, at the house of, near, in the presence of, in the works of.

aqua, ae, water.
Aquītānia, ae, the section of Gaul just north of the Pyrenees.
Aquītānī, Aquītānōrum, the Aquitanians, inhabitants of Aquitania.
arbitror, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.,* I think.
Ariovistus, ī, king of the Germans.
arma, armōrum, arms, weapons.
arx, arcis, citadel.
ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēnsus, *3, tr. (intr.),* I go up, I ascend.
Athēnae, Athēnārum, Athens.
atque (ac), *conj.,* and.
auctōritās, auctōritātis, authority, influence.
audācia, ae, boldness, daring.
audācter, *adv.,* boldly.
audāx, audāx, audācis, bold, daring.
audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *2, intr.; infin.,* I dare.
audiō, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.,* I hear.
augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, *2, tr.,* I increase.
Augustus, ī, Augustus.
aut, *conj.,* or.
aut . . . aut, *conjs.,* either . . . or.
autem, *conj., postp.,* however.
auxilium, ī, help, assistance; **auxilium ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus,** *intr.,* I bring help.
avē, hail.
āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversus, *3, tr.; ab (ā) w. abl.;* I turn from.

B

barbarus, a, um, barbarous, uncivilized.
barbarus, ī, a barbarian.
Belgae, Belgārum, *m.,* Belgians.
bellō, *1, intr.; cum w. abl.; contrā w. acc.,* I fight with, I fight against.
bellum, ī, war; **bellum gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus,** *3, tr.; cum w. abl.; contrā w. acc.,* I wage war with, I wage war against; **bellum īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus,** *tr.; dat. of person,* I make war on.
bene, *adv.,* well.
benedīcō, benedīcere, benedīxī, benedictus, *3, tr.,* I bless.
beneficium, ī, benefit, good deed.
Bethlehem, Bethlehem.
bīduum, ī, a period of two days.
bonus, a, um, good.
brevis, e, short, brief.
Britannī, Britannōrum, Britons.
Britannia, ae, Britain.
Brūtus (ī), Decimus (ī), Decimus Brutus, a lieutenant on the staff of Caesar.

C

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *3, intr.,* I fall, I am slain.
caedēs, caedis, killing, slaughter.
caelestis, e, heavenly.
caelum, ī, sky, heavens.
Caesar, Caesaris, Caesar.
calamitās, calamitātis, disaster, misfortune.
Calvaria, ae, Calvary.
capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, *3, tr.,* I take, I capture.
carrus, ī, wagon.
castellum, ī, fort.
Casticus, ī, a noble of the Sequani.
castra, castrōrum, camp; **castra pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus,** *3, tr.,* I pitch camp.
Caturīgēs, Caturīgum, a Gallic mountain tribe.
causa, ae, cause; *gen. w.* **causā,** for the sake of; **quā dē causā,** and for this reason.
celer, celeris, celere, swift.
celeritās, celeritātis, speed, rapidity.
celeriter, *adv.,* quickly; **quam celerrimē,** *adv. phrase,* as quickly as possible.
centum, one hundred.
certior fīō, fierī, factus sum, *intr., dē w. abl.; gen.; acc. w. infin.,* I am informed (of).
certiōrem faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *3, tr., dē w. abl.; acc. w. infin.,* I inform (of).

cēterus, a, um, the other, the rest.
Ceutrōnēs, Ceutrōnum, a Gallic tribe.
Chrīstus, ī, Christ.
circumpōnō, circumpōnere, circumposuī, circumpositus, *3, tr.*, I put around.
citerior, citerius, hither, on this side.
citrā, *prep. w. acc.*, this side of.
cīvis, cīvis, *m.*, citizen, fellow-citizen.
cīvitās, cīvitātis, state, citizenship.
clam, *adv.*, secretly.
clāritās, clāritātis, brilliance.
classis, classis *(abl. -e, less often -ī)*, fleet.
cliēns, clientis, *m.*, client, dependent.
coepī, coepisse, coeptus, *3, tr.; infin.*, I have begun.
coerceō, *2, tr.*, I check.
coetus, ūs, gathering, meeting.
cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*, I become acquainted with, I ascertain.
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.; ut (nē)*, I drive together, I force, I compel.
cohors, cohortis, cohort.
cohortor, *1, tr.; ut (nē)*, I exhort, I encourage.
collis, collis, *m.*, hill.
collocō, *1, tr.; in w. abl.*, I place, I station.
committō, committere, commīsī, commissus, *3, tr.; w. proelium*, I join battle.
commoveō, commovēre, commōvī, commōtus, *2, tr.*, I excite, I alarm.
commūniō, *4, tr.*, I fortify.
commūnis, e, common.
commūtō, *1, tr.*, I change.
comparō, *1, tr.*, I get ready, I provide.
comperiō, comperīre, comperī, compertus, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.*, I find out, I discover.
compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus, *2, tr.; abl.*, I fill up (with).
comportō, *1, tr.*, I bring together, I collect.
concēdō, concēdere, concessī, concessum, *3, intr.; ab (ā) w. abl.*, I retire.
concēdō, concēdere, concessī, concessus, *3, tr.*, I yield, I grant.
concīdō, concīdere, concīdī, concīsus, *3, tr.*, I cut down, I kill.
concilium, ī, council.
concursus, ūs, a running together, concourse.
condiciō, condiciōnis, condition, terms, state.
condūcō, condūcere, condūxī, conductus, *3, tr.*, I collect, I bring together, I hire.
cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus, *tr.*, I transport, I collect; **mē cōnferō**, *ad or in w. acc.*, I betake myself to.
cōnfertus, a, um; *abl.*, crowded.
cōnfestim, *adv.*, immediately.
cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus, *3, tr.*, I complete, I exhaust.
cōnfirmō, *1, tr.*, I strengthen, I encourage.
conjiciō, conjicere, conjēcī, conjectus, *3, tr.*, I throw together, I hurl.
conjūrātiō, conjūrātiōnis, conspiracy.
conjūrō, *1, intr.*, I conspire.
cōnor, *1, tr.; infin.*, I try, I attempt.
cōnscrībō, cōnscrībere, cōnscrīpsī, cōnscrīptus, *3, tr.*, I enroll.
cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum, *3, tr.*, I overtake, I attain, I get.
cōnsilium, ī, plan.
cōnsōlor, *1, tr.*, I comfort.
cōnspectus, ūs, sight, vision.
cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus, *3, tr.; infin.*, I set up, I establish, I determine, I decide.
cōnsul, cōnsulis, *m.*, consul.
contendō, contendere, contendī, *3, intr.; infin.*, I hasten, I struggle.
continenter, *adv.*, continually.
contineō, continēre, continuī, contentus, *2, tr.*, I hold in, I contain, I bound.
continuus, a, um, successive.

contrā, *prep. w. acc.*, against.
conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventum, *4, intr.*, (I) come together.
conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventus, *4, tr.*, I meet, I interview.
conventus, ūs, meeting, assembly, assizes.
convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus, *3, tr.*, I turn about, I change.
convocō, *1, tr.*, I call together.
coorior, coorīrī, coortus sum, *4, intr.*, I rise up, I arise.
cōpia, ae, an abundance, supply.
cōpiae, cōpiārum, troops.
cotīdiānus, a, um, daily.
cotīdiē, *adv.*, daily.
Crassus (ī), Mārcus (ī), Marcus Crassus, a lieutenant on the staff of Caesar.
Crassus (ī), Pūblius (ī), Publius Crassus, a lieutenant on the staff of Caesar.
crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, frequent, numerous.
crēdo, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, *3, tr.; acc. of thing; dat. of person; acc. w. infin.*, I entrust, I trust, I believe.
crucifīgō, crucifīgere, crucifīxī, crucifīxus, *3, tr.*, I crucify.
crūdēlis, e, cruel.
crux, crucis, cross.
cum, *prep. w. abl.*, with.
cupiditās, cupiditātis, desire, greed, passion.
cupidus, a, um; *gen.*, desirous of, eager for.
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītus, *3, tr.; acc.; infin.; acc. w. infin.; ut (nē)*, I desire.
cūra, ae, care, worry.
currus, ūs, chariot, cart.
custōdiō, *4, tr.*, I keep, I guard.
Cyrīnus, ī, Cyrene, the governor of Syria at the time of the birth of Christ.

D

Dāvīd, David.
dē, *prep. w. abl.*, concerning, about.
dē causā, quā, and for this reason.
dē mediā nocte, at about midnight.
dē nocte, during the night; **multā dē nocte**, late at night.
dē tertiā vigiliā, during the third watch.
dēbeō, *2, tr.; infin.*, I owe, I ought.
dēbitor, dēbitōris, debtor.
dēbitum, ī, debt.
dēcēdō, dēcēdere, dēcessī, dēcessum, *3, intr.; abl.; dē w. abl.; ex (ē) w. abl.*, I go away from.
decem, ten.
dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*, I determine, I decree.
decimus, a, um, tenth.
Decimus (ī) Brūtus (ī), Decimus Brutus, a lieutenant on Caesar's staff.
dēditiō, dēditiōnis, surrender.
dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus, *3, tr.*, I surrender.
dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxī, dēductus, *3, tr.*, I lead down, I lead away.
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, *3, tr.*, I defend.
dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus, *tr.; ad w. acc.*, I carry away, I report to.
dēfessus, a, um, weary, tired.
dējiciō, dējicere, dējēcī, dējectus, *3, tr.; abl.; dē w. abl.; ex (ē) w. abl.*, I cast down.
dēlīberō, *1, tr. or intr.; dē w. abl.*, I deliberate (about).
dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositus, *3, tr.*, I put aside, I lay down.
dēscrīptiō, dēscrīptiōnis, enrolling.
dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, *3, intr.; abl.; infin.*, I desist from, I stop.
dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*, I am lacking to, I desert.
Deus, ī, God.
dexter, dextera (dextra), dexterum

(dextrum), right; **dextrā**, on the right.
dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*, I say.
diēs, diēī, *m. (f.)*, day.
difficilis, e, hard, difficult.
dignitās, dignitātis, worth, esteem, honor.
dignus, a, um; *abl.*, worthy (of).
dīligēns, dīligēns, dīligentis, careful.
dīligentia, ae, care, diligence.
dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissus, *3, tr.*, I send away, I dismiss.
discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum, *3, intr.; ab (ā) w. abl.; dē w. abl.; ex (ē) w. abl.*, I depart, I go away.
discipulus, ī, disciple.
discō, discere, didicī, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*, I learn.
dispōnō, dispōnere, disposuī, dispositus, *3, tr.*, I arrange.
dissimilis, e; *dat.*, unlike, dissimilar.
diū, *adv.*, a long time.
diūtissimē, *adv.*, longest, a very long time.
diūtius, *adv.*, longer, a longer time.
dīversus, a, um, opposite, different.
dīves, dīves, dīvitis (dīvite, dītia, dīvitum), rich.
Dīvicō, Dīvicōnis, an Helvetian leader.
dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus, *3, tr.; in w. acc.*, I divide into.
Dīvitiācus, ī, brother of Dumnorix; a noble of the Haedui.
dō, dare, dedī, datus, *1, tr.*, I give; **operam dō**, *dat.; ut (nē)*, I pay attention to.
dolor, dolōris, sorrow, grief, pain.
dolus, ī, artifice, trickery.
domī, at home.
dominus, ī, lord, master.
domō, from home.
domum, to home.
dubius, a, um, doubtful.
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, *3, tr.*, I lead, I think, I consider.
Dumnorīx, Dumnorīgis, leader of the anti-Roman party among the Haedui.
duo, ae, o, two.
dūrus, a, um, hard.
dux, ducis, *m.*, leader, guide, general.

E

ē (ex), *prep. w. abl.*, out of, from, away from.
ecce, behold.
ēdictum, ī, a decree.
ēditus, a, um, elevated, high.
ēdō, ēdere, ēdidī, ēditus, *3, tr.*, I put forth, I state, I explain.
effēminō, *1, tr.*, I weaken, I soften.
efferō, effere, extulī, ēlātus, *tr.*, I carry out, I bear out (passive = I am elated).
ego, meī, I.
ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, *3, intr.; ex (ē) w. abl.; abl.*, I go out.
ēgregius, a, um, outstanding, remarkable.
enim, *conj., postp.*, for.
ēnūntiō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.*, I disclose, I speak out.
eō, īre, i(v)ī, itum, *intr.*, I go.
eō quod, *conj.*, because.
eōdem, *adv.*, to the same place.
eques, equitis, *m.*, knight, horseman, cavalryman.
equester, equestris, equestre, of cavalry, cavalry *(adj.)*.
equitātus, ūs, cavalry.
ergō, *adv.*, therefore.
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus, *3, tr.; dat. of person; ex (ē) w. abl.; abl.*, I snatch away, I save.
et, *conj.*, and.
ex (ē), *prep. w. abl.*, out of, from, away from.
ex omnibus partibus, from (on) all sides.
ex parte, ūnā, on the one hand, on the one side.
ex rē, quā, and from this, and for this reason.

exeō, exīre, exiī, exitum, *intr.; ex (ē), dē w. abl.,* I go forth, I go out.
exercitus, ūs, army.
exiguus, a, um, little.
exīstimō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.,* I think.
expediō, *4, tr.,* I get ready, I dispatch.
expedītus, a, um, ready, light-armed.
explōrātor, explōrātōris, scout.
expugnō, *1, tr.,* I take by storm.
exsequor, exsequī, exsecūtus sum, *3, tr.,* I follow out (a plan, etc.).
exspectō, *1, tr.,* I await, I wait for.
exterus, a, um, foreign.
extrēmus, a, um, outermost, last.

F

facilis, e, easy.
facinus, facinoris, *n.,* deed, crime.
faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *3, tr.,* I do, I make; **certiōrem faciō,** *dē w. abl.,* I inform (of); **iter faciō,** I march; **vim faciō,** I use force.
fāma, ae, rumor, fame.
familia, ae, household, family.
fēlīx, fēlīx, fēlīcis, fortunate, happy.
ferē, *adv. (follows the word it modifies),* almost.
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *tr.,* I bear, I carry, I endure, I bring; **auxilium ferō,** I bring help.
fidēs, fideī, trust, confidence, loyalty.
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, *3, intr.,* I trust.
fīlia, ae, daughter.
fīlius, ī, son.
fīnēs, fīnium, *m. pl.,* boundary, territory.
fīnitimī, fīnitimōrum, neighbors.
fīnitimus, a, um; *dat.,* neighboring.
fīō, fierī, factus sum, *intr.,* I become, I happen, I am done, I am made; **certior fīō,** *de w. abl., gen.; acc. w. infin.,* I am informed (of).
firmus, a, um, strong, steady.
flāgitō, *1, tr.; acc. or ab (ā) w. abl. of person and acc. of thing; ut (nē),* I demand.
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, *2, intr.,* I weep.
flūmen, flūminis, *n.,* river.
fluō, fluere, flūxī, *3, intr.,* I flow.
fortis, e, brave.
fortiter, *adv.,* bravely.
fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, courage, bravery.
fortūna, ae, fortune, fate.
fossa, ae, ditch.
frāter, frātris (frātrum), brother.
frīgus, frīgoris, *n.,* cold.
frūctus, ūs, fruit, produce, profit.
frūmentum, ī, grain.
fuga, ae, flight.
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *3, intr. and tr.,* I flee.
fugitīvus, ī, fugitive.
funda, ae, sling.

G

Gāius (ī) Valerius (ī) Procillus (ī), Gaius Valerius Procillus, a distinguished citizen of the province in Gaul.
Galilaea, ae, Galilee.
Gallia, ae, Gaul.
Gallicus, a, um, Gallic.
Gallus, ī, a Gaul.
Garumna, ae, the river Garonne in Gaul.
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, *2, intr.,* I rejoice.
gaudium, ī, joy.
gēns, gentis, tribe, race, nation.
Gergovia, ae, a town of the Arverni in Gaul.
Germānus, a, um, German.
Germānus, ī, a German.
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *3, tr.,* I bear, I carry on; **bellum gerō,** *cum w. abl.; contrā or in w. acc.,* I wage war with, I wage war against.
gladius, ī, sword.
glōria, ae, fame, glory.
glōrificō, *1, tr.,* I glorify.
Grāiocelī, Grāiocelōrum, a Gallic mountain tribe.
grātia, ae, favor.
grātulor, *1, intr.; dat.,* I congratulate.

grātus, a, um; *dat.*, acceptable, pleasing.
gravis, e, heavy, important.

H

habeō, *2, tr.*, I have.
Haeduī, Haeduōrum, a Gallic clan.
Helvētius, a, um, Helvetian.
Helvētius, ī, an Helvetian.
hīberna, hībernōrum, winter-quarters.
hīc, haec, hōc, this.
hiemō, *1, intr.*, I spend the winter.
hiems, hiemis, winter, storm; **initiō hiemis**, at the beginning of winter.
hodiē, *adv.*, today.
homō, hominis, *m.*, man (= human being).
honor, honōris, honor.
hōra, ae, hour.
hortor, *1, tr.; ut (nē)*, I exhort, I encourage.
hostis, hostis, *m.*, enemy (public).
hūmānitās, hūmānitātis, refinement, culture, mercy.
humī, on the ground.
humilis, e, low, humble.
humō, from the ground.

I

īdem, eadem, idem, the same.
idōneus, a, um, *ad w. acc.; dat.*, fit, suitable.
ille, illa, illud, that.
imber, imbris, rainstorm.
impedīmenta, impedīmentōrum, baggage.
impediō, *4, tr.*, I hinder, I encumber.
impedītus, a, um, hindered, encumbered.
imperātor, imperātōris, general, commander-in-chief.
imperium, ī, supreme power, (highest) command.
imperō, *1, tr.; dat. of person; acc. of thing; ut (nē)*, I order, I levy.
impetrō, *1, tr.; ab (ā) w. abl. of person; acc. of thing; ut (nē)*, I gain (by asking), I obtain.
impetus, ūs, attack.
importō, *1, tr.*, I bring in, I import.
improbus, a, um, bad, wicked.
improvīsō, *adv.*, unexpectedly.
īmus, a, um, lowest, lowermost.
in, *prep. w. abl.*, in, on.
in, *prep. w. acc.*, into, onto.
in multam noctem, far into the night.
in perpetuum, forever.
in potestātem *(gen.)* **perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum**, *4, intr.*, I come into the power of.
in prīmīs, especially.
in prīncipiō, in the beginning.
in saecula saeculōrum, forever and ever.
in statiōne sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *intr.*, I am on guard duty.
incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus, *3, tr.*, I set on fire, I burn.
incitō, *1, tr.*, I excite, I arouse.
incognitus, a, um, unknown.
incolō, incolere, incoluī, incultus, *3, tr.*, I inhabit, I dwell in.
incolumis, e, safe.
incrēdibilis, e, unbelievable.
indicium. *See* **per indicium.**
indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductus, *3, tr.; ut (nē)*, I lead into, I induce.
ineō, inīre, iniī, initus, *tr.*, I enter upon, I undertake.
inermis, e, unarmed.
īnfāns, īnfantis, infant, babe.
īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus, *tr.; w. bellum; dat. of person*, I make war on.
īnferus, a, um, low, humble.
īnfimus, a, um, lowest, lowermost.
inimīcus, a, um; *dat.*, hostile, unfriendly.
inimīcus, ī, an enemy (personal).
inīquus, a, um, uneven, unjust, unfavorable.
initium, ī, beginning; **initiō hiemis**, at the beginning of winter.
injūria, ae, wrong, injustice.
inopia, ae, scarcity, lack (of).
īnscientia, ae, ignorance.

īnsequor, īnsequī, īnsecūtus sum, *3, tr.,* I pursue.
īnsidiae, īnsidiārum, ambush, snare, plot.
īnstitūtum, ī, institution.
īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus, *3, tr.,* I draw up.
īnsula, ae, island.
integer, integra, integrum, fresh, whole, entire.
intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.,* I understand.
intendō, intendere, intendī, intentus, *3, tr.; dat.; ad w. acc.,* I stretch out, I strain.
inter, *prep. w. acc.,* between, among.
intercēdō, intercēdere, intercessī, intercessum, *3, intr.,* I go between, I am between, I intervene.
interclūdō, interclūdere, interclūsī, interclūsus, *3, tr.,* I shut off, I cast off.
intereā, *adv.,* meanwhile.
interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus, *3, tr.,* I kill.
interim, *adv.,* meanwhile.
intersum, interesse, interfuī, interfutūrus, *intr.; dat.,* I am among, I am present at, I take part in.
inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus, *4, tr.,* I find.
invītus, a, um, unwilling.
involvō, involvere, involvī, involūtus, *3, tr.,* I wind up.
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self, very.
is, ea, id, that, he, she, it.
iste, ista, istud, that.
Italia, ae, Italy.
itaque, *conj.,* and so.
iter, itineris, *n.,* journey, way; **iter faciō, facere, fēcī, factus,** *3, tr.,* I march.

J

jaceō, jacēre, jacuī, *2, intr.,* I lie.
jaciō, jacere, jēcī, jactus, *3, tr.,* I hurl, I throw.
jactō, *1, tr.,* I toss about, I discuss.
jam, *adv.,* already, now, by this (that) time.
Jēsus, Jēsū, Jesus.
Jōsēph, Joseph.
jubeō, jubēre, jussī, jussus, *2, tr.; acc. w. infin.,* I order.
Jūdaea, ae, Judea.
Jūdaeus, ī, a Jew.
jūdicium, ī, judgment, trial.
jūdicō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.,* I judge, I decide.
jugum, ī, ridge, yoke.
jūmentum, ī, beast of burden.
jungō, jungere, jūnxī, jūnctus, *3, tr., dat.; cum w. abl.,* I join.
Jūra, ae, a mountain chain between the Rhone and the Rhine.
jūs, jūris, *n.,* right, justice.
jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandī, *n.,* oath.
jūstus, a, um, just, lawful.

L

Labiēnus (ī), Titus (ī), Titus Labienus, a lieutenant on the staff of Caesar.
labor, labōris, toil, exertion, distress.
lacessō, lacessere, lacessīvī, lacessītus, *3, tr.,* I provoke, I harass.
lacus, ūs, lake.
lapis, lapidis, *m.,* stone.
lātē, *adv.,* widely.
lātus, a, um, broad, wide.
latus, lateris, *n.,* side, flank.
laudō, *1, tr.,* I praise.
laus, laudis, praise.
lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis, embassy.
lēgātus, ī, lieutenant, envoy, ambassador.
legiō, legiōnis, legion.
Lemannus, ī, Lake Geneva.
lēnis, e, gentle.
levis, e, light.
lēx, lēgis, law.
līber, lībera, līberum, free.
līberī, līberōrum, children.
līberō, *1, tr.,* I free, I liberate.
lībertās, lībertātis, liberty.

Lingonēs, Lingonum, a tribe in central Gaul.
lingua, ae, tongue, language.
linter, lintris, *f.*, skiff.
Liscus, ī, chief magistrate of the Haedui.
littera, ae, letter (of the alphabet).
litterae, litterārum, letter (epistle), literature.
locus, ī (*pl.* **loca, locōrum**), place.
longē lātēque, far and wide.
longinquus, a, um, distant, remote.
longissimē, *adv.*, farthest, very far.
longus, a, um. *See* **nāvis longa.**
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *3, tr. and intr.; dē w. abl.*, I speak, I talk (of, about).
lūna, ae, moon.
lūx, lūcis, light; **prīmā lūce,** at dawn.

M

magis, *adv.*, more.
magistrātus, ūs, magistrate, magistracy.
magnitūdō, magnitūdinis, size, greatness.
magnō negōtiō, with great trouble.
magnopere, *adv.*, greatly.
magnus, a, um, great, large.
mājor, mājus, greater, larger.
mājōrēs, mājōrum, *m.*, ancestors.
male, *adv.*, badly.
maleficium, ī, evil deed, crime.
malus, a, um, bad, evil.
mandō, *1, tr.; dat. of person; acc. of thing; ut (nē)*, I hand over, I commission.
Mārcus (**ī**) **Crassus** (**ī**), Marcus Crassus, a lieutenant on the staff of Caesar.
mare, maris (**mare** *or* **marī, maria, marium**), *n.*, sea; **terrā marīque,** on land and sea.
Marīa, ae, Mary.
māter, mātris, *f.*, mother.
māteria, ae, timber.
mātūrō, *1, tr.; infin.*, I hasten.
mātūrus, a, um, ripe, early, speedy.
maximē, *adv.*, most, very much, very greatly.
maximus, a, um, greatest, largest.
mē (**tē, sē**) **abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus,** *3, tr.*, I hide; **mē** (**tē, sē**) **cōnferō, cōnferre, cōntulī, collātus,** *tr.*, I betake myself.
mediā nocte, dē, at about midnight.
mediocris, e, moderate, small.
mediocriter, *adv.*, moderately.
medius, a, um, middle; **dē mediā nocte,** at about midnight.
melior, melius, better.
melius, *adv.*, better.
memoria, ae, memory; **memoriā teneō, tenēre, tenuī,** *2, tr.*, I remember.
mēns, mentis, mind.
mēnsis, mēnsis, *m.*, month.
mercātor, mercātōris, merchant.
mereō, *2, tr.*, I deserve, I merit.
mereor, *2, tr.*, I deserve, I merit.
meus, a, um, my, mine.
mīles, mīlitis, *m.*, soldier.
mīlle, *indecl. adj. in sing.; neut. noun in pl. w. gen.*, thousand.
minimus, a, um, least, smallest.
minor, minus, less, smaller.
minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtus, *3, tr.*, I lessen.
minus, *adv.*, less.
mīrus, a, um, wonderful, marvelous.
miser, misera, miserum, wretched.
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, *3, tr.*, I send.
modō. *See* **nōn modō.**
Mona, ae, the Isle of Man.
moneō, *2, tr.; acc. of person; ut (nē)*, I advise.
mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain.
mora, ae, delay.
mōrēs, mōrum, *m.*, character, customs.
morior, morī, mortuus sum, *3, intr.*, I die.
moror, *1, tr. and intr.*, I delay.
mors, mortis, death.
mōs, mōris, *m.*, custom, habit.

mōtus, ūs, movement, disturbance, revolution.
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, *2, tr.,* I move.
mox, *adv.,* soon.
mulier, mulieris, woman.
multā dē nocte, late at night.
multam noctem, in, far into the night.
multitūdō, multitūdinis, crowd, multitude.
multum, *adv.,* much.
multus, a, um, much; *in pl.,* many; **multā dē nocte,** late at night; **in multam noctem,** far into the night.
mundus, ī, world.
mūniō, *4, tr.,* I fortify.
mūnītiō, mūnītiōnis, fortification.
mūrus, ī, wall.

N

nam, *conj.,* for.
Nammēius, ī, a prominent Helvetian.
nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum, *3, tr.,* I get, I obtain.
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *3, intr.,* I am born.
nātūra, ae, nature.
nātus, a, um, born.
nauta, ae, *m.,* sailor.
nāvem solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, *3, tr.,* I set sail.
nāvis, nāvis, ship; **nāvem solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus,** *3, tr.,* I set sail; **nāvis longa, nāvis longae,** battleship.
Nāzareth, Nazareth.
nec (neque), *conj.,* and not, nor.
necessāriō, *adv.,* necessarily.
necessārius, a, um, necessary, urgent.
necō, *1, tr.,* I kill, I murder.
negōtium. *See* **magnō negōtiō, nūllō negōtiō.**
neque (nec), *conj.,* and not, nor.
neque . . . neque (nec . . . nec), *conjs.,* neither . . . nor.
neuter, neutra, neutrum, neutrīus, neither (of two).
nōbilis, e, noble.
nōbilitās, nōbilitātis, nobility.
noceō, *2, intr.; dat.,* I injure.
noctū, *adv.,* by night.
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *tr.; acc.; acc. w. infin.; ut (nē); infin.,* I am unwilling, I do not wish.
nōmen, nōminis, *n.,* name.
nōn, *adv.,* not.
nōn modo . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also.
nōndum, *adv.,* not yet.
nōnnūllī, ae, a, some.
nōnnumquam, *adv.,* sometimes.
nōnus, a, um, ninth.
noster, nostra, nostrum, our, ours.
novem, nine.
novus, a, um, new.
nox, noctis, night; **dē nocte,** during the night; **dē mediā nocte,** at about midnight; **multā dē nocte,** late at night; **in multam noctem,** far into the night; **paulō post mediam noctem,** shortly after midnight.
nūllō negōtiō, with no trouble.
nūllus, a, um, nūllīus, no, none; **nūllō negōtiō,** with no trouble.
numerus, ī, number.
nunc, *adv.,* now.
nūntiō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.,* I report.
nūntius, ī, messenger, message, report.
nūper, *adv.,* recently, lately.

O

ob, *prep. w. acc.,* on account of, because of.
objiciō, objicere, objēcī, objectus, *3, tr.,* I throw in the way of, I put in the way of, I expose.
oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum, *3, tr.; gen. of persons; gen. or acc. of things; acc. of neut. prons. or adjs.,* I forget.
obses, obsidis, *c.,* hostage.
obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus, *2, tr.,* I besiege, I blockade.
obsidiō, obsidiōnis, blockade, siege.
obtineō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus, *2, tr.,* I hold.

occāsus, ūs, setting; **occāsū sōlis,** at sunset.
occultus, a, um, hidden.
occupō, *1, tr.*, I seize.
octāvus, a, um, eighth.
octō, eight.
oculīs omnium, sub, in the sight of all.
offendō, offendere, offendī, offēnsus, *3, tr.*, I offend.
omnīnō, *adv.*, altogether, at all (with negatives).
omnipotēns, omnipotēns, omnipotentis, almighty.
omnis, e, all, every; **ex omnibus partibus,** from (on) all sides; **praeter omnium opiniōnem,** contrary to the expectation of everyone; **sub oculīs omnium,** in the sight of all.
opera, ae, services, pains, efforts; **operam dō, dare, dedī, datus,** *1, tr.*; *dat.*; *ut (nē)*, I pay attention to.
opēs, opum, wealth, resources.
opīniō, opīniōnis, belief, reputation, opinion; **praeter omnium opiniōnem,** contrary to the expectation of everyone.
oportet, oportēre, oportuit, *2, intr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, it behooves (I ought to).
oppidum, ī, town.
opportūnus, a, um, opportune, favorable.
ops, opis, power, help.
optimē, *adv.*, best.
optimus, a, um, best.
opus, operis, *n.*, work, production.
ōra, ae, seacoast.
ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, speech.
orbis, orbis, *m.*, the world.
ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*, order, rank.
Orgetorīx, Orgetorīgis, an Helvetian noble.
ōrō, *1, tr.*, I pray.
ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus (ostēnsus), *3, tr.*, I show.

P

pābulum, ī, fodder.
pācō, *1, tr.*, I pacify.
pāgus, ī, district, canton.
pānis, pānis, bread.
pannus, ī, cloth.
pār, pār, paris; *dat.*, equal (to).
parātus, a, um, ready, prepared.
parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus, *3, intr.*; *dat.*, I spare.
parō, *1, tr.*, I prepare.
pars, partis, part, direction; **alterā ex parte,** on the other side, on the other hand; **ūnā ex parte,** on one side, on the one hand; **ex omnibus partibus,** from (on) all sides.
parvus, a, um, small.
passus, ūs, a pace.
pāstor, pāstōris, shepherd.
pater, patris (patrum), father.
paucī, ae, a, few.
paulō post mediam noctem, shortly after midnight.
pāx, pācis, peace.
peccātor, peccātōris, sinner.
peccātum, ī, sin.
pecus, pecoris, *n.*, cattle.
pecus, pecudis, cattle (single head).
pedem referō, referre, retulī, relātus, *tr.*, I retreat, I fall back.
peditātus, ūs, infantry.
pējor, pējus, worse.
pējus, *adv.*, worse.
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, *3, tr.*, I drive, I defeat.
per, *prep. w. acc.*, through; **per indicium,** through informers; **per vim,** with force, violently, by force.
perdūcō, perdūcere, perdūxī, perductus, *3, tr.*, I lead through, I construct.
perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus, *tr.*, I bear out, I endure.
perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus, *3, tr.*, I perform, I complete.
perfringō, perfringere, perfrēgī, perfrāctus, *3, tr.*, I break through.
perfuga, ae, *m.*, a deserter.
perfugiō, perfugere, perfūgī, perfugitūrus, *3, intr.*, I flee, I escape.

perīculum, ī, danger.
perītus, a, um; *gen.,* skilled in, experienced in.
permoveō, permovēre, permōvī, permōtus, *2, tr.,* I excite, I alarm.
perpetuus, a, um, unbroken, perpetual; **in perpetuum,** forever.
perrumpō, perrumpere, perrūpī, perruptus, *3, tr.,* I break through.
perspiciō, perspicere, perspexī, perspectus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.,* I see clearly, I ascertain.
persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsum, *2, intr.; dat. of person; acc. w. infin.; ut (nē),* I persuade.
perterreō, *2, tr.,* I frighten.
pertineō, pertinēre, pertinuī, *2, intr.; ad w. acc.,* I pertain to, I stretch to.
perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum, *4, intr.; ad or in w. acc.,* I arrive (at); **in potestātem** *(gen.)* **perveniō,** I come into the power of.
pēs, pedis, *m.,* foot; **pedem referō, referre, retulī, relātus,** *tr.,* I retreat, I fall back.
pessimē, *adv.,* worst.
pessimus, a, um, worst.
petō, petere, petīvī, petītus, *3, tr.; ab (ā) w. abl. of person; acc. of thing; ut (nē),* I seek.
Pīlātus, ī, Pilate.
pīlum, ī, javelin.
Pīsō, Pīsōnis, Piso, a Roman.
plēbs, plēbis, the common people, the masses.
plēnus, a, um, full ('of' *w. abl.*).
plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque, the most, the majority.
plērumque, *adv.,* for the most part, generally.
plūrimum, *adv.,* most; **plūrimum possum, posse, potuī,** *intr.,* I am very influential.
plūrimus, a, um, most.
plūs, plūris, more.
plūs, *adv.,* more.
polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, *2, tr.; acc. w. future infin.,* I promise.
pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *3, tr.,* I place, I put; **castra pōnō,** I pitch camp.
pōns, pontis, *m.,* bridge.
populor, *1, tr.,* I plunder, I lay waste.
populus, ī, nation, people.
porta, ae, gate.
portus, ūs, port.
pōscō, pōscere, popōscī, *3, tr.; acc. or ab (ā) w. abl. of person; acc. of thing; ut (nē),* I demand.
possum, posse, potuī, *intr.; infin.,* I am able, I can; **plūrimum possum,** I am very influential.
post, *prep. w. acc.,* after.
posteā, *adv.,* afterwards.
posterus, a, um, following (of time), next.
postrēmus, a, um, last.
pōstulō, *1, tr.; ab (ā) w. abl. of person; acc. of thing; ut (nē); acc. w. infin.,* I demand.
potēns, potēns, potentis, powerful.
potentia, ae, power.
potestās, potestātis, power; **in potestātem** *(gen.)* **perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum,** *4, intr.,* I come into the power of.
potior, potīrī, potītus sum, *4, intr.; abl. or gen.,* I gain possession of.
praecēdō, praecēdere, praecessī, praecessum, *3, tr.,* I precede, I surpass.
praeda, ae, plunder, booty.
praedor, *1, tr.,* I get booty, I plunder.
praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus, *3, tr.; acc. of person; dat. of thing over which,* I put in charge of.
praemittō, praemittere, praemīsī, praemissus, *3, tr.,* I send ahead.
praemium, ī, reward.
praesēns, praesēns, praesentis, present.
praesidium, ī, garrison, protection.
praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus, *intr.; dat.,* I am in charge of, I am at the head of.
praeter, *prep. w. acc.,* by, beyond, besides; **praeter omnium opīniōnem**

contrary to the expectation of everyone.
praetor, praetōris, praetor.
precēs, precum, *f.*, prayers, entreaties.
prīmā lūce, at dawn.
prīmā nocte, at nightfall.
prīmō, *adv.*, at first, in the beginning.
prīmōgenitus, a, um, firstborn.
prīmus, a, um, first; **in prīmīs,** especially; **prīmā lūce,** at dawn; **prīmā nocte,** at nightfall; **quam prīmum,** *adv. phrase,* as soon as possible.
prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.*, chief, leading man.
prīncipium. *See* **in prīncipiō.**
prior, prius, former.
prīstinus, a, um, former, erstwhile.
prīvātus, a, um, private.
prō, *prep. w. abl.*, in front of, on behalf of, for.
probō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.; infin.*, I approve, I prove.
Procillus (ī), Gāius (ī) Valerius (ī), Gaius Valerius Procillus, a distinguished citizen of the province in Gaul.
prōdeō, prōdīre, prōdiī, *intr.; ex (ē) or ab (ā) w. abl.*, I go forth.
prōdō, prōdere, prōdidī, prōditus, *3, tr.*, I betray.
proelium, ī, battle; **proelium committō, committere, commīsī, commissus,** *3, tr.; cum w. abl.*, I join battle.
profectiō, profectiōnis, a setting out, a departure.
proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *3, intr.*, I set out.
prohibeō, *2, tr.; abl.; ab (ā) w. abl.*, I keep away from.
prōjiciō, prōjicere, prōjēcī, prōjectus, *3, tr.*, I throw forward, I reject.
prope, *adv.*, almost.
prope, *prep. w. acc. (224)*, near.
propinquus, a, um; *dat.*, near, close; *as a noun,* near relative.
propior, propius; *dat. or acc.*, nearer.
prōpōnō, prōpōnere, prōposuī, prōpositus, *3, tr.*, I put forward, I propose.
proprius, a, um, own, proper.
propter, *prep. w. acc. (225)*, on account of, because of.
prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*, I profit, I benefit.
prōvincia, ae, province.
proximus, a, um; *dat.*, next to, nearest to.
pūblicus a, um, public; **rēs pūblica, rēī pūblicae,** the state, government, common good.
Pūblius (ī) Crassus (ī), Publius Crassus, a lieutenant on Caesar's staff.
puer, puerī, boy.
pugna, ae, fight.
pugnō, *1, intr.; cum w. abl.; contrā w. acc.*, I fight.
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful.
putō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.*, I think.

Q

quā dē causā, and for this reason.
quā ex rē, and from this, and for this reason.
quam, *adv.*, than; **quam celerrimē,** *adv. phrase,* as quickly as possible; **quam prīmum,** *adv. phrase,* as soon as possible; **quam** *w. a superlative,* as . . . as possible.
quantus, a, um, how great, as great.
quārtus, a, um, fourth.
quattuor, four.
queror, querī, questus sum, *3, tr.*, I complain of, I lament.
quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron. and adj.; interr. adj.*, who, which, that, what; **quā dē causā,** and for this reason; **quā ex rē,** and from this, and for this reason.
quia, *conj.*, because.
quiētus, a, um, peaceful, quiet.
quīndecim, fifteen.
quīnque, five.
quīntus, a, um, fifth.

quis, quid, *interr. pron.,* who, what.
quod, eō, because.
quoniam, *conj.,* because.
quoque, *adv. (follows the word it modifies),* also.

R

ratiō, ratiōnis, reason, plan, method, manner.
ratis, ratis, raft.
recēns, recēns, recentis, fresh, recent.
recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus, *3, tr.,* I take back, I recapture.
reclīnō, *1, tr.,* I lay.
redintegrō, *1, tr.,* I renew.
referō, referre, retulī, relātus, *tr.; w. pedem,* I fall back, I retreat.
regiō, regiōnis, direction, region.
rēgnum, ī, kingly power, kingdom.
regō, regere, rēxī, rectus, *3, tr.,* I rule.
rejiciō, rejicere, rejēcī, rejectus, *3, tr.,* I throw back, I repulse.
relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus, *3, tr.,* I leave behind, I abandon.
reliquus, a, um, the rest, the remaining.
repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus, *3, tr.,* I drive back.
repentīnus, a, um, sudden.
reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.,* I find out.
reprimō, reprimere, repressī, repressus, *3, tr.,* I restrain, I check.
rēs, reī, thing, affair; **rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae,** the state, government, common good; **rēs secundae, rērum secundārum,** prosperity; **quā ex rē,** and from this, and for this reason.
resistō, resistere, restitī, *3, intr.; dat.,* I resist.
respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus, *2, tr.; acc. w. infin.,* I reply, I answer.
respōnsum, ī, answer.
retineō, retinēre, retinuī, retentus, *2, tr.,* I hold back, I detain.
revertor, revertī, revertī or **reversus sum,** *3, intr.,* I turn back, I return.
rēx, rēgis, *m.,* king.
Rhēnus, ī, the river Rhine.
Rhodanus, ī, the river Rhone.
Rhodus, ī, *f.,* Rhodes (a small island).
rīpa, ae, bank (of a river).
rogō, *1, tr.; acc. of person and ut (nē) or ab (ā) w. abl. of person and acc. of thing,* I ask, I beg, I request.
Rōma, ae, Rome.
Rōmānus, a, um, Roman.
Rōmānus, ī, a Roman.
rūre, from the country (as opposed to the city).
rūrī, in the country (as opposed to the city).
rūrsus (rūrsum), *adv.,* back, again.
rūs, to the country, into the country (as opposed to the city).

S

saecula. *See* **in saecula.**
saepe, *adv.,* often.
sagitta, ae, arrow.
salūs, salūtis, *f.,* safety, commonwealth.
salvātor, salvātōris, savior.
sanctificō, *1, tr.,* I bless ('hallow').
sanctus, a, um, holy.
Santonēs, Santonum, a Gallic tribe.
sarcinae, sarcinārum, soldier's pack.
satisfaciō, satisfacere, satisfēcī, satisfactum, *3, intr.; dat.,* I make restitution to, I appease.
scientia, ae, knowledge.
sciō, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.,* I know.
sēcrētō, *adv.,* secretly.
secundus, a, um, second, favorable; **rēs secundae, rērum secundārum,** prosperity.
sed, *conj.,* but.
Segūsiāvī, Segūsiāvōrum, a Gallic tribe.
semper, *adv.,* always.
senātus, ūs, senate.
sententia, ae, opinion, vote.
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.,* I feel, I think, I perceive.

septem, seven.
septimus, a, um, seventh.
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *3, tr.*, I follow.
sermō, sermōnis, *m.*, conversation, talk.
servitūs, servitūtis, *f.*, slavery.
servō, *1, tr.*, I preserve, I save.
servus, ī, slave.
sex, six.
sextus, a, um, sixth.
Sicilia, ae, Sicily (a large island).
sīcut, as.
signum, ī, standard (military), signal, sign.
silva, ae, forest, grove.
similis, e; *dat.; gen. of person*, like to, similar to.
sine, *prep. w. abl.*, without.
singulī, ae, a, each, each one.
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, left; **sinistrā**, on (from) the left.
situs, ūs, site, location.
socius, ī, ally, partner, companion.
sōl, sōlis, *m.*, sun; **occāsū sōlis**, at sunset.
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *2, intr.; infin.*, I am accustomed.
sōlus, a, um, sōlīus, alone.
solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, *3, tr.; w. nāvem*, I set sail.
spatium, ī, space.
spēs, speī, hope.
spīritus, ūs, spirit, ghost.
spongia, ae, sponge.
statim, *adv.*, immediately, at once.
statiōne. *See* **in statiōne**.
statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus, *3, tr.; infin.*, I set up, I determine.
stō, stāre, stetī, *1, intr.*, I stand.
studium, ī, eagerness, zeal, devotion.
sub oculīs omnium, in the sight of all.
sub vesperum, towards evening.
subitus, a, um, sudden, unexpected.
submoveō, submovēre, submōvī, submōtus, *2, tr.*, I dislodge, I remove.
subsequor, subsequī, subsecūtus sum, *3, tr.*, I follow after, I follow closely.
subsidium, ī, reserve, reinforcement.
subsum, subesse, *intr.; dat.*, I am under, I am near.
succēdō, succēdere, successī, successum, *3, intr.; ad w. acc.; dat.*, I come next, I succeed.
suī, sibi, sē (sēsē), sē (sēsē), himself, herself, itself.
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *intr.*, I am; **in statiōne sum**, *intr.*, I am on guard duty.
summus, a, um, highest.
super, *prep. w. acc.*, over.
superior, superius, upper, higher, former, superior.
superō, *1, tr.*, I overcome, I surpass, I conquer, I surmount.
supersum, superesse, superfuī, superfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*, I survive, I am left.
suppetō, suppetere, suppetīvī, *3, intr.*, I am at hand, I hold out (last).
supplicātiō, supplicātiōnis, a thanksgiving to the gods.
supplicium, ī, punishment.
suprēmus, a, um, highest, last.
surgō, surgere, surrēxī, surrectum, *3, intr.*, I arise.
suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus, *3, tr.*, I undertake.
suspīciō, suspīciōnis, suspicion.
suspicor, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.*, I suspect.
sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentus, *2, tr.*, I support, I hold up.
suus, a, um, his own, her own, its own.
Syria, ae, Syria.

T

taceō, *2, intr. and tr.*, I am silent, I pass over in silence.
tardus, a, um, slow.
tēlum, ī, dart, weapon.
temperantia, ae, self-control.
tempestās, tempestātis, weather, storm.
tempus, temporis, *n.*, time.

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, *2, tr.*, I hold; **memoriā teneō,** *2, tr.*, I remember.
tentātiō, tentātiōnis, temptation.
tergum, ī, back, rear; **tergum vertō, vertere, vertī, versus,** *3, tr.*, I retreat.
terra, ae, land; **terrā marīque,** on land and sea.
terror, terrōris, panic, dread.
tertius, a, um, third; **dē tertiā vigiliā,** during the third watch.
timeō, timēre, timuī, *2, tr.; nē (nē nōn, ut); infin.*, I fear.
timor, timōris, fear.
Titus (ī) Labiēnus (ī), Titus Labienus, a lieutenant on the staff of Caesar.
Tolōsātēs, Tolōsātium, the inhabitants of Tolosa.
tōtā urbe, throughout the whole city.
tōtus, a, um, tōtīus, whole; **tōtā urbe,** throughout the whole city.
trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus, *3, tr.*, I hand over.
trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductus, *3, tr.; 2 accs.; acc. and trāns w. acc.*, I lead across.
trāns, *prep. w. acc.*, across.
trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī, trānsitus, *tr.*, I go across, I cross.
trēs, tria, three.
Trēverī, Trēverōrum, a Gallic clan.
trīduum, ī, a period of three days.
triplex, triplex, triplicis, threefold.
tū, tuī, you.
tunc, *adv.*, then.
turma, ae, squadron (of cavalry).
turpis, e, shameful, base.
turris, turris, tower.
tūtus, a, um, safe.
tuus, a, um, your, yours.

U

ūllus, a, um, ūllīus, any, anyone.
ulterior, ulterius, farther.
ultimus, a, um, farthest, last.
ūnā ex parte, on the one hand, on one side.
undique, *adv.*, on (from) all sides.
ūnigenitus, a, um, only (born).
ūniversī, ae, a, all together, all.
ūnus, a, um, ūnīus, one; **ūnā ex parte,** on the one hand, on one side.
urbs, urbis, city; **tōtā urbe,** throughout the whole city.
uter, utra, utrum, utrīus, which (of two).
ūtilis, e; *ad w. acc.*, useful.
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *3, intr.; abl.*, I use, I employ.
uxor, uxōris, *f.*, wife.

V

vacō, *1, intr.*, I am unoccupied.
vacuus, a, um; *ab (ā) w. abl.*, empty (of), free (from).
vadum, ī, ford (of a river), shallow.
vagor, *1, intr.*, I wander about.
valeō, valēre, valuī, *2, intr.*, I am well, I have power.
Valerius (ī) Procillus (ī), Gāius, Gaius Valerius Procillus, a distinguished citizen of the province.
vallēs, vallis, valley.
vāllum, ī, rampart.
vāstō, *1, tr.*, I lay waste.
vehemēns, vehemēns, vehementis, violent, strong.
vehementer, *adv.*, vehemently, vigorously.
Venetī, Venetōrum, a Gallic clan.
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *4, intr.*, I come.
venter, ventris, womb.
vērō, *adv.*, truly, indeed, however.
vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, *3, tr.; w. tergum,* I retreat.
Verucloetius, ī, an Helvetian chief.
vērus, a, um, true.
vesperum. *See* **sub vesperum.**
vester, vestra, vestrum, your, yours.
vetus, vetus, veteris (vetere, vetera, veterum), old.
vī, with force, violently, by force.
via, ae, road, way.
vīcēsimus, a, um, twentieth.

victor, victōris, *m.*, victor, conqueror.
victōria, ae, victory.
vīcus, ī, village, street.
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, *2, tr.; acc. w. infin.*, I see.
videor, vidērī, vīsus sum, *2, intr.; infin.*, I seem.
vigilia, ae, watch; **dē tertiā vigiliā,** during the third watch.
vigiliae, vigiliārum, sentinels.
vigilō, *1, intr.*, I keep watch.
vīgintī, twenty.
vim faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *3, tr.*, I use force.
vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, *3, tr.*, I conquer.
vinculum, ī, chain.
vindicō, *1, tr. or in w. acc.*, I avenge.
vir, virī, man (= an individual male).
virtus, virtūtis, *f.*, courage, manliness, virtue.
vīs (**vim, vī**; *pl.* **vīrēs, vīrium**), force, strength, energy; **vim faciō, facere, fēcī, factus,** *3, tr.*, I use force; **per vim,** with force, violently, by force; **vī,** with force, violently, by force.
vīta, ae, life; **vītam agō, agere, ēgī, āctus,** *3, tr.*, I lead a life.
vītō, *1, tr.*, I avoid.
vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctūrus, *3, intr.*, I live.
Voncontiī, Vocontiōrum, a Gallic mountain tribe.
vocō, *1, tr.*, I summon, I call.
volō, velle, voluī, *tr.; acc.; infin.; acc. w. infin.; ut (nē)*, I am willing, I wish.
voluntās, voluntātis, will.
vōx, vōcis, voice.
vulnerō, *1, tr.*, I wound.
vulnus, vulneris, *n.*, wound.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

abandon, relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus, *3, tr.*
able, I am, possum, posse, potuī, *intr.; infin.*
about, dē, *prep. w. abl.*
about, I toss, jactō, *1, tr.*
about, I turn, convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus, *3, tr.*
about, I wander, vagor, *1, intr.*
about midnight, at, dē mediā nocte.
abundance, cōpia, ae.
acceptable, grātus, a, um; *dat.*
accuse, accūsō, *1, tr.; gen. of charge.*
accustomed, I am, solcō, solēre, solitus sum, *2, intr.; infin.*
acquainted with, I become, cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
across, trāns, *prep. w. acc.*
across, I go, trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī, trānsitus, *tr.*
across, I lead, trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductus, *3, tr.; 2 acc.; acc. and trāns w. acc.*
active, alacer, alacris, alacre.
advise, moncō, *2, tr.; acc. of person; ut (nē).*
affair, rēs, reī.
affect, afficiō, afficere, affēcī, affectus, *3, tr.; abl.*
after, post, *prep. w. acc.*
after, I follow, subsequor, subsequī, subsecūtus sum, *3, tr.*
afterwards, posteā, *adv.*
again, rūrsus, *adv.;* rūrsum, *adv.*
against, in, *prep. w. acc.;* contrā, *prep. w. acc.*
ahead, I send, praemittō, praemittere, praemīsī, praemissus, *3, tr.*
alarm, commoveō, commovēre, commōvī, commōtus, *2, tr.;* permoveō, permovēre, permōvī, permōtus, *2, tr.*
all, omnis, e; **in the sight of all,** sub oculīs omnium.
all, at *(with negatives),* omnīnō, *adv.*
all sides, from, ex omnibus partibus; **on (from) all sides,** undique, *adv.*
all together, ūniversī, ae, a.
ally, socius, ī.
almost, prope, *adv.;* ferē, *adv. (follows the word it modifies).*
alone, sōlus, a, um, sōlīus.
already, jam, *adv.*
also, quoque, *adv. (follows the word it modifies).*
altogether, omnīnō, *adv.*
always, semper, *adv.*
am, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *intr.*
am able, possum, posse, potuī, *intr.; infin.*
am accustomed, soleō, solēre, solitus sum; *2, intr; infin.*
am among, intersum, interesse, interfuī, interfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
am at hand, suppetō, suppetere, suppetīvī, *3, intr.*
am at the head of, praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
am away, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *intr.; ab (ā) w. abl.*
am between, intercēdō, intercēdere, intercessī, intercessum, *3, intr.*
am born, nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *3, intr.*
am distant, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *intr.; ab (ā) w. abl.*
am in charge of, praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
am informed (of), certior fīō, fierī, factus sum, *intr.; dē w. abl.; gen.; acc. w. infin.*
am lacking to, dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
am left, supersum, superesse, superfuī, superfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*

am near, subsum, subesse, *intr.; dat.*
am on guard duty, in statiōne sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *intr.*
am present (to help or support), adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
am present at, intersum, interesse, interfuī, interfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
am silent, taceō, *2, intr. and tr.*
am slain, cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *3, intr.*
am under, subsum, subesse, *intr.; dat.*
am unoccupied, vacō, *1, intr.*
am unwilling, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *tr.; acc.; acc. w. infin.; ut (nē); infin.*
am very influential, plūrimum possum, posse, potuī, *intr.*
am well, valeō, valēre, valuī, *2, intr.*
am willing, volō, velle, voluī, *tr.; acc.; infin.; acc. w. infin.; ut (nē).*
ambassador, lēgātus, ī.
ambush, īnsidiae, īnsidiārum.
among, inter, *prep. w. acc.;* apud, *prep. w. acc.*
among, I am, intersum, interesse, interfuī, interfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
ample, amplus, a, um.
ancestors, mājōrēs, mājōrum, *m.*
and, atque (ac); et, *conjs.*
and for this reason, quā ex rē; quā dē causā.
and from this, quā ex rē.
and not, neque (nec), *conj.*
and so, itaque, *conj.*
another, alius, alia, aliud, alterīus, alterī.
another's, aliēnus, a, um.
answer, respōnsum, ī.
answer, respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus, *2, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
any; anyone, ūllus, a, um, ūllīus.
appease, satisfaciō, satisfacere, satisfēcī, satisfactum, *3, intr.; dat.*
approach, accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum, *3, intr.; ad w. acc.*
approve, probō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.; infin.*
Aquitania, Aquitania, ae.
Aquitanians, Aquītānī, Aquītānōrum.
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, ī.
arise, coorior, coorīrī, coortus sum, *4, intr.*
arms, arma, armōrum.
army, exercitus, ūs; **(on the march),** āgmen, āgminis.
arouse, incitō, *1, tr.*
arrange, dispōnō, dispōnere, disposuī, dispositus, *3, tr.*
arrival, adventus, ūs.
arrive (at), perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum, *4, intr.; ad w. acc.; in with acc.*
arrow, sagitta, ae.
artifice, dolus, ī.
as . . . as possible, quam *and a superlative.*
as great, quantus, a, um.
as quickly as possible, quam celerrimē, *adv. phrase.*
as soon as possible, quam prīmum.
ascertain, cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.;* perspiciō, perspicere, perspexī, perspectus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
aside, I put, dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositus, *3, tr.*
ask, rogō, *1, tr.; acc. of person and ut (nē) or ab (ā) w. abl. of person and acc. of thing.*
assault, adorior, adorīrī, adortus sum, *4, tr.*
assembly, conventus, ūs.
assistance, auxilium, ī.
assizes, conventus, ūs.
at about midnight, dē mediā nocte.
at all *(with negatives),* omnīnō, *adv.*
at dawn, prīmā lūce.
at first, prīmō, *adv.*
at hand, I am, suppetō, suppetere, suppetīvī, *3, intr.*
at home, domī.
at night, late, multā dē nocte.
at nightfall, prīmā nocte.
at once, statim, *adv.*
at sunset, occāsū sōlis.

at the beginning of winter, initiō hiemis.
at the head of, I am, praesum, praesse, praefuī, praefutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
at the house of, apud, *prep. w. acc.*
Athens, Athēnae, Athēnārum.
attack, adorior, adorīrī, adortus sum, *4, tr.;* aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum, *3, tr.*
attack, impetus, ūs.
attain, cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum, *3, tr.*
attempt, cōnor, *1, tr.; infin.*
attend to, animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animadversus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
attention to, I pay, operam dō, dare, dedī, datus, *1, tr.; dat. or ut (nē).*
authority, auctōritās, auctōritātis.
avenge, vindicō, *1, tr.; or in w. acc.*
avoid, vītō, *1, tr.*
await, exspectō, *1, tr.*
away, I am, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *intr.; ab (ā) w. abl.*
away, I carry, dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus, *tr.*
away, I go, discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum, *3, intr.; ab (ā) w. abl.; dē w. abl.; ex (ē) w. abl.*
away, I send, dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissus, *3, tr.*
away, I snatch, ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus, *3, tr.; dat. of person; ex (ē) w. abl.; abl.*
away, I throw, prōjiciō, prōjicere, prōjēcī, prōjectus, *3, tr.*
away from, ex (ē), *prep. w. abl.*
away from, I keep, prohibeō, *2, tr.; abl. or ab (ā) w. abl.*
away from, I turn, āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversus, *3, tr.; ab (ā) w. abl.*

B

back, rūrsus, *adv.;* rūrsum, *adv.*
back, tergum, ī.
back, I drive, repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus, *3, tr.*
back, I fall, pedem referō, referre, retulī, relātus, *tr.*
back, I hold, retineō, retinēre, retinuī, retentus. *2, tr.*
back, I take, recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus, *3, tr.*
back, I throw, rejiciō, rejicere, rejēcī, rejectus, *3, tr.*
bad, malus, a, um; improbus, a, um.
badly, male, *adv.*
baggage, impedīmenta, impedīmentōrum; sarcinae, sarcinārum.
bank (of a river), rīpa, ae.
barbarian, barbarus, ī.
barbarous, barbarus, a, um.
base, turpis, e.
battle, proelium, ī; **I join battle with,** proelium committō, committere, commīsī, commissus, *3, tr.; cum w. abl.*
battle line, aciēs, aciēī.
battleship, nāvis longa, nāvis longae.
bear, gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *3, tr.;* ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *tr.*
bear in, īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus, *tr.*
bear out, efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus, *tr. (passive = I am elated).*
bear through, perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus, *tr.*
beast of burden, jūmentum, ī.
beautiful, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.
because of, propter, *prep. w. acc.;* ob, *prep. w. acc.*
become, fīō, fierī, factus sum, *intr.*
become acquainted with, cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
before, ante, *prep. w. acc. (200).*
beg, rogō, *1, tr.; acc. of person and ut (nē) or ab (ā) w. abl. of person and acc. of thing.*
beginning, initium, ī; **at the beginning of winter,** initiō hiemis.
begun, I have, coepī, coepisse, coeptus, *3, tr.; infin.*
behalf of, on, prō, *prep. w. abl.*
behind, I leave, relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus, *3, tr.*

behooves, oportet, oportēre, oportuit, *2, intr.; acc. w. infin.*
Belgians, Belgae, Belgārum.
belief, opīniō, opīniōnis.
believe, crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, *3, tr.; acc. of thing; dat. of person; acc. w. infin.*
benefit, beneficium, ī.
benefit, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
besides, praeter, *prep. w. acc.*
besiege, obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus, *2, tr.*
best, optimus, a, um.
best, optimē, *adv.*
betake oneself to, mē (tē, sē) cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus, *tr.; ad w. acc.; in w. acc.*
betray, prōdō, prōdere, prōdidī, prōditus, *3, tr.*
better, melior, melius.
better, melius, *adv.*
between, inter, *prep. w. acc.;* **I am between; I go between,** intercēdō, intercēdere, intercessī, intercessum, *3, intr.*
beyond, praeter, *prep. w. acc.*
bitterly, ācriter, *adv.*
blockade, obsidiō, obsidiōnis.
blockade, obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus, *2, tr.*
bold, audāx, audāx, audācis.
boldly, audācter, *adv.*
boldness, audācia, ae.
bond, vinculum, ī.
booty, praeda, ae; **I get booty,** praedor, *1, intr.*
bound, contineō, continēre, continuī, contentus, *2, tr.*
boundary, fīnēs, fīnium, *m. pl.*
boy, puer, puerī.
brave, fortis, e.
bravely, fortiter, *adv.*
bravery, fortitūdō, fortitūdinis.
break through, perrumpō, perrumpere, perrūpī, perruptus, *3, tr.;* perfringō, perfringere, perfrēgī, perfrāctus, *3, tr.*
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
brief, brevis, e.
bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *tr.;* **I bring help,** auxilium ferō.
bring in, importō, *1, tr.*
bring to, afferō, afferre, attulī, allātus, *tr.*
bring together, condūcō, condūcere, condūxī, conductus, *3, tr.;* comportō, *1, tr.*
Britain, Britannia, ae.
Britons, Britannī, Britannōrum.
broad, lātus, a, um.
brother, frāter, frātris (frātrum).
Brutus, Decimus, Decimus Brūtus, Decimī Brūtī.
build, aedificō, *1, tr.*
building, aedificium, ī.
burn, incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus, *3, tr.*
but, sed, *conj.*
by, ab (ā), *prep. w. abl.;* praeter, *prep. w. acc.*
by force, vī; per vim.
by night, noctū, *adv.*
by storm, I take, expugnō, *1, tr.*
by this (that) time, jam, *adv.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris.
call, vocō, *1, tr.*
call together, convocō, *1, tr.*
camp, castra, castrōrum; **I pitch camp,** castra pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *3, tr.*
can, possum, posse, potuī, *intr.; infin.*
canton, pāgus, ī.
capture, capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, *3, tr.*
care, cūra, ae; dīligentia, ae.
careful, dīligēns, dīligēns, dīligentis.
carry, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *tr.*
carry away, dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus, *tr.*
carry on, gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *3, tr.*
carry out, efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus, *tr.*

cart, currus, ūs.
cast down, dējiciō, dējicere, dējēcī, dējectus, *3, tr.; abl.; dē w. abl.; ex (ē) w. abl.*
Casticus, Casticus, ī.
cattle, pecus, pecoris, *n.; (single head),* pecus, pecudis.
Caturiges, Caturīgēs, Caturīgum.
cause, causa, ae.
cavalry, equitātus, ūs.
cavalry (of), equester, equestris, equestre.
cavalryman, eques, equitis, *m.*
Ceutrones, Ceutronēs, Ceutronum.
chain, vinculum, ī.
change, commūtō, *1, tr.;* convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus, *3, tr.*
character, animus, ī; mōrēs, mōrum, *m.*
charge of, I am in, praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus, *intr.; dat.;* **I put in charge of,** praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus, *3, tr.; acc. of person; dat. of thing over which.*
chariot, currus, ūs.
check, coerceō, *2, tr.;* reprimō, reprimere, repressī, repressus, *3, tr.*
chief, prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.*
children, līberī, līberōrum.
citadel, arx, arcis.
citizen, cīvis, cīvis, *m.*
citizenship, cīvitās, cīvitātis.
city, urbs, urbis; **throughout the whole city,** tōtā urbe.
clearly, I see, perspiciō, perspicere, perspexī, perspectus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
client, cliēns, clientis, *m.*
close, propinquus, a, um; *dat.*
close to, prope, *prep. w. acc.*
closely, I follow, subsequor, subsequī, subsecūtus sum, *3, tr.*
cohort, cohors, cohortis.
cold, frīgus, frīgoris, *n.*
collect, comportō, *1, tr.;* condūcō, condūcere, condūxī, conductus, *3, tr.;* cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus, *tr.*
column (military), āgmen, āgminis.
come, veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *4, intr.*
come into the power of, in potestātem *(gen.)* perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum, *4, intr.*
come next, succēdō, succēdere, successī, successum, *3, intr.; dat. or ad w. acc.*
come together, conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventum, *4, intr.*
comfort, cōnsōlor, *1, tr.*
command (highest), imperium, ī.
commander-in-chief, imperātor, imperātōris.
commission, mandō, *1, tr.; dat. of person; acc. of thing; ut (nē).*
common, commūnis, e.
common good, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae.
common people, plēbs, plēbis.
companion, socius, ī.
compel, cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.; ut (nē).*
complain of, queror, querī, questus sum, *3, tr.*
complete, cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus, *3, tr.;* perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus, *3, tr.*
concerning, dē, *prep. w. abl.*
concourse, concursus, ūs.
condition, condiciō, condiciōnis.
confidence, fidēs, fideī.
congratulate, grātulor, *1, intr.; dat.*
conquer, superō, *1, tr.;* vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, *3, tr.*
conqueror, victor, victōris.
consider, dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, *3, tr.*
conspiracy, conjūrātiō, conjūrātiōnis.
conspire, conjūrō, *1, tr.*
construct, perdūcō, perdūcere, perdūxī, perductus, *3, tr.*
consul, cōnsul, cōnsulis, *m.*
contain, contineō, continēre, continuī, contentus, *2, tr.*

continually, continenter, *adv.*
contrary to the expectation of everyone, praeter omnium opīniōnem.
conversation, sermō, sermōnis, *m.*
council, concilium, ī.
country: in the country, rūrī; **from the country,** rūre; **to the country,** rūs.
courage, virtūs, virtūtis; fortitūdō, fortitūdinis.
Crassus, Marcus, Mārcus Crassus, Mārcī Crassī.
Crassus, Publius, Pūblius Crassus, Pūbliī Crassī.
crime, maleficium, ī; facinus, facinoris, *n.*
cross, trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī, trānsitus, *tr.*
crowd, multitūdō, multitūdinis.
crowded, cōnfertus, a, um.
cruel, crūdēlis, e.
culture, hūmānitās, hūmānitātis.
custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*
cut down, concīdō, concīdere, concīdī, concīsus, *3, tr.*
cut off, interclūdō, interclūdere, interclūsī, interclūsus, *3, tr.*

D

daily, cotīdiānus, a, um.
daily, cotīdiē, *adv.*
danger, perīculum, ī.
dare, audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *2, intr.; infin.*
daring, audāx, audāx, audācis.
daring, audācia, ae.
dart, tēlum, ī.
daughter, fīlia, ae.
dawn, at, prīmā lūce.
day, diēs, diēī, *m. (f.)*
days, period of three, trīduum, ī; **period of two days,** bīduum, ī.
death, mors, mortis.
decide, cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus, *3, tr.; infin.;* jūdicō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
decree, dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
deed, facinus, facinoris, *n.;* **good deed,** beneficium, ī; **evil deed,** maleficium, ī.
deep, altus, a, um.
defeat, pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, *3, tr.*
defend, dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, *3, tr.*
delay, mora, ae.
delay, moror, *1, tr. and intr.*
deliberate (about), dēlīberō, *1, tr. or intr.; dē w. abl.*
demand, flāgitō, *1, tr.; acc. of person or ab (ā) w. abl. of person; acc. of thing; ut (nē);* pōscō, pōscere, popōscī, *3, tr.; acc. of person or ab (ā) w. abl. of person; acc. of thing; ut (nē);* pōstulō, *1, tr.; ab (ā) w. abl. of person; acc. of thing; ut (nē); acc. w. infin.*
depart, discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum, *3, intr.; ab (ā) w. abl.; dē w. abl.; ex (ē) w. abl.;* abeō, abīre, abiī, abitum, *intr.; ab (ā) w. abl.; dē w. abl.; ex (ē) w. abl.*
departure, profectiō, profectiōnis.
dependent, cliēns, clientis, *m.*
depth, altitūdō, altitūdinis.
desert, dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
deserter, perfuga, ae, *m.*
deserve (well of), mereō, *2, tr.;* mereor, *2, tr.; bene dē w. abl.*
desire, cupiditās, cupiditātis.
desire, cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītus, *3, tr.; acc.; infin.; acc. w. infin.; ut (nē).*
desirous of, cupidus, a, um; *gen.*
desist from, dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, *3, intr.; abl.; infin.*
detain, retineō, retinēre, retinuī, retentus, *2, tr.*
determine, statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus, *3, tr.; infin.;* dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.;* cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus, *3, tr.*
devotion, studium, ī.

die, morior, morī, mortuus sum, *3, intr.*
different, dīversus, a, um.
difficult, angustus, a, um; difficilis, e.
difficulty, angustiae, angustiārum.
dike, agger, aggeris.
diligence, dīligentia, ae.
direction, regiō, regiōnis; pars, partis.
disaster, calamitās, calamitātis.
disclose, ēnūntiō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
discover, comperiō, comperīre, comperī, compertus, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.;* reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
discuss, jactō, *1, tr.*
dislodge, submoveō, submovēre, submōvī, submōtus, *2, tr.*
dismiss, dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissus, *3, tr.*
dispatch, expediō, *4, tr.*
dissimilar, dissimilis, e; *dat.*
distant, longinquus, a, um.
distant, I am, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *intr.; ab (ā) w. abl.*
distress, labor, labōris.
district, pāgus, ī.
disturbance, mōtus, ūs.
ditch, fossa, ae.
Divico, Dīvicō, Dīvicōnis.
divide into, dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus, *3, tr.; in w. acc.*
Divitiacus, Dīvitiācus, ī.
do, agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *3, tr.;* faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *3, tr.;* **I am done,** fīō, fierī, factus sum, *intr.*
doubtful, anceps, anceps, ancipitis; dubius, a, um.
down, I cast, dējiciō, dējicere, dējēcī, dējectus, *3, tr.; abl.; dē w. abl; ex (ē) w. abl.*
draw up, īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus, *3, tr.*
dread, terror, terrōris.
drive, agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *3, tr.;* agitō, *1, tr.;* pellō, pēllere, pepulī, pulsus, *3, tr.*
drive back, repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus, *3, tr.*
drive together, cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, *3, tr.*
Dumnorix, Dumnorīx, Dumnorīgis.
during the night, dē nocte.
during the third watch, dē tertiā vigiliā.
duty, I am on guard, in statiōne sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *intr.*
dwell in, incolō, incolere, incoluī, incultus, *3, tr.*

E

each, singulī, ae, a.
each one, singulī, ae, a.
eager, alacer, alacris, alacre.
eager for, cupidus, a, um; *gen.*
eagerness, studium, ī.
early, mātūrus, a, um.
easy, facilis, e.
effort, opera, ae.
eight, octō.
either . . . or, aut . . . aut, *conjs.*
elevated, ēditus, a, um.
eleventh, ūndecimus, a, um.
embassy, lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis.
employ, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *3, intr.; abl.*
empty (from, of), vacuus, a, um; *ab (ā) w. abl.*
encourage, hortor, *1, tr.; ut (nē);* cohortor, *1, tr.; ut (nē);* cōnfirmō, *1, tr.*
encumber, impediō, *4, tr.*
encumbered, impedītus, a, um.
endure, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *tr.;* perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus, *tr.*
enemy (public), hostis, hostis; **(private),** inimīcus, ī.
energy, vīs (vim, vī, *pl.* vīrēs, vīrium).
enroll, cōnscrībō, cōnscrībere, cōnscrīpsī, cōnscrīptus, *3, tr.*
enter upon, ineō, inīre, iniī, initus, *tr.*
entire, integer, integra, integrum.
entreaties, precēs, precum, *f.*
entrust, crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crē-

ditus, *3, tr.; acc. of thing; dat. of person; acc. w. infin.*
envoy, lēgātus, ī.
equal (to), pār, pār, paris; *dat.*
erstwhile, prīstinus, a, um.
escape, perfugiō, perfugere, perfūgī, perfugitūrus, *3, intr.*
especially, in prīmīs.
establish, cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus, *3, tr.; infin.*
esteem, dignitās, dignitātis.
even, aequus, a, um.
evening, towards, sub vesperum.
every, omnis, e.
everyone, contrary to the expectation of, praeter opīnōnem omnium.
evil, malus, a, um.
evil deed, maleficium, ī.
excite, incitō, *1, tr.;* commoveō, commovēre, commōvī, commōtus, *2, tr.;* permoveō, permovēre, permōvī, permōtus, *2, tr.*
exertion, labor, labōris.
exhaust, cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus, *3, tr.*
exhort, hortor, *1, tr.; ut (nē);* cohortor, *1, tr.; ut (nē).*
expectation of everyone, contrary to the, praeter opīniōnem omnium.
experienced in, perītus, a, um; *gen.*
expose, objiciō, objicere, objēcī, objectus, *3, tr.*

F

fall, cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *3, intr.*
fall back, pedem referō, referre, retulī, relātus, *tr.*
fame, fāma, ae; gloria, ae.
family, familia, ae.
far, very, longissimē, *adv.*
far and wide, longē lātēque.
far into the night, in multam noctem.
farther, ulterior, ulterius.
farthest, ultimus, a, um.
farthest, longissimē, *adv.*
fate, fortūna, ae.
father, pater, patris (patrum).
favor, grātia, ae.
favorable, secundus, a, um; opportūnus, a, um.
fear, timor, timōris.
fear, timeō, timēre, timuī, *2, tr.; nē (nē nōn, ut); infin.*
feel, sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
fellow-citizen, cīvis, cīvis, *m.*
few, paucī, ae, a.
field, ager, agrī.
fifteen, quīndecim, *indecl.*
fifth, quīntus, a, um.
fifty, quīnquāgintā.
fight, pugna, ae.
fight, pugnō, *1, intr.; cum w. abl.; contrā w. acc.*
fight against or with, bellō, *1, tr.; cum w. abl.; contrā w. acc.*
fill up (with), compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus, *2, tr.; abl.*
find out, comperiō, comperīre, comperī, compertus, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.;* reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
fire, I set on, incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus, *3, tr.*
first, prīmus, a, um; **at first,** prīmō, *adv.*
fit, idōneus, a, um; *ad w. acc.; dat.*
five, quīnque.
flank, latus, lateris, *n.*
flee, fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *3, intr. and tr.;* perfugiō, perfugere, perfūgī, perfugitūrus, *3, intr.*
fleet, classis, classis, *abl. -e, less often -ī.*
flight, fuga, ae.
flow, fluō, fluere, flūxī, *3, intr.*
fodder, pābulum, ī.
follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *3, tr.*
follow after, subsequor, subsequī, subsecūtus sum, *3, tr.*
follow closely, subsequor, subsequī, subsecūtus sum, *3, tr.*
follow out (a plan, *etc.*), exsequor, exsequī, exsecūtus sum, *3, tr.*

following (of time), posterus, a, um.
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*
for, nam, *conj.*; enim, *conj., postp.*; prō, *prep. w. abl.*
for the most part, plērumque, *adv.*
for the sake of, *gen. w. causā.*
for this reason, and, quā dē causā; quā ex rē.
force, vīs (vim, vī, *pl.* vīrēs, vīrium); **by force**, vī; per vim; **I use force**, vim faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *3, tr.*; **with force**, vī, per vim.
force, cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.; ut (nē).*
ford (of a river), vadum, ī.
foreign, exterus, a, um; aliēnus, a, um.
forest, silva, ae.
forever, in perpetuum.
forget, oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum, *3, tr.; gen. of persons; gen. or acc. of things; acc. of neuter pronouns or adjectives.*
former, prīstinus, a, um; prior, prius; superior, superius.
fort, castellum, ī; praesidium, ī.
forth, I go, exeō, exīre, exiī, exitum, *intr.; ex (ē) w. abl.*
fortification, mūnītiō, mūnītiōnis; opus, operis.
fortify, mūniō, *4, tr.*; commūniō, *4, tr.*
fortunate, fēlīx, fēlīx, fēlīcis.
fortunately, fēlīciter.
fortune, fortūna, ae.
forty, quadrāgintā.
forward, I put, prōpōnō, prōpōnere, prōposuī, prōpositus, *3, tr.*; **I throw forward**, prōjiciō, prōjicere, prōjēcī, prējectus, *3, tr.*
four, quattuor, *indecl.*
fourth, quārtus, a, um.
free, līber, lībera, līberum.
free, līberō, *1, tr.*
free from, vacuus, a, um; *ab (ā) w. abl.*
freedom, lībertās, lībertātis.
frequent, crēber, crēbra, crēbrum.
fresh, recēns, recēns, recentis; integer, integra, integrum.
friend, amīcus, ī.
friendly, amīcus, a, um.
friendship, amīcitia, ae.
frighten, perterreō, *2, tr.*
from, ab (ā), *prep. w. abl.*; ex (ē), *prep. w. abl.*
from all sides, undique, *adv.*
from (on) all sides, ex omnibus partibus.
from home, domō.
from the country, rūre.
from the ground, humō.
from this, and, quā ex rē.
front of, in, prō, *prep. w. abl.*
fruit, frūctus, ūs.
fugitive, fugitīvus, ī.

G

gain (by asking), impetrō, *1, tr.; ab (ā) w. abl. of person; acc. of thing; ut (nē).*
gain possession of, potior, *4, intr.; abl. or gen.*
Gaius Valerius Procillus, Gāius Valerius Procillus, Gāiī Valeriī Procillī.
Gallic, Gallicus, a, um.
Garonne river, Garumna, ae.
garrison, praesidium, ī.
gate, porta, ae.
gathering, coetus, ūs.
Gaul, Gallia, ae.
Gaul, Gallus, ī.
general, imperātor, imperātōris; dux, ducis, *m.*
generally, plērumque, *adv.*
Geneva, Lake, Lemannus, ī.
gentle, lēnis, e.
Gergovia, Gergovia, ae.
German, Germānus, a, um.
German, Germānus, ī.
get, nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum, *3, tr.*; cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum, *3, tr.*
get booty, praedor, *1, intr.*
get ready, comparō, *1, tr.*; expediō, *4, tr.*
give, dō, dare, dedī, datus, *1, tr.*
glory, glōria, ae.

go, eō, īre, i(v)ī, itum, *intr.*
go across, trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī, trānsitus, *tr.*
go away, abeō, abīre, abiī, abitum, *intr.; ab (ā) w. abl.; dē w. abl.; ex (ē) w. abl.;* discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum, *3, intr.; ab (ā) w. abl.; dē w. abl.; ex (ē) w. abl.*
go away from, dēcēdō, dēcēdere, dēcessī, dēcessum, *3, intr.; abl.; dē w. abl.; ex (ē) w. abl.*
go between, intercēdō, intercēdere, intercessī, intercessum, *3, intr.*
go by, praetereō, praeterīre, praeteriī, praeteritus, *tr.*
go forth, exeō, exīre, exiī, exitum, *intr.; ex (ē) w. abl.; dē w. abl.;* prōdeō, prōdīre, prōdiī, *intr.; ex (ē) w. abl.; ab (ā) w. abl.*
go out, exeō, exīre, exiī, exitum, *intr.; ex (ē) w. abl.; dē w. abl.;* ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, *3, intr.; ex (ē) w. abl.; abl.*
go to, adeō, adīre, adiī, aditus, *tr. or ad w. acc.*
good, bonus, a, um.
good, common, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae.
good deed, beneficium, ī.
government, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae.
grain, frūmentum, ī.
Graioceli, Grāiocelī, Grāiocelōrum.
grant, concēdō, concēdere, concessī, concessus, *3, tr.*
great, magnus, a, um; **how great,** quantus, a, um; **with great trouble,** magnō negōtiō.
greater, mājor, mājus.
greatest, maximus, a, um.
greatest, maximē, *adv.*
greatly, magnopere, *adv.*
greatly, very, maximē, *adv.*
greatness, magnitūdō, magnitūdinis.
greed, cupiditās, cupiditātis.
grief, dolor, dolōris.
ground: on the ground, humī; **from the ground,** humō.
grove, silva, ae.
guard duty, I am on, in statiōne sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *intr.*
guide, dux, ducis, *m.*

H

habit, mōs, mōris, *m.*
Haedui, Haeduī, Haeduōrum.
hand, I am at, suppetō, suppetere, suppetīvī, *3, intr.*
hand, on the one, ūnā ex parte; **on the other hand,** alterā ex parte.
hand over, mandō, *1, tr.;* trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus, *3, tr.*
happen, fīō, fierī, factus sum, *intr.*
happy, fēlīx, fēlīx, fēlīcis.
harass, lacessō, lacessere, lacessīvī, lacessītus, *3, tr.*
hard, difficilis, e; dūrus, a, um.
hasten, mātūrō, *1, tr.; infin.;* contendo, contendere, contendī, *3, intr.*
have, habeō, *2, tr.*
have begun, coepī, coepisse, coeptus, *3, tr.; infin.*
have power, valeō, valēre, valuī, *2, intr.*
he (she, it), is, ea, id.
head of, I am at the, praesum, praesse, praefuī, praefutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
hear, audiō, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
heavens, caelum, ī.
heavy, gravis, e.
height, altitūdō, altitūdinis.
help, ops, opis; auxilium, ī; **I bring help,** auxilium ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *tr.*
help, adjuvō, adjuvāre, adjūvī, adjūtus, *1, tr.*
Helvetian, Helvētius, a, um.
Helvetian, Helvētius, ī.
hidden, occultus, a, um.
hide, abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus, *3, tr.*
high, altus, a, um; ēditus, a, um.
higher, superior, superius.
highest, summus, a, um; suprēmus, a, um.
hill, collis, collis, *m.*

himself (herself, itself), suī, sibi, sē (sēsē), sē (sēsē); ipse, ipsa, ipsum.
hinder, impediō, *4, tr.*
hindered, impedītus, a, um.
hire, condūcō, condūcere, condūxī, conductus, *3, tr.*
his (her, its) own, suus, a, um.
hither, citerior, citerius.
hold, teneō, tenēre, tenuī, *2, tr.;* obtineō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus, *2, tr.*
hold back, retineō, retinēre, retinuī, retentus, *2, tr.*
hold in, contineō, continēre, continuī, contentus, *2, tr.*
hold out (last), suppetō, suppetere, suppetīvī, *3, intr.*
hold up, sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, *2, tr.*
home: at home, domī; **from home**, domō, **to home**, domum.
honor, dignitās, dignitātis; **honor**, honōris.
hope, spēs, speī.
horseman, eques, equitis, *m.*
hostage, obses, obsidis, *c.*
hostile, inimīcus, a, um; *dat.*
hour, hōra, ae.
household, familia, ae.
how (of degree), quam, *adv.*
how great, quantus, a, um.
how large, quantus, a, um.
how many, quot, *indecl. adj.*
however, autém, *conj., postp.*
humble, humilis, e; īnferus, a, um.
hurl, jaciō, jacere, jēcī, jactus, *3, tr.;* conjiciō, conjicere, conjēcī, conjectus, *3, tr.*

I

I, ego, meī.
ignorance, īnscientia, ae.
ill, aeger, aegra, aegrum.
immediately, cōnfestim; statim, *advs.*
import, importō, *1, tr.*
important, gravis, e.
in, in, *prep. w. abl.*
in, I hold, contineō, continēre, continuī, contentus, *2, tr.*
in charge of, I am, praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus, *intr.; dat.;* **I put in charge of**, praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus, *3, tr.; acc. of person; dat. of thing over which.*
in front of, ante, *prep. w. acc.;* prō, *prep. w. abl.*
in the beginning, prīmō, *adv.*
in the country, rūrī.
in the presence of, apud, *prep. w. acc.*
in the sight of all, sub oculīs omnium.
in the way of, I put, objiciō, objicere, objēcī, objectus, *3, tr.*
in the works of, apud, *prep. w. acc.*
increase, augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, *2, tr.*
induce, indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductus, *3, tr.; ut (nē);* addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus, *3, tr.; ut (nē).*
infantry, peditātus, ūs.
influence, auctōritās, auctōritātis.
influential, I am very, plurimum possum, posse, potuī, *intr.*
inform (of), certiōrem faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *3, tr.; dē w. abl.; acc. w. infin.*
informed (of), I am, certior fīō, fierī, factus sum, *intr.; dē w. abl.; gen.; acc. w. infin.*
informers, through, per indicium.
inhabit, incolō, incolere, incoluī, incultus, *3, tr.*
injure, noceō, *2, intr.; dat.*
injustice, injūria, ae.
institution, īnstitūtum, ī.
intervene, intercēdō, intercēdere, intercessī, intercessum, *3, intr.*
interview, conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventus, *4, tr.*
into, in, *prep. w. acc.*
into, I lead, indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductus, *3, tr.*
into the country, rūs.
into the power of, I come, in potestātem *(gen.)* perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum, *4, intr.*

island, īnsula, ae.
Isle of Man, Mona, ae.
Italy, Italia, ae.

J

javelin, pīlum, ī.
join, jungō, jungere, jūnxī, jūnctus, *3, tr.; dat. or cum w. abl.*
join battle (with), proelium committō, committere, commīsī, commissus, *3, tr.; cum w. abl.*
journey, iter, itineris, *n.*
judge, jūdicō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
judgment, jūdicium, ī.
Jura mountains, Jūra, ae.
just, jūstus, a, um; aequus, a, um.
justice, jūs, jūris, *n.*

K

keep away from, prohibeō, *2, tr.; abl. or ab (ā) w. abl.*
kill, interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus, *3, tr.;* concīdō, concīdere, concīdī, concīsus, *3, tr.;* necō, *1, tr.*
killing, caedēs, caedis.
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
kingdom, rēgnum, ī.
kingly power, rēgnum, ī.
knight, eques, equitis, *m.*
know, sciō, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
knowledge, scientia, ae.

L

Labienus, Titus, Titus Labiēnus, Titī Labiēnī.
lack of, inopia, ae.
lacking to, I am, dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
lake, lacus, ūs.
Lake Geneva, Lemannus, ī.
lament, queror, querī, questus sum, *3, tr.*
land, terra, ae; **on land and sea,** terrā marīque.
language, lingua, ae.
large, magnus, a, um; amplus, a, um; **how large,** quantus, a, um.
larger, mājor, mājus.
largest, maximus, a, um.
last, ultimus, a, um; extrēmus, a, um; suprēmus, a, um; postrēmus, a, um.
late at night, multā dē nocte.
lately, nūper, *adv.*
law, lēx, lēgis.
lawful, jūstus, a, um.
lay down, dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositus, *3, tr.*
lay waste, vāstō, *1, tr.;* populor, *1, tr.*
lead, dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, *3, tr.*
lead a life, vītam agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *3, tr.*
lead across, trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductus, *3, tr.; 2 accs.; acc. and trāns w. acc.*
lead into, indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductus, *3, tr.*
lead through, perdūcō, perdūcere, perdūxī, perductus, *3, tr.*
lead (to), addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus, *3, tr.; ut (nē).*
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
leading man, prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.*
learn, discō, discere, didicī, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.;* cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
least, minimus, a, um.
leave. *See* **leave behind.**
leave behind, relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus, *3, tr.*
left, sinister, sinistra, sinistrum; **on (from) the left,** sinistrā.
left, I am, supersum, superesse, superfuī, superfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
legion, legiō, legiōnis.
less, minor, minus; minus, *adv.*
lessen, minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtus, *3, tr.*
lesser, minor, minus.
letter (of the alphabet), littera, ae.
letter (epistle), litterae, litterārum.
levy, imperō, *1, tr.; dat. of person; acc. of thing.*
liberate, līberō, *1, tr.*
liberty, lībertās, lībertātis.
lie, jaceō, jacēre, jacuī, *2, intr.*

lieutenant, lēgātus, ī.
life, vīta, ae; **I lead a life,** vītam agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *3, tr.*
light, lūx, lūcis.
light (in weight), levis, e.
light-armed, expedītus, a, um.
like to, similis, e; *dat.; gen. of persons.*
line of battle, aciēs, aciēī.
line of march, āgmen, āgminis.
Lingones, Lingonēs, Lingonum.
Liscus, Liscus, ī.
listen to, audiō, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
literature, litterae, litterārum.
little, exiguus, a, um.
little, paulō, *adv.;* paulum, *adv.*
location, situs, ūs.
long time, diū, *adv.*
longer (time), diūtius, *adv.*
longest (time), diūtissimē, *adv.*
low, humilis, e; īnferus, a, um.
lowermost, īmus, a, um; īnfimus, a, um.
lowest, īmus, a, um; īnfimus, a, um.
loyalty, fidēs, fideī.

M

magistracy, magistrātus, ūs.
magistrate, magistrātus, ūs.
maintain, alō, alere, aluī, altus (alitus), *3, tr.*
majority, plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque.
make, faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *3, tr.;* **I am made,** fīō, fierī, factus sum, *intr.*
make restitution to, satisfaciō, satisfacere, satisfēcī, satisfactum, *3, intr.; dat.*
make war on, bellum īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus, *tr.; dat. of person.*
man (*i.e.*, **male**), vir, virī; (*i.e.*, **a human being**), homō, hominis, *m.*
Man, Isle of, Mona, ae.
man, leading, prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.*
manliness, virtūs, virtūtis, *f.*
manner, ratiō, ratiōnis.
many, multī, ae, a.
march, iter faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *3, tr.*
marvelous, mīrus, a, um.
masses, plēbs, plēbis.
meanwhile, interim, *adv.;* intereā, *adv.*
meet, conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventus, *4, tr.*
meeting, conventus, ūs; coetus, ūs.
memory, memoria, ae.
merchant, mercātor, mercātōris.
mercy, hūmānitās, hūmānitātis.
merit, mereor, *2, tr.;* mereō, *2, tr.*
message, nūntius, ī.
messenger, nūntius, ī.
method, ratiō, ratiōnis.
middle, medius, a, um.
midnight, shortly after, paulō post mediam noctem; **at about midnight,** dē mediā nocte.
mind, mēns, mentis; animus, ī.
mine, meus, a, um.
miserable, miser, misera, miserum.
misfortune, calamitās, calamitātis.
moderate, mediocris, e.
moderately, mediocriter, *adv.*
month, mēnsis, mēnsis, *m.*
moon, lūna, ae.
more, plūs, plūris; *gen.;* plūs, *adv.;* magis, *adv.*
most, plūrimus, a, um; plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque.
most, plūrimum, *adv.;* maximē, *adv.*
most badly, pessimē, *adv.*
mound, agger, aggeris.
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
move, moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, *2, tr.*
movement, mōtus, ūs.
much (*pl.* many), multus, a, um.
much, multum, *adv.*
much, very, maximē, *adv.*
multitude, multitūdō, multitūdinis.
murder, necō, *1, tr.*
my, meus, a, um.

N

name, nōmen, nōminis.
Nammeius, Nammēius, ī.

narrow, angustus, a, um.
narrow pass, angustiae, angustiārum.
nation, populus, ī; gēns, gentis.
nature, nātūra, ae.
near, propinquus, a, um; *dat.;* prope, *adv.;* ad, *prep. w. acc.;* apud, *prep. w. acc.;* prope, *prep. w. acc. (224).*
near, I am, subsum, subesse, *intr.; dat.*
near relative, propinquus, a, um.
nearer, propior, propius; *dat. or acc.*
nearest, proximus, a, um; *dat.*
necessarily, necessāriō, *adv.*
necessary, necessārius, a, um.
neighboring, fīnitimus, a, um; *dat.*
neighbors, fīnitimī, fīnitimōrum.
neither (of two), neuter, neutra, neutrum, neutrīus.
neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque (nec . . . nec), *conjs.*
new, novus, a, um.
next, posterus, a, um.
next, I come, succēdō, succēdere, successī, successum, *3, intr.; dat. or ad w. acc.*
next to, proximus, a, um; *dat.*
night, nox, noctis; **by night,** noctū; **during the night,** dē nocte; **far into the night, late at night,** multā dē nocte.
nightfall, at, prīmā nocte.
nine, novem.
no, nūllus, a, um, nūllīus.
no trouble, with, nūllō negōtiō.
nobility, nōbilitās, nōbilitātis.
noble, nōbilis, e.
none, no, nūllus, a, um, nūllīus.
nor, neque (nec), *conj.*
not, nōn, *adv.;* **and not,** neque (nec), *conj.*
not only . . . but also, nōn modo . . . sed etiam.
not yet, nōndum, *adv.*
notice, animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animadversus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
nourish, alō, alere, aluī, altus (alitus), *3, tr.*
now, jam, *adv.*
number, numerus, ī.
numerous, crēber, crēbra, crēbrum.

O

oath, jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandī, *n.*
obtain, nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum, *3, tr.*
obtain (by asking), impetrō, *1, tr.; ab (ā) w. abl. of person; acc. of thing; ut (nē).*
of cavalry, equester, equestris, equestre.
offend, offendō, offendere, offendī, offēnsus, *3, tr.*
often, saepe, *adv.*
old, vetus, vetus, veteris (vetere, veterā, veterum).
on, in, *prep. w. abl.*
on, I carry, gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *3, tr.*
on account of, ob, *prep. w. acc.;* propter, *prep. w. acc. (225).*
on all sides, ex omnibus partibus.
on (from) all sides, undique, *adv.*
on behalf of, prō, *prep. w. abl.*
on fire, I set, incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus, *3, tr.*
on guard duty, I am, in statiōne sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *intr.*
on land and sea, terrā marīque.
on one hand, on one side, ūnā ex parte.
on the ground, humī.
on (from) the left, sinistrā.
on the other side, on the other hand, alterā ex parte.
on the right, dextrā.
on this side, citerior, citerius.
once, at, statim, *adv.*
one, ūnus, a, um, ūnīus.
one, each, singulī, ae, a.
one hand, on the, ūnā ex parte.
one side, on the, ūnā ex parte.
onto, in, *prep. w. acc.*
open, apertus, a, um.
opinion, sententia, ae; opīniō, opīnionis.

opportune, opportūnus, a, um.
opposite, dīversus, a, um.
opposite, contrā, *prep. w. acc.*
or, aut, *conj.*
order, ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*
order, imperō, *1, tr.; dat. of person; acc. of thing; ut (nē);* jubeō, jubēre, jussī, jussus, *2, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
Orgetorix, Orgetorīx, Orgetorīgis.
other, alius, alia, aliud, alterīus, alterī; cēterus, a, um; **the other of two,** alter, altera, alterum, alterīus.
other hand, on the, alterā ex parte.
other side, on the, alterā ex parte.
ought, dēbeō, *2, tr.; infin;* oportet, oportēre, oportuit, *2, intr.; acc. w. infin.*
our, ours, noster, nostra, nostrum.
out, a setting, profectiō, profectiōnis.
out, I carry, efferō, effere, extulī, ēlātus, *tr.*
out, I follow, exsequor, exsequī, exsecūtus sum, *3, tr.*
out, I go, ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, *3, intr.*
out, I hold (last), suppetō, suppetere, suppetīvī, *3, intr.*
out, I set, proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *3, intr.*
out, I speak, enūntiō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
out of, ex (ē), *prep. w. abl.*
out of, I go, exeō, exīre, exiī, exitum, *intr.; ex (ē) w. abl.; dē w. abl.*
outermost, extrēmus, a, um.
outstanding, ēgregius, a, um.
over, I hand, mandō, *1, tr.;* trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus, *3, tr.*
overcome, superō, *1, tr.*
overtake, cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum, *3, tr.*
owe, dēbeō, *2, tr.*
own, proprius, a, um.

P

pace, passus, ūs.
pacify, pācō, *1, tr.*
pack, soldier's, sarcinae, sarcinārum.
pain, dolor, dolōris.
pains, opera, ae.
panic, terror, terrōris.
part, pars, partis.
part in, I take, intersum, interesse, interfuī, interfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
partner, socius, ī.
pass, narrow, angustiae, angustiārum.
pass over in silence, taceō, *2, tr.*
passion, cupiditās, cupiditātis.
pay attention to, operam dō, dare, dedī, datus, *1, tr.; dat or ut (nē).*
peace, pāx, pācis.
peaceful, quiētus, a, um.
people, populus, ī; **the common people,** plēbs, plēbis.
perceive, sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
perform, perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus, *3, tr.*
period of three days, trīduum, ī.
period of two days, bīduum, ī.
perpetual, perpetuus, a, um.
persuade, persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsum, *2, intr.; dat.; acc. w. infin.; ut (nē).*
pertain to, pertineō, pertinēre, pertinuī, *2, intr.; ad w. acc.*
piercing, ācer, ācris, ācre.
Piso, Pīsō, Pīsōnis.
pitch camp, castra pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *3, tr.*
place, locus, ī.
place, collocō, *1, tr.; in w. abl.;* pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *3, tr.*
place, to the same, eōdem, *adv.*
plain, plānitiēs, plānitiēī.
plan, cōnsilium, ī; ratiō, ratiōnis.
pleasing, grātus, a, um; *dat.*
plots, īnsidiae, īnsidiārum.
plunder, praeda, ae.
plunder, praedor, *1, tr.;* populor, *1, tr.*
port, portus, ūs.
possession of, I gain, potior, *4, intr.; abl. or gen.*
power, potestās, potestātis; potentia, ae; ops, opis.
power, kingly, rēgnum, ī.

power, I have, valeō, valēre, valuī, *2, intr.*
power of, I come into the, in potestātem *(gen.)* perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum, *4, intr.*
powerful, potēns, potēns, potentis.
praetor, praetor, praetōris.
praise, laus, laudis.
praise, laudō, *1, tr.*
prayers, precēs, precum, *f.*
precede, praecēdō, praecēdere, praecessī, praecessus, *3, tr.*
prepare, parō, *1, tr.*
prepared, parātus, a, um.
presence of, in the, apud, *prep. w. acc.*
present, praesēns, praesēns, praesentis.
present at, I am, intersum, interesse, interfuī, interfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
present (to help or support), I am, adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
preserve, servō, *1, tr.*
private, prīvātus, a, um.
Procillus, Gaius Valerius, Gāius Valerius Procillus, Gāiī Valeriī Procillī.
produce, frūctus, ūs.
production, opus, operis.
profit, fructus, ūs.
profit, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
promise, polliceor, *2, tr.; acc. w. future infin.*
proper, proprius, a, um.
propose, prōpōnō, prōpōnere, prōposuī, prōpositus, *3, tr.*
prosperity, rēs secundae, rērum secundārum.
prove, probō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.; infin.*
provide, comparō, *1, tr.*
province, prōvincia, ae.
provoke, lacessō, lacessere, lacessīvī, lacessītus, *3, tr.*
public, pūblicus, a, um.
punishment, supplicium, ī.
pursue, īnsequor, īnsequī, īnsecūtus sum, *3, tr.*
put, pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *3, tr.*
put aside, dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositus, *3, tr.*
put forth, ēdō, ēdere, ēdidī, ēditus, *3, tr.*
put forward, prōpōnō, prōpōnere, prōposuī, prōpositus, *3, tr.*
put in charge of, praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus, *3, tr.; acc. of person; dat. of thing over which.*
put in the way of, objiciō, objicere, objēcī, objectus, *3, tr.*

Q

quickly, celeriter, *adv.*
quiet, quiētus, a, um.

R

race, gēns, gentis.
raft, ratis, ratis.
rainstorm, imber, imbris.
rampart, vāllum, ī; agger, aggeris.
rank, ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*
rapidity, celeritās, celeritātis.
ready, expedītus, a, um; parātus, a, um.
ready, I get, comparō, *1, tr.;* expediō, *4, tr.*
rear, tergum, ī.
reason, ratiō, ratiōnis.
reason, and for this, quā dē causā; quā ex rē.
recapture, recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus, *3, tr.*
recent, recēns, recēns, recentis.
recently, nūper, *adv.*
reduce, pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, *3, tr.*
refinement, hūmānitās, hūmānitātis.
region, regiō, regiōnis.
reinforcement, subsidium, ī.
reject, prōjiciō, prōjicere, prōjēcī, prōjectus, *3, tr.*
rejoice, gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, *2, intr.*
relative (near), propinquus, a, um.
remaining, reliquus, a, um.

remarkable, ēgregius, a, um.
remember, memoriā teneō, tenēre, tenuī, *2, tr.*
remote, longinquus, a, um.
remove, submoveō, submovēre, submōvī, submōtus, *2, tr.*
renew, redintegrō, *1, tr.*
reply, respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus, *2, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
report, nūntius, ī.
report, nūntiō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.;* afferō, afferre, attulī, allātus, *tr.*
report (to), īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus, *tr.*
report to, dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus, *tr.; ad w. acc.*
repulse, rejiciō, rejicere, rejēcī, rejectus, *3, tr.*
reputation, opīniō, opīniōnis.
request, rogō, *1, tr.; acc. of person and ut (nē), or ab (ā) w. abl. of person and acc. of thing.*
reserve, subsidium, ī.
resist, resistō, resistere, restitī, restitum, *3, intr.; dat.*
resources, opēs, opum.
rest (the remaining ones), cēterī, ae, a; reliquus, a, um.
restitution to, I make, satisfaciō, satisfacere, satisfēcī, satisfactum, *3, intr.; dat.*
restrain, reprimō, reprimere, repressī, repressus, *3, tr.*
retire, concēdō, concēdere, concessī, concessum, *3, intr.; ab (ā) w. abl.*
retreat, tergum vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, *3, tr.;* pedem referō, referre, retulī, relātus, *3, tr.*
return, revertor, revertī, revertī (reversus sum), *3, intr.*
revolution, mōtus, ūs.
reward, praemium, ī.
Rhine river, Rhēnus, ī.
Rhodes, Rhodus, ī, *f., (a small island).*
Rhone river, Rhodanus, ī.
rich, dīves, dīves, dīvitis (dīvite, dītia, dīvitum).
richest, dītissimus, a, um.
ridge, jugum, ī.
right, dexter, dextera (dextra), dexterum (dextrum); **on (from) the right,** dextrā.
right, jūs, jūris, *n.*
ripe, mātūrus, a, um.
rise up, coorior, coorīrī, coortus sum, *4, intr.*
river, flūmen, flūminis.
road, via, viae.
Roman, Rōmānus, a, um.
Roman, Rōmānus, ī.
Rome, Rōma, ae.
rule, regō, regere, rēxī, rectus, *3, tr.*
rumor, fāma, ae.
running together, concursus, ūs.

S

safe, tūtus, a, um; incolumis, e.
safety, salūs, salūtis.
sail, I set, navem solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, *3, tr.*
sailing, nāvigātiō, nāvigātiōnis.
sailor, nauta, ae, *m.*
same, īdem, eadem, idem.
same place, to the, eōdem, *adv.*
Santones, Santonēs, Santonum.
save, ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus, *3, tr.; ex (ē) w. abl.; abl.;* servō, *1, tr.*
say, dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
scarcity, inopia, ae.
scout, explōrātor, explōrātōris.
sea, mare, maris (marī, maria, marium); **on land and sea,** terrā marīque.
seacoast, ōra, ae.
second, secundus, a, um.
secretly, clam, *adv.;* sēcrētō, *adv.*
see, videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, *2, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
see clearly, perspiciō, perspicere, perspexī, perspectus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
seek, petō, petere, petīvī, petītus, *3, tr.; ab (ā) w. abl. of person; acc. of thing; ut (nē).*

seem, videor, vidērī, vīsus sum, *2, intr.; infin.*
Segusiavi, Segūsiāvī, Segūsiāvōrum.
seize, occupō, *1, tr.*
self, ipse, ipsa, ipsum.
self-control, temperantia, ae.
senate, senātus, ūs.
send, mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, *3, tr.*
send ahead, praemittō, praemittere, praemīsī, praemissus, *3, tr.*
send away, dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissus, *3, tr.*
sentinel, vigiliae, vigiliārum.
services, opera, ae.
set on fire, incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus, *3, tr.*
set out, proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *3, intr.*
set sail, nāvem solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, *3, tr.*
set up, statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus, *3, tr.;* cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus, *3, tr.; infin.*
setting, occāsus, ūs.
setting out, profectiō, profectiōnis.
seven, septem.
seventh, septimus, a, um.
shallow, vadum, ī.
shameful, turpis, e.
sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre.
sharply, ācriter, *adv.*
ship, nāvis, nāvis; **battleship,** nāvis longa, nāvis longae.
short, brevis, e.
shortly after midnight, paulō post mediam noctem.
show, ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus (ostēnsus), *3, tr.*
shut off, interclūdō, interclūdere, interclūsī, interclūsus, *3, tr.*
Sicily, Sicilia, ae *(a large island).*
sick, aeger, aegra, aegrum.
side, latus, lateris, *n.*
side, on the one, ūnā ex parte; **on the other side,** alterā ex parte; **on this side,** citerior, citerius.
side of, this, citrā, *prep. w. acc.*
sides, from all, ex omnibus partibus; **on (from) all sides,** undique, *adv.*
siege, obsidiō, obsidiōnis.
sight, cōnspectus, ūs.
sight of all, in the, sub oculīs omnium.
sign, signum, ī.
signal, signum, ī.
silence, I pass over in, taceō, *2, tr.*
silent, I am, taceō, *2, intr. and tr.*
similar to, similis, e; *dat.; gen. of person.*
site, situs, ūs.
six, sex; **sixth,** sextus, a, um.
size, magnitūdō, magnitūdinis.
skiff, linter, lintris, *f.*
skilled in, perītus, a, um; *gen.*
sky, caelum, ī.
slain, I am, cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *3, intr.*
slaughter, caedēs, caedis.
slave, servus, ī.
slavery, servitūs, servitūtis, *f.*
slay. *See* **kill.**
sling, funda, ae.
slow, tardus, a, um.
small, parvus, a, um; mediocris, e.
smaller, minor, minus.
smallest, minimus, a, um.
snare, īnsidiae, īnsidiārum.
snatch away, ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus, *3, tr.; dat. of person; ex (ē) w. abl.; abl.*
so, and, itaque, *conj.*
soldier, mīles, mīlitis, *m.*
soldier's pack, sarcinae, sarcinārum.
some, nōnnūllī, ae, a.
sometimes, nōnnumquam, *adv.*
soon, mox, *adv.*
sorrow, dolor, dolōris.
soul, animus, ī.
space, spatium, ī.
spare, parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus, *3, intr.; dat.*
speak, loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *3, tr. and intr.; dē w. abl.;* **speak out,** enūntiō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
speech, ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis.
speed, celeritās, celeritātis.

speedy, mātūrus, a, um.
spend the winter, hiemō, *1, intr.*
squadron (of cavalry), turma, ae.
standard (military), signum, ī.
state, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae; cīvitās, cīvitātis; (= **condition**), condiciō, condiciōnis.
station, collocō, *1, tr.; in w. abl.*
steady, firmus, a, um.
stone, lapis, lapidis, *m.*
stop, dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, *3, intr.; abl.; infin.*
storm, tempestās, tempestātis; hiems, hiemis.
storm, I take by, expugnō, *1, tr.*
strain, intendō, intendere, intendī, intentus, *3, tr.*
street, vīcus, ī.
strength, vīs (vim, vī; *pl.* vīrēs, vīrium).
strengthen, cōnfirmō, *1, tr.*
stretch out, intendō, intendere, intendī, intentus, *3, tr.; dat.; ad w. acc.*
stretch to, pertineō, pertinēre, pertinuī, *2, intr.; ad w. acc.*
strong, vehemēns, vehemēns, vehementis; firmus, a, um.
struggle, contendō, contendere, contendī, *3, intr.*
succeed, succēdō, succēdere, successī, successum, *3, intr.; dat.; ad w. acc.*
successive, continuus, a, um.
sudden, subitus, a, um; repentīnus, a, um.
suitable, idōneus, a, um; *ad w. acc.; dat.*
summer, aestās, aestātis.
summon, vocō, *1, tr.*
sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*
superior, superior, superius.
supply, cōpia, ae.
support, sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, *2, tr.*
supreme power, imperium, ī.
surmount, superō, *1, tr.*
surpass, superō, *1, tr.;* praecēdō, praecēdere, praecessī, praecessus, *3, tr.*
surrender, dēditiō, dēditiōnis.
surrender, dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus, *3, tr.*
survive, supersum, superesse, superfuī, superfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
suspect, suspicor, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
suspicion, suspīciō, suspīciōnis.
sustain, sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentus, *2, tr.*
swift, celer, celeris, celere.
sword, gladius, ī.

T

take, capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, *3, tr.*
take back, recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus, *3, tr.*
take by storm, expugnō, *1, tr.*
take part in, intersum, interesse, interfuī, interfutūrus, *intr.; dat.*
talk, sermō, sermōnis, *m.*
talk (of, about), loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *3, tr. and intr.; dē w. abl.*
ten, decem.
tenth, decimus, a, um.
terms, condiciō, condiciōnis.
territory, fīnēs, fīnium, *m., pl.*
than, quam, *adv.*
thanksgiving to the gods, supplicātiō, supplicātiōnis.
that ***(dem. pron.)***, is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud; iste, ista, istud; ***(rel. pron.)***, quī, quae, quod.
there, ibi, *adv.*
thing, rēs, reī.
think, putō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.;* exīstimō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.;* arbitror, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.;* sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *4, tr.; acc. w. infin.;* dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, *3, tr.*
third, tertius, a, um; **during the third watch,** dē tertiā vigiliā.
this, hīc, haec, hōc.
this side, on ***(adj.)***, citerior, citerius.
this side of, citrā, *prep. w. acc.*
thousand, mīlle *(indecl. adj., in sing.; neut. noun in pl., w. gen.,* mīlia*).*
three, trēs, tria.

three days, period of, trīduum, ī.
threefold, triplex, triplex, triplicis.
through, I lead, perdūcō, perdūcere, perdūxī, perductus, *3, tr.*
through informers, per indicium.
throughout the whole city, tōtā urbe.
throw, jaciō, jacere, jēcī, jactus, *3, tr.;* conjiciō, conjicere, conjēcī, conjectus, *3, tr.*
throw away, prōjiciō, prōjicere, prōjēcī, prōjectus, *3, tr.*
throw back, rejiciō, rejicere, rejēcī, rejectus, *3, tr.*
throw forward, prōjiciō, prōjicere, prōjēcī, prōjectus, *3, tr.*
throw in the way of, objiciō, objicere, objēcī, objectus, *3, tr.*
throw together, conjiciō, conjicere, conjēcī, conjectus, *3, tr.*
timber, māteria, ae.
time, tempus, temporis, *n.;* **by this time,** jam, *adv.;* **a long time,** diū; *adv.;* **a longer time,** diūtius, *adv.;* **longest time,** diūtissimē, *adv.*
time of life, aetās, aetātis.
tired, dēfessus, a, um.
to, ad, *prep. w. acc.*
to, I go, adeō, adīre, adiī, aditus, *tr. or ad w. acc.*
to home, domum.
to the country, rūs.
to the same place, eōdem, *adv.*
together, a running, concursus, ūs.
together, I call, convocō, *1, tr.*
together, I come, conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventus, *4, intr.*
together, I drive, cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, *3, tr.*
together, I throw, conjiciō, conjicere, conjēcī, conjectus, *3, tr.*
toil, labor, labōris.
Tolosates, Tolōsātēs, Tolōsātium.
tongue, lingua, ae.
toss about, jactō, *1, tr.*
towards, ad, *prep. w. acc.*
towards evening, sub vesperum.
tower, turris, turris.
town, oppidum, ī.
transport, cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus, *tr.*
treat with, afficiō, afficere, affēcī, affectus, *3, tr.; abl.*
Treveri, Treverī, Treverōrum.
trial, jūdicium, ī.
tribe, gēns, gentis.
trickery, dolus, ī.
troop, turma, ae.
troops, cōpiae, cōpiārum.
trouble, with great, magnō negōtiō; **with no trouble,** nūllō negōtiō.
true, vērus, a, um.
trust, fidēs, fideī.
trust, crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, *3, tr.; acc. of thing; dat. of person; acc. w. infin.;* fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, *3, intr.; dat.*
try, cōnor, *1, tr.; infin.*
turn about, convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus, *3, tr.*
turn away from, āverto, āvertere, āvertī, āversus, *3, tr.; ab (ā) w. abl.*
turn back, revertor, revertī, revertī (reversus sum), *3, intr.*
turn from, āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversus, *3, tr.; ab (ā) w. abl.*
twenty, vīgintī.
two, duo, ae, o.
two days, period of, bīduum, ī.

U

unarmed, inermis, e.
unbelievable, incrēdibilis, e.
unbroken, perpetuus, a, um.
uncivilized, barbarus, a, um.
uncovered, apertus, a, um.
under, I am, subsum, subesse, *intr.; dat.*
understand, intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus, *3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
undertake, suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus, *3, tr.; acc. w. gerundive;* ineō, inīre, iniī, initus, *3, tr.*
uneven, inīquus, a, um.
unexpected, subitus, a, um.

unfavorable, inīquus, a, um.
unfriendly, inimīcus, a, um; *dat.*
unjust, inīquus, a, um.
unknown, incognitus, a, um.
unlike, dissimilis, e; *dat.*
unoccupied, I am, vācō, *1, intr.*
unwilling, invītus, a, um.
unwilling, I am, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *tr.; acc.; acc. w. infin.; ut (nē); infin.*
up, I hold, sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentus, *2, tr.*
up, I set, cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstitūtus, *3, intr.;* statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus, *3, tr.*
upon, I enter, ineō, inīre, iniī, initus, *tr.*
upper, superior, superius.
urgent, necessārius, a, um.
use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *3, intr.; abl.*
use force, vim faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *3, tr.*
useful, ūtilis, e; *ad w. acc.*

V

Valerius Procillus, Gaius, Gāius Valerius Procillus, Gāiī Valeriī Procillī.
valley, vallēs, vallis.
vehemently, vehementer, *adv.*
Veneti, Venetī, Venetōrum.
Verucloetius, Verucloetius, ī.
very *(adj.)*, ipse, ipsa, ipsum.
very far, longissimē, *adv.*
very greatly, maximē, *adv.*
very influential, I am, plurimum possum, posse, potuī, *intr.* (among, with, *apud, prep. w. acc.*).
very long time, a, diūtissimē, *adv.*
very much, maximē, *adv.*
victor, victor, victōris.
victory, victōria, ae.
vigorously, vehementer, *adv.*
village, vīcus, ī.
violent, vehemēns, vehemēns, vehementis.
violently, vehementer, *adv.;* vī; per vim.
virtue, virtūs, virtūtis.
visit, adeō, adīre, adiī, aditus, *tr. or ad w. acc.*
Vocontii, Vocontiī, Vocontiōrum.
voice, vōx, vōcis.
vote, sententia, ae.

W

wage war (with, against), bellum gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *3, tr.; cum w. abl.; contrā w. acc.; in w. acc.*
wagon, carrus, ī.
wait for, exspectō, *1, tr.*
wall, mūrus, ī.
wander about, vagor, *1, intr.*
war, bellum, ī; **I make war on,** bellum īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus, *tr.; dat. of person;* **I wage war,** bellum gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *3, tr.; cum w. abl.; contrā w. acc.; in w. acc.*
waste, I lay, vāstō, *1, tr.;* populor, *1, tr.*
watch, vigilia, ae; **during the third watch,** dē tertiā vigiliā.
water, aqua, ae.
way, via, ae.
way of, I put in the, objiciō, objicere, objēcī, objectus, *3, tr.*
way of, I throw in the, objiciō, objicere, objēcī, objectus, *3, tr.*
wealth, opēs, opum.
weapon, tēlum, ī.
weapons, arma, armōrum.
weary, dēfessus, a, um.
weather, tempestās, tempestātis.
weep, fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, *2, intr.*
well, bene, *adv.*
well, I am, valeō, valēre, valuī, *2, intr.*
what *(interr. pron.)*, quis, quid; *(rel. pron.)*, quī, quae, quod.
which *(interr. pron.)*, quis, quid; *(rel. pron.)*, quī, quae, quod.
which (of two), uter, utra, utrum, utrīus.
who *(interr. pron.)*, quis, quid; *(rel. pron.)*, quī, quae, quod.
whole (*i.e.*, **entire**), tōtus, a, um, tōtīus; (*i.e.*, **fresh**), integer, integra, integrum.

whole city, throughout the, tōtā urbe.
wicked, improbus, a, um.
wide, lātus, a, um.
widely, lātē, *adv.*
wife, uxor, uxōris, *f.*
will, voluntās, voluntātis.
willing, I am, volō, velle, voluī, *tr.; acc.; acc. w. infin.; ut (nē).*
winter, hiems, hiemis; **I spend the winter,** hiemō, *1, tr.;* **at the beginning of winter,** initiō hiemis.
winterquarters, hīberna, hībernōrum.
wish, volō, velle, voluī, *tr.; acc.; infin.; acc. w. infin.; ut (nē);* **I do not wish,** nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *tr.; acc.; acc. w. infin.; ut (nē); infin.*
with, cum, *prep. w. abl.*
with force, vī.
with great trouble, magnō negōtiō.
with no trouble, nūllō negōtiō.
within, intrā, *prep. w. acc.*
without, sine, *prep. w. abl.*
wonderful, mīrus, a, um.
work, opus, operis, *n.*
works of, in the, apud, *prep. w. acc.*
worn out, defessus, a, um.
worry, cūra, ae.
worse, pējor, pējus; pējus, *adv.*
worst, pessimus, a, um; pessimē, *adv.*
worth, dignitās, dignitātis.
worthy (of), dignus, a, um; *abl.*
wound, vulnus, vulneris.
wound, vulnerō, *1, tr.*
wretched, miser, misera, miserum.
wrong, injūria, ae.

Y

year, annus, ī.
yield, concēdō, concēdere, concessī, concessus, *3, tr.*
yoke, jugum, ī.
you, tū, tuī.
young man, adulēscēns, adulēscentis, *m.*
your, yours (of one person), tuus, a, um; **(of more persons),** vester, vestra, vestrum.

Z

zeal, studium, ī.

GOVT GIRLS COLLEGE SRINAGAR ACC. NO 7558 LIBRARY